CAMBRIDGE

BASIC GRAMMAR IN USE

Self-study reference and practice for students of American English

with answers

Fourth Edition

Raymond Murphy

with William R. Smalzer and Joseph Chapple

مرجع آموزش زبان ایرانیان

irLanguage.com

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

THE WORLD'S BEST-SELLING GRAMMAR SERIES

www.irLanguage.com

Experience Better Learning

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

BASIC GRAMMAR IN USE

Self-study reference and practice for students of American English

with answers and ebook

Fourth Edition

Raymond Murphy

with William R. Smalzer and Joseph Chapple

مرجع آموزش زبان ایرانیان
www.irLanguage.com

این مجموعه با لوگوی مرجع زبان ایرانیان
به صورت نشر برخط و حامل به ثبت رسیده است.
کپی برداری از آن خلاف قانون، شرع و اخلاق است و شامل پیگرد خواهد شد.

Contents

Acknowledgements vii
To the Student viii
To the Teacher x
Interactive ebook xi

Present
1 **am/is/are**
2 **am/is/are** (questions)
3 **I am doing** (present continuous)
4 **are you doing?** (present continuous questions)
5 **I do/work/like**, etc. (simple present)
6 **I don't . . .** (simple present negative)
7 **Do you . . . ?** (simple present questions)
8 **I am doing** (present continuous) and **I do** (simple present)
9 **I have . . .** and **I've got . . .**

Past
10 **was/were**
11 **worked/got/went**, etc. (simple past)
12 **I didn't . . .** **Did you . . . ?** (simple past negative and questions)
13 **I was doing** (past continuous)
14 **I was doing** (past continuous) and **I did** (simple past)
15 **I used to . . .**

Present perfect
16 **Have you . . . ?**
17 **How long have you . . . ?**
18 **for since ago**
19 **I have done** (present perfect) and **I did** (past)

Passive
20 **is done was done** (passive 1)
21 **is being done has been done** (passive 2)

Verb forms
22 **be/have/do** in present and past tenses
23 Regular and irregular verbs

Future
24 **What are you doing tomorrow?**
25 **I'm going to . . .**
26 **will**

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH UNITS YOU NEED TO STUDY, USE THE STUDY GUIDE ON PAGE 257.

Modals, imperative, etc.
27 **might**
28 **can** and **could**
29 **must**
30 **should**
31 **I have to . . .**
32 **Would you like . . . ? I'd like . . .**
33 **I'd rather . . .**
34 **Do this! Don't do that! Let's do this!**

There** and **it
35 **there is there are**
36 **there was/were there has/have been there will be**
37 **it**

Auxiliary verbs
38 **I am, I don't**, etc.
39 **You have? Have you? You are? Are you?**, etc.
40 **too/either so am I / neither do I**, etc.
41 **isn't, haven't, don't**, etc. (negatives)

Questions
42 **is it . . . ? have you . . . ? do they . . . ?**, etc. (questions 1)
43 **Who saw you? Who did you see?** (questions 2)
44 **Who is she talking to? What is it like?** (questions 3)
45 **What . . . ? Which . . . ? How . . . ?** (questions 4)
46 **How long does it take . . . ?**
47 **Do you know where . . . ? I don't know what . . .**, etc.

Reported speech
48 **She said that . . . He told me that . . .**

-ing** and **to . . .
49 **work/working go/going do/doing**
50 **to . . . (I want to do)** and **-ing (I enjoy doing)**
51 **I want you to . . . I told you to . . .**
52 **I went to the store to . . .**

Go, get, do, make,** and **have
53 **go to . . . go on . . . go for . . . go -ing**
54 **get**
55 **do** and **make**
56 **have**

Pronouns and possessives
57 **I/me he/him they/them**, etc.
58 **my/his/their**, etc.
59 **Whose** is this? It's **mine/yours/hers**, etc.
60 **I/me/my/mine**
61 **myself/yourself/themselves**, etc.
62 **-'s (Kate's** camera / **my brother's** car, etc.)

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH UNITS YOU NEED TO STUDY, USE THE STUDY GUIDE ON PAGE 257.

A and the

63 **a/an . . .**
64 **train(s)** **bus(es)** (singular and plural)
65 **a bottle / some water** (count/noncount 1)
66 **a cake / some cake / some cakes** (count/noncount 2)
67 **a/an** and **the**
68 **the . . .**
69 **go to work** **go home** **go to the hospital**
70 I like **music** I hate **exams**
71 **the . . .** (names of places)

Determiners and pronouns

72 **this/that/these/those**
73 **one/ones**
74 **some** and **any**
75 **not + any** **no** **none**
76 **not + anybody/anyone/anything** **nobody/no one/nothing**
77 **somebody/anything/nowhere**, etc.
78 **every** and **all**
79 **all** **most** **some** **any** **no/none**
80 **both** **either** **neither**
81 **a lot** **much** **many**
82 **(a) little** **(a) few**

Adjectives and adverbs

83 **old/nice/interesting**, etc. (adjectives)
84 **quickly/badly/suddenly**, etc. (adverbs)
85 **old/older** **expensive / more expensive**
86 **older than . . .** **more expensive than . . .**
87 **not as . . . as**
88 **the oldest** **the most expensive**
89 **enough**
90 **too**

Word order

91 He **speaks English** very well. (word order 1)
92 **always/usually/often**, etc. (word order 2)
93 **still** **yet** **already**
94 **Give me that book!** **Give it to me!**

Conjunctions and clauses

95 **and** **but** **or** **so** **because**
96 **When . . .**
97 **If we go . . .** **If you see . . .**, etc.
98 **If I had . . .** **If we went . . .**, etc.
99 a person **who . . .** a thing **that/which . . .** (relative clauses 1)
100 the people **we met** the hotel **you stayed at** (relative clauses 2)

Prepositions
101 **at 8:00** **on Monday** **in April**
102 **from . . . to** **until** **since** **for**
103 **before** **after** **during** **while**
104 **in** **at** **on** (places 1)
105 **in** **at** **on** (places 2)
106 **to** **in** **at** (places 3)
107 **next to, between, under**, etc.
108 **up, over, through**, etc.
109 **on** **at** **by** **with** **about**
110 **afraid of . . . , good at . . .** , etc. **of/at/for**, etc. (prepositions) + **-ing**
111 **listen to . . . , look at . . .** , etc. (verb + preposition)

Phrasal verbs
112 **go in, fall off, run away**, etc. (phrasal verbs 1)
113 **put on** your shoes **put** your shoes **on** (phrasal verbs 2)

Appendixes
Appendix 1 Active and passive 229
Appendix 2 List of irregular verbs 230
Appendix 3 Irregular verbs in groups 231
Appendix 4 Short forms (**he's / I'd / don't**, etc.) 232
Appendix 5 Spelling 234
Appendix 6 Phrasal verbs (**take off / give up**, etc.) 236
Appendix 7 Phrasal verbs + object (**put out** a fire / **try on** clothes, etc.) 237

Additional Exercises 238

Study Guide 257

Answer Key to Exercises 270
Answer Key to Additional Exercises 297
Answer Key to Study Guide 300

Index 302

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH UNITS YOU NEED TO STUDY, USE THE STUDY GUIDE ON PAGE 257.

Acknowledgements

Many thanks to Rebecca Hill for her solid guidance, meticulous editorial work, and ever-professional attitude.

Design
Q2A Media Services Pvt. Ltd.

Illustrations
Adz, Paul Boston, Christopher Flint, John Goodwin, Katie Mac, Martina – KJA artists, Lucy Truman

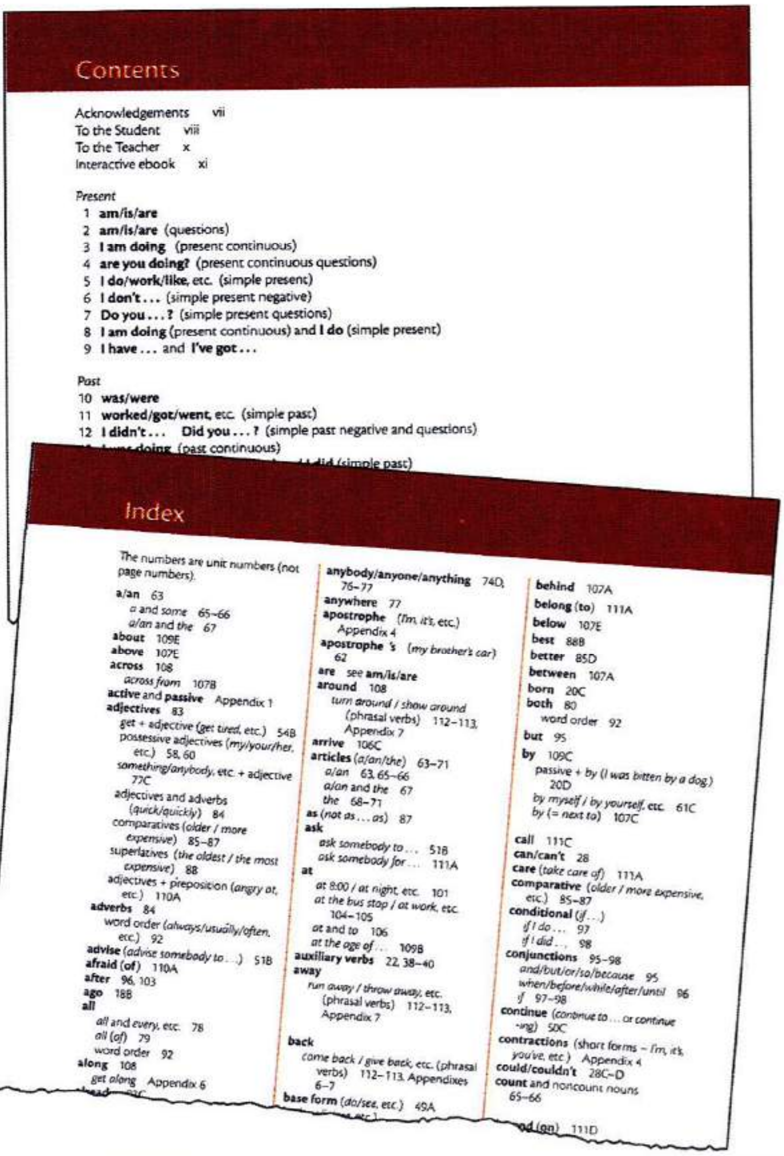
Digital development
Datamatics Ltd.

To the Student

This is a grammar book for beginning to low-intermediate students of English. There are 113 units in the book, and each unit is about a different point of English grammar. There is a list of units at the beginning of the book (*Contents*).

Do not study all the units in order from beginning to end. It is better to choose the units that you need to do. For example, if you have a problem with the present perfect (*I have been, he has done,* etc.), study Units 16–19.

Use the *Contents* or the *Index* (at the back of the book) to find the unit (or units) that you need.



Contents

Acknowledgements vii
To the Student viii
To the Teacher x
Interactive ebook xi

Present
1 **am/is/are**
2 **am/is/are** (questions)
3 **I am doing** (present continuous)
4 **are you doing?** (present continuous questions)
5 **I do/work/like**, etc. (simple present)
6 **I don't . . .** (simple present negative)
7 **Do you . . . ?** (simple present questions)
8 **I am doing** (present continuous) and **I do** (simple present)
9 **I have . . .** and **I've got . . .**

Past
10 **was/were**
11 **worked/got/went**, etc. (simple past)
12 **I didn't . . . Did you . . . ?** (simple past negative and questions)

Index

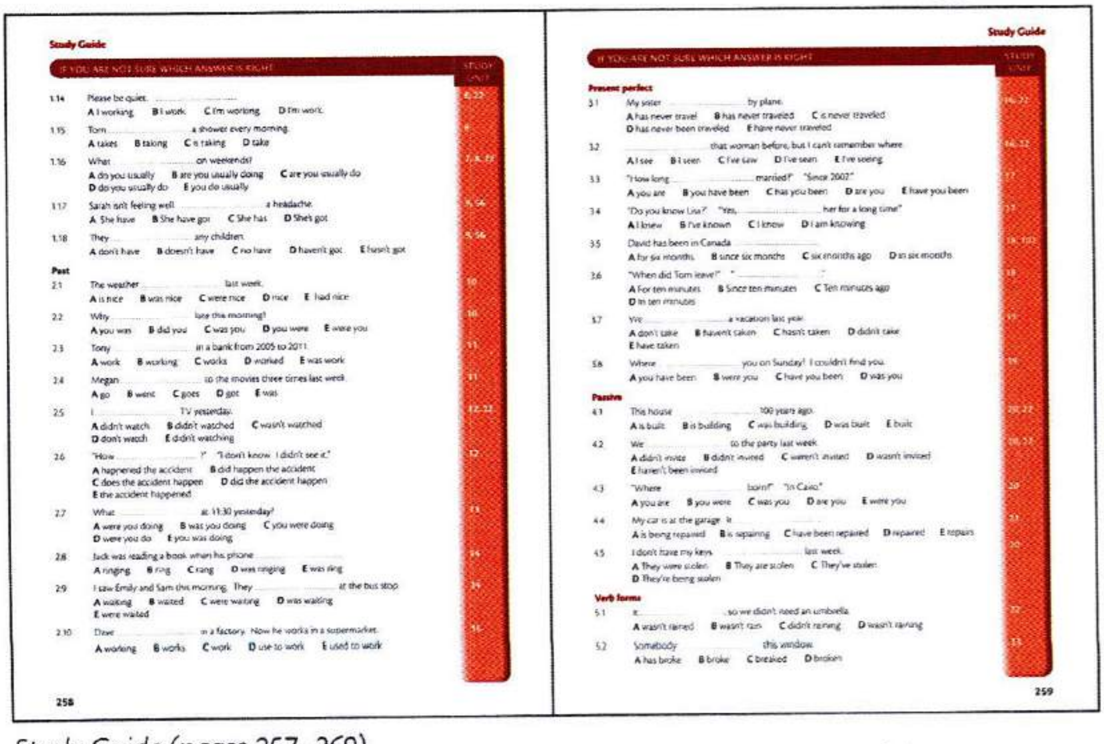
The numbers are unit numbers (not page numbers).

a/an 63
a and *some* 65–66
a/an and *the* 67
about 109E
above 107E
across 108
across from 107B
active and **passive** Appendix 1
adjectives 83
get + adjective (*get tired*, etc.) 54B
possessive adjectives (*my/your/her*, etc.) 58, 60
something/anybody, etc. + adjective 77C
adjectives and adverbs (*quick/quickly*) 84
comparatives (*older / more expensive*) 85–87
superlatives (*the oldest / the most expensive*) 88
adjectives + preposition (*angry at*, etc.) 110A
adverbs 84
word order (*always/usually/often*, etc.) 92
advise (*advise somebody to . . .*) 51B
afraid (of) 110A
after 96, 103
ago 18B
all
all and *every*, etc. 78
all (of) 79
word order 92
along 108
get along Appendix 6

anybody/anyone/anything 74D, 76–77
anywhere 77
apostrophe (*I'm, it's*, etc.) Appendix 4
apostrophe 's (*my brother's car*) 62
are see **am/is/are**
around 108
turn around / show around (phrasal verbs) 112–113, Appendix 7
arrive 106C
articles (*a/an/the*) 63–71
a/an 63, 65–66
a/an and *the* 67
the 68–71
as (*not as . . . as*) 87
ask
ask somebody to . . . 51B
ask somebody for . . . 111A
at
at 8:00 / at night, etc. 101
at the bus stop / at work, etc. 104–105
at and *to* 106
at the age of . . . 109B
auxiliary verbs 22, 38–40
away
run away / throw away, etc. (phrasal verbs) 112–113, Appendix 7
back
come back / give back, etc. (phrasal verbs) 112–113, Appendixes 6–7
base form (*do/see*, etc.) 49A

behind 107A
belong (to) 111A
below 107E
best 88B
better 85D
between 107A
born 20C
both 80
word order 92
but 95
by 109C
passive + *by* (*I was bitten by a dog.*) 20D
by myself / by yourself, etc. 61C
by (= *next to*) 107C
call 111C
can/can't 28
care (*take care of*) 111A
comparative (*older / more expensive*, etc.) 85–87
conditional (*if . . .*)
if I do . . . 97
if I did . . . 98
conjunctions 95–98
and/but/or/so/because 95
when/before/while/after/until 96
if 97–98
continue (*continue to . . .* or *continue -ing*) 50C
contractions (short forms – *I'm, it's, you've*, etc.) Appendix 4
could/couldn't 28C–D
count and noncount nouns 65–66

If you are not sure which units you need to study, use the *Study Guide* at the back of the book.

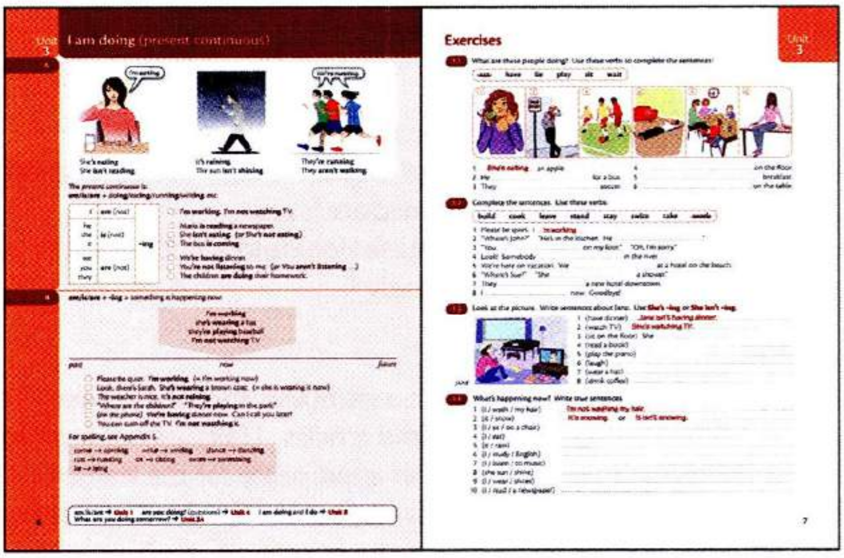


Study Guide (pages 257–269)

irLanguage.com

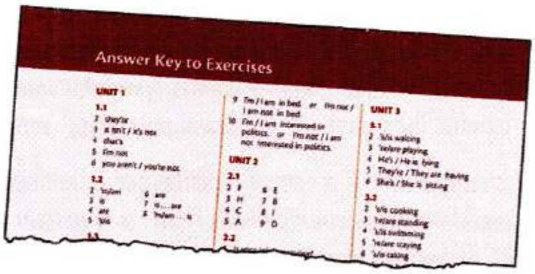
Each unit is two pages. The information is on the left-hand page and the exercises are on the right:

Study the left-hand page (information), and then do the exercises on the right-hand page.

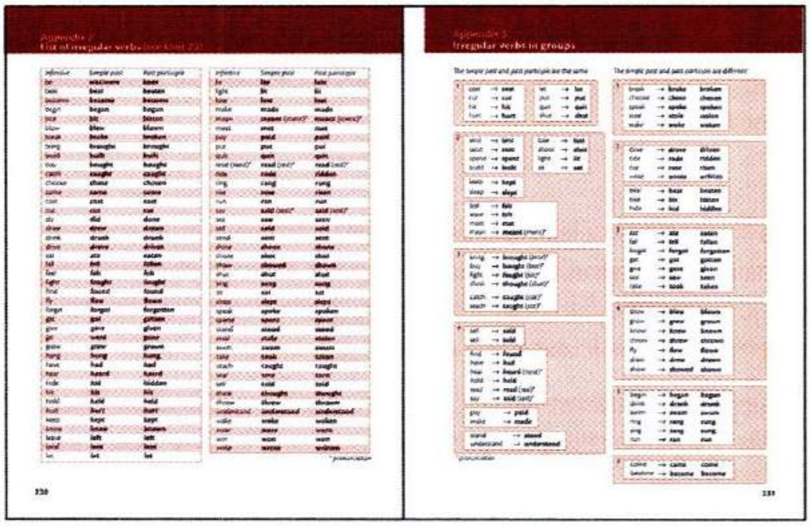


Use the *Answer Key* to check your answers. The *Answer Key* is on pages 270–296.

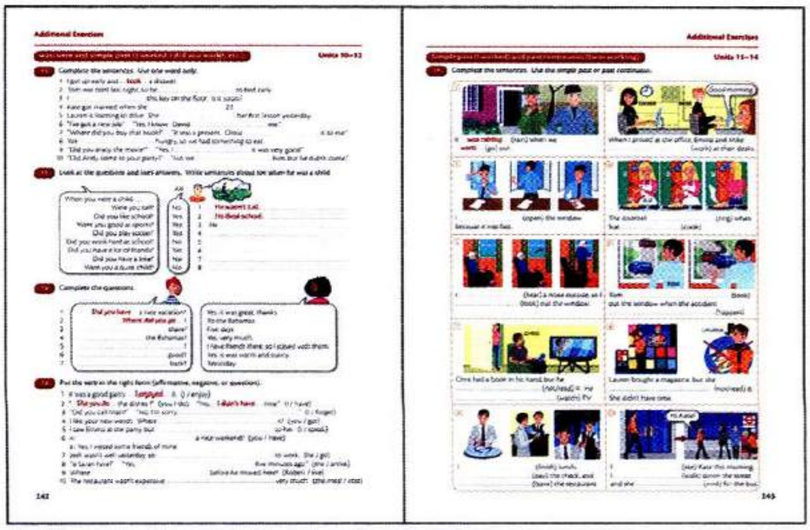
Study the left-hand page again if necessary.



Don't forget the seven *Appendixes* at the back of the book (pages 229–237). These will give you information about active and passive forms, irregular verbs, short forms, spelling, and phrasal verbs.



There are also *Additional Exercises* at the back of the book (pages 238–256). There is a list of these exercises on page 238.



To the Teacher

The most important features of this book are:

- It is a grammar book. It does not deal with other aspects of the language.
- It is for beginning to low-intermediate students of English. It does not cover areas of grammar which are not normally taught at beginning and low-intermediate levels.
- It is a reference book with exercises. It is not a course book and is not organized progressively.
- It is addressed to learners and intended for self-study.

Organization of the book

There are 113 units in the book, each one focusing on a particular area of grammar. The material is organized in grammatical categories, such as tenses, questions, and articles. Units are *not* ordered according to difficulty, and should therefore be selected and used in the order appropriate for the learner(s). The book should *not* be worked through from beginning to end. The units are listed in the *Contents*, and there is a comprehensive *Index* at the end of the book.

Each unit has the same format consisting of two facing pages. The grammar point is presented and explained on the left-hand page and the corresponding exercises are on the right. There are seven *Appendixes* (pages 229–237) dealing with active and passive forms, irregular verbs, short forms (contractions), spelling, and phrasal verbs. It might be useful for teachers to draw students' attention to these.

At the back of the book there is a set of *Additional Exercises* (pages 238–256). These exercises provide "mixed" practice bringing together grammar points from a number of different units (especially those concerning verb forms). There are 35 exercises in this section, and there is a full list on page 238.

Also at the back of the book there is a *Study Guide* to help students decide which units to study – see page 257.

Finally, there is an *Answer Key* (pages 270–296) for students to check their answers to all the exercises in the book. An edition without the *Study Guide* and *Answer Key* is available for teachers who would prefer it for their students.

Level

The book is for beginning learners, i.e., learners with very little English, but not complete beginners. It is intended mainly for beginning students who are beyond the early stages of a beginners' course. It could also be used by low-intermediate learners whose grammar is weaker than other aspects of their English or who have problems with particular areas of basic grammar.

The explanations are addressed to the beginning learner and are therefore as simple and as short as possible. The vocabulary used in the examples and exercises has also been restricted so that the book can be used at this level.

Using the book

The book can be used by students working alone (see *To the Student*) or as supplementary course material. In either case the book can serve as a beginning grammar book.

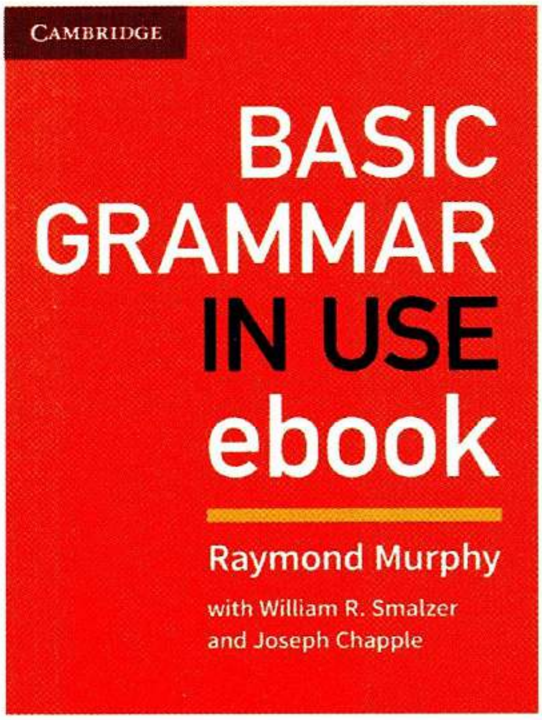
When used as course material, the book can be used for immediate consolidation or for later review or remedial work. It might be used by the whole class or by individual students needing extra help and practice.

In some cases it may be desirable to use the left-hand pages (presentation and explanation) in class, but it should be noted that these have been written for individual study and reference. In most cases, it would probably be better for teachers to present the grammar point in their preferred way with the exercises being done for homework. The left-hand page is then available for later reference by the student.

Some teachers may prefer to keep the book for review and remedial work. In this case, individual students or groups of students can be directed to the appropriate units for self-study and practice.

Interactive ebook

You can buy this book with or without an ebook. The ebook has the same grammar explanations and exercises as the book.



Using the ebook

You can use your ebook on an iPad, Android tablet, PC or Mac.

Using your ebook you can:

- **Listen to examples**
- **Save your answers**
- **Make notes**
- **Highlight text**
- **Bookmark pages**
- **Use the dictionary**

How to get your ebook

Follow the instructions on the inside front cover of this book.

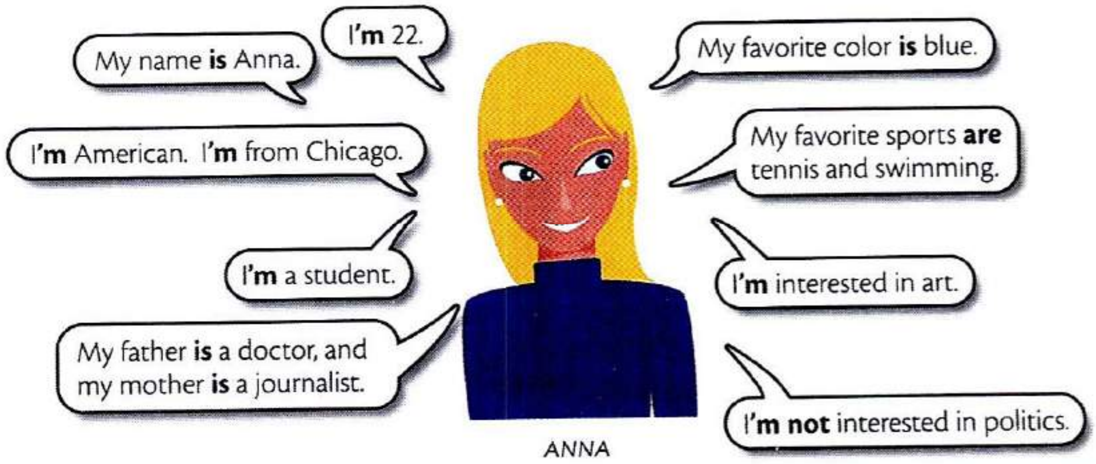
CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

BASIC GRAMMAR IN USE

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

Unit 1 am/is/are

A



ANNA

B

Affirmative

I	**am**	(I'**m**)
he she it	**is**	(he'**s**) (she'**s**) (it'**s**)
we you they	**are**	(we'**re**) (you'**re**) (they'**re**)

short form

Negative

I	**am not**	(I'**m not**)		
he she it	**is not**	(he'**s not** (she'**s not** (it'**s not**	*or* *or* *or*	he **isn't**) she **isn't**) it **isn't**)
we you they	**are not**	(we'**re not** (you'**re not** (they'**re not**	*or* *or* *or*	we **aren't**) you **aren't**) they **aren't**)

short forms

مرجع آموزش زبان ایرانیان
irLanguage.com

- I'**m** tired, but I'**m not** hungry.
- I'**m** 32 years old. My sister **is** 29.
- Alex **is** scared of dogs.
- Jane **is** Australian. She **isn't** American.
- These flowers **are** nice, and they **aren't** expensive.
- It'**s** 10:00. You'**re** late again.
- I'**m** cold. Can I close the window?

- James **isn't** a teacher. He'**s** a student.
- Anna and I **are** good friends.
- Paris **is** a beautiful city.

- Our house **is** near downtown.
- Tom **isn't** here. He'**s** at work.
- Your keys **are** on the table.

We say **it's** hot/warm/cold/sunny/dark, etc.

- **It's** sunny today, but **it isn't** warm.

C

that'**s** = that **is** there'**s** = there **is** here'**s** = here **is**

- Thank you. That'**s** very nice of you.
- Look! There'**s** Chris.
- "Here'**s** your key." "Thank you."

am/is/are (questions) → **Unit 2** **there is/are** → **Unit 35** **it's ...** → **Unit 37** **a/an** → **Unit 63**
(at) home → **Unit 106** short forms → **Appendix 4**

Exercises

1.1 Write the short form (**she's** / **we aren't**, etc.).

1 she is ..*she's*..
2 they are ....
3 it is not ....
4 that is ....
5 I am not ....
6 you are not ....

1.2 Write **am**, **is**, or **are**.

1 The weather ..*is*.. nice today.
2 I .... not rich.
3 This bag .... very heavy.
4 These bags .... very heavy.
5 Look! There .... Rachel.
6 My brother and I .... good tennis players.
7 Amy .... at home. Her children .... at school.
8 I .... a taxi driver. My sister .... a nurse.

1.3 Complete the sentences.

1 Matt is sick. ..*He's*.. in bed.
2 I'm not hungry, but .... thirsty.
3 Mr. Thomas is a very old man. .... 98.
4 These chairs aren't beautiful, but .... comfortable.
5 The weather is nice today. .... warm and sunny.
6 ".......... late." "No, I'm not. I'm early!"
7 Catherine isn't at home. .... at work.
8 ".......... your coat." "Oh, thank you very much."

1.4 Look at Anna's sentences in 1A. Now write sentences about yourself.

1 (name?) My ....
2 (age?) I ....
3 (from?) I ....
4 (job?) I ....
5 (favorite color or colors?) My ....
6 (interested in . . . ?) I ....

1.5 Write sentences for the pictures. Use:

angry	cold	hot	hungry	scared	~~thirsty~~

1 ..*She's thirsty.*..
2 They ....
3 He ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

1.6 Write true sentences, affirmative or negative. Use **is**/**isn't** or **are**/**aren't**.

1 (it / hot today) ..*It isn't hot today.*.. or ..*It's hot today.*..
2 (it / windy today) It ....
3 (my hands / cold) My ....
4 (Brazil / a very big country) ....
5 (diamonds / cheap) ....
6 (Quebec / in the United States) ....

Write true sentences, affirmative or negative. Use **I'm** / **I'm not**.

7 (tired) ..*I'm tired.*.. or ..*I'm not tired.*..
8 (hungry) I ....
9 (in bed) ....
10 (interested in politics) ....

→ Additional exercise 1 (page 238)

am/is/are (questions)

www.irLanguage.com

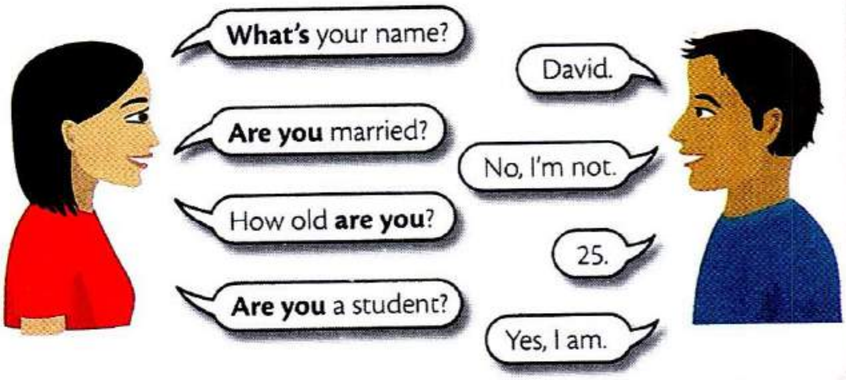
A

Affirmative

I	**am**
he she it	**is**
we you they	**are**

Question

am	I?
is	he? she? it?
are	we? you? they?



- "**Am I** late?" "No, **you're** on time."
- "**Is your mother** home?" "No, **she's** out."
- "**Are your parents** home?" "No, **they're** out."
- "**Is it** cold in your room?" "Yes, a little bit."
- **Your shoes are** nice. **Are they** new?

We say:

- **Is she** home? / **Is your mother** home? (*not* Is home your mother?)
- **Are they** new? / **Are your shoes** new? (*not* Are new your shoes?)

B

Where ... ? / What ... ? / Who ... ? / How ... ? / Why ... ?

- **Where is** your mother? Is she home?
- "**Where are** you from?" "Canada."
- "**What color is** your car?" "It's red."
- "**How old is** Joe?" "He's 24."
- "**How are** your parents?" "They're fine."
- These shoes are nice. **How much are** they?
- This hotel isn't very good. **Why is** it so expensive?

what**'s** = what **is** who**'s** = who **is** how**'s** = how **is** where**'s** = where **is**

- **What's** your phone number?
- **Where's** Emily?
- **Who's** that man?
- **How's** your father?

C

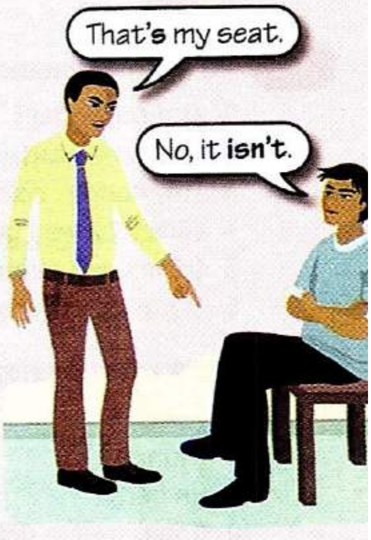
Short answers

Yes,	I	**am.**
	he she it	**is.**
	we you they	**are.**

No,	I**'m**	**not.**
	he**'s** she**'s** it**'s**	
	we**'re** you**'re** they**'re**	

or

No,	he she it	**isn't.**
	we you they	**aren't.**



- "**Are you** tired?" "**Yes, I am.**"
- "**Are you** hungry?" "**No, I'm not**, but I'm thirsty."
- "**Is your friend** Japanese?" "**Yes, he is.**"
- "**Are these** your keys?" "**Yes, they are.**"
- "**That's** my seat." "**No, it isn't.**"

am/is/are → Unit 1 questions → Unit 42 what/which/how → Unit 45 (at) home → Unit 106

Exercises

2.1 Find the right answers for the questions.

1 Where's the camera?	A Toronto.	1 ...G...
2 Is your car blue?	B No, I'm not.	2 ....
3 Is Nicole from London?	C Yes, you are.	3 ....
4 Am I late?	D My sister.	4 ....
5 Where's Megan from?	E Black.	5 ....
6 What color is your bag?	F No, it's black.	6 ....
7 Are you hungry?	G In your bag.	7 ....
8 How is Christopher?	H No, she's American.	8 ....
9 Who's that woman?	I Fine.	9 ....

2.2 Make questions with these words.

1 (is / home / your mother) ... Is your mother home ...?
2 (your parents / are / how) ... How are your parents ...?
3 (interesting / is / your job) ....?
4 (the stores / are / open today) ....?
5 (from / where / you / are) ....?
6 (interested in sports / you / are) ....?
7 (is / near here / the train station) ....?
8 (at school / are / your children) ....?
9 (you / are / late / why) ....?

2.3 Complete the questions. Use **What . . . / Who . . . / Where . . . / How . . . .**

1 .... How are ... your children?	They're fine.
2 .... the bus stop?	At the end of the block.
3 .... your children?	Five, six, and ten.
4 .... these oranges?	$1.50 a pound.
5 .... your favorite sport?	Skiing.
6 .... the man in this photo?	That's my father.
7 .... your new shoes?	Black.

2.4 Write the questions.

ERIC

1 (name ?) ... What's your name? ...	Eric.
2 (Australian?)	No, I'm Canadian.
3 (how old?)	I'm 30.
4 (a teacher?)	No, I'm a lawyer.
5 (married?)	Yes, I am.
6 (wife a lawyer?)	No, she's a teacher.
7 (from?)	She's from Mexico.
8 (her name?)	Ana.
9 (how old?)	She's 27.

2.5 Write short answers (**Yes, I am. / No, he isn't.**, etc.).

1 Are you married? ... No, I'm not. ...
2 Are you thirsty? ....
3 Is it cold today? ....
4 Are your hands cold? ....
5 Is it dark now? ....
6 Are you a teacher? ....

→ **Additional exercises 1–2 (pages 238–239)**

I am doing (present continuous)

A

She**'s eating**.
She **isn't reading**.

It**'s raining**.
The sun **isn't shining**.

They**'re running**.
They **aren't walking**.

The *present continuous* is:
am/is/are + do**ing**/eat**ing**/runn**ing**/writ**ing**, etc.

I	**am** (not)	-ing
he she it	**is** (not)	-ing
we you they	**are** (not)	-ing

- I**'m working**. I**'m not watching** TV.
- Maria **is reading** a newspaper.
- She **isn't eating**. (*or* She**'s not eating**.)
- The bus **is coming**.
- We**'re having** dinner.
- You**'re not listening** to me. (*or* You **aren't listening** . . .)
- The children **are doing** their homework.

B

am/is/are + -ing = something is happening *now*:

I**'m working**
she**'s wearing** a hat
they**'re playing** baseball
I**'m not watching** TV

past — *now* — *future*

- Please be quiet. I**'m working**. (= I'm working now)
- Look, there's Sarah. She**'s wearing** a brown coat. (= she is wearing it now)
- The weather is nice. It**'s not raining**.
- "Where are the children?" "They**'re playing** in the park."
- *(on the phone)* We**'re having** dinner now. Can I call you later?
- You can turn off the TV. I**'m not watching** it.

For spelling, see Appendix 5.

come → com**ing** write → writ**ing** dance → danc**ing**
run → run**ning** sit → sit**ting** swim → swim**ming**
lie → l**ying**

مرجع آموزش زبان ایرانیان
irLanguage.com

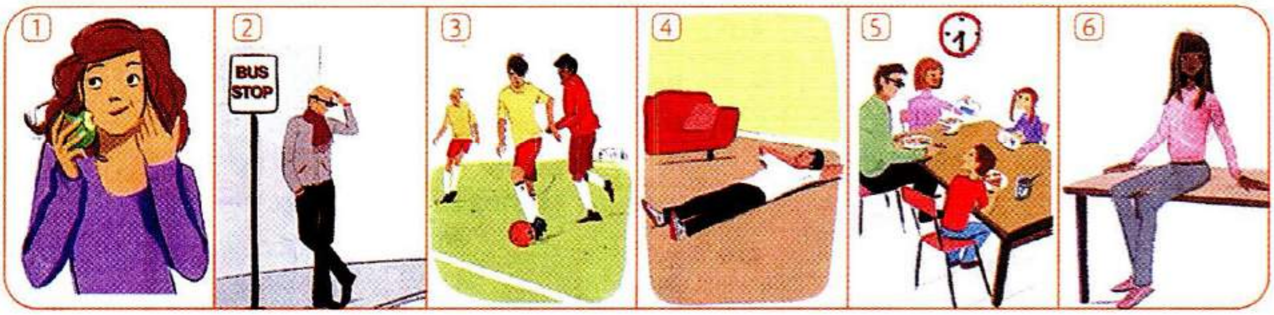
am/is/are → **Unit 1** **are you doing?** (questions) → **Unit 4** **I am doing** and **I do** → **Unit 8**
What are you doing tomorrow? → **Unit 24**

Exercises

3.1 What are these people doing? Use these verbs to complete the sentences:

~~eat~~ have lie play sit wait

مرجع زبان ایرانیان



1 *She's eating* an apple.
2 He .... for a bus.
3 They .... soccer.
4 .... on the floor.
5 .... breakfast.
6 .... on the table.

3.2 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs:

build cook leave stand stay swim take ~~work~~

1 Please be quiet. I *'m working*.
2 "Where's John?" "He's in the kitchen. He ...."
3 "You .... on my foot." "Oh, I'm sorry."
4 Look! Somebody .... in the river.
5 We're here on vacation. We .... at a hotel on the beach.
6 "Where's Sue?" "She .... a shower."
7 They .... a new hotel downtown.
8 I .... now. Goodbye!

3.3 Look at the picture. Write sentences about Jane. Use **She's -ing** or **She isn't -ing**.

JANE

1 (have dinner) *Jane isn't having dinner.*
2 (watch TV) *She's watching TV.*
3 (sit on the floor) She ....
4 (read a book) ....
5 (play the piano) ....
6 (laugh) ....
7 (wear a hat) ....
8 (drink coffee) ....

3.4 What's happening now? Write true sentences.

1 (I / wash / my hair) *I'm not washing my hair.*
2 (it / snow) *It's snowing.* **or** *It isn't snowing.*
3 (I / sit / on a chair) ....
4 (I / eat) ....
5 (it / rain) ....
6 (I / study / English) ....
7 (I / listen / to music) ....
8 (the sun / shine) ....
9 (I / wear / shoes) ....
10 (I / read / a newspaper) ....

are you doing? (present continuous questions)

A

Affirmative

I	**am**	
he she it	**is**	**doing** **working** **going** **staying**, etc.
we you they	**are**	

Question

am	I	
is	he she it	**doing?** **working?** **going?** **staying?**, etc.
are	we you they	

- "**Are** you **feeling** OK?" "Yes, I'm fine, thanks."
- "**Is** it **raining**?" "Yes, take an umbrella."
- Why **are** you **wearing** a coat? It's not cold.
- "What**'s** Eric **doing**?" "He**'s studying** for his exams."
- "What **are** the children **doing**?" "They**'re watching** TV."
- Look, there's Emily! Where**'s** she **going**?
- Who **are** you **waiting** for? **Are** you **waiting** for Sue?

B

Study the word order:

is/are + *subject* + **-ing**

	Is	he	**working** today?
	Is	Ben	**working** today? (*not* Is working Ben today?)
Where	**are**	they	**going**?
Where	**are**	those people	**going**? (*not* Where are going those people?)

C

Short answers

Yes,	I	**am.**
	he she it	**is.**
	we you they	**are.**

No,	I**'m**	**not.**
	he**'s** she**'s** it**'s**	
	we**'re** you**'re** they**'re**	

or

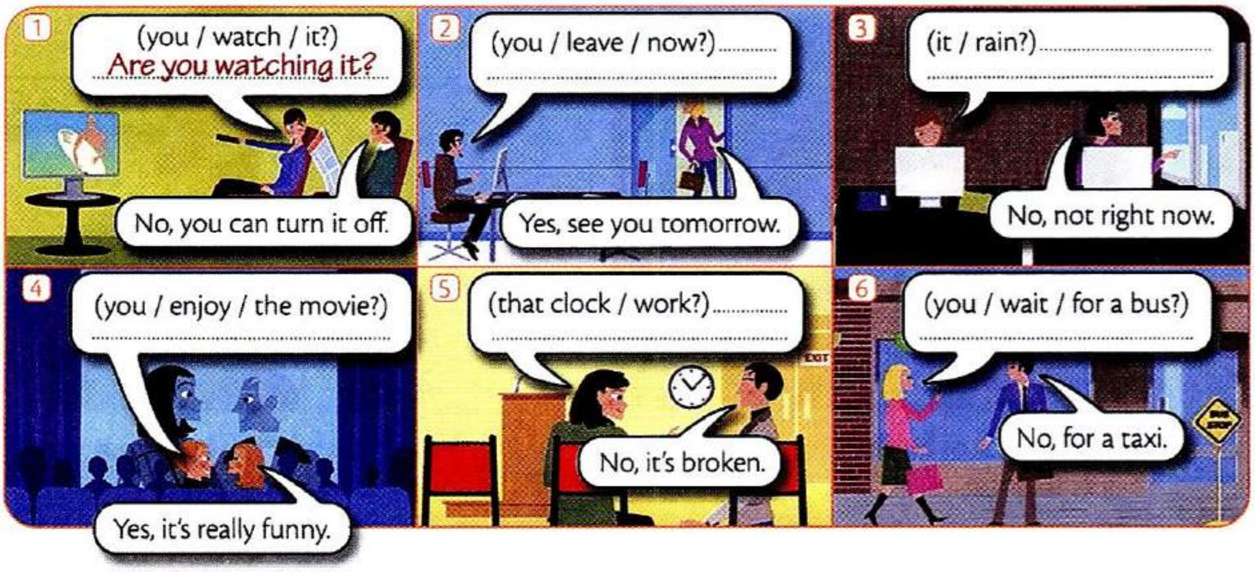
No,	he she it	**isn't.**
	we you they	**aren't.**

- "**Are** you **leaving** now?" "**Yes, I am.**"
- "**Is** Ben **working** today?" "**Yes, he is.**"
- "**Is** it **raining**?" "**No, it isn't.**"
- "**Are** your friends **staying** at a hotel?" "**No, they aren't.** They're staying with me."

I am doing → **Unit 3** **What are you doing tomorrow?** → **Unit 24** questions → **Units 42–45**

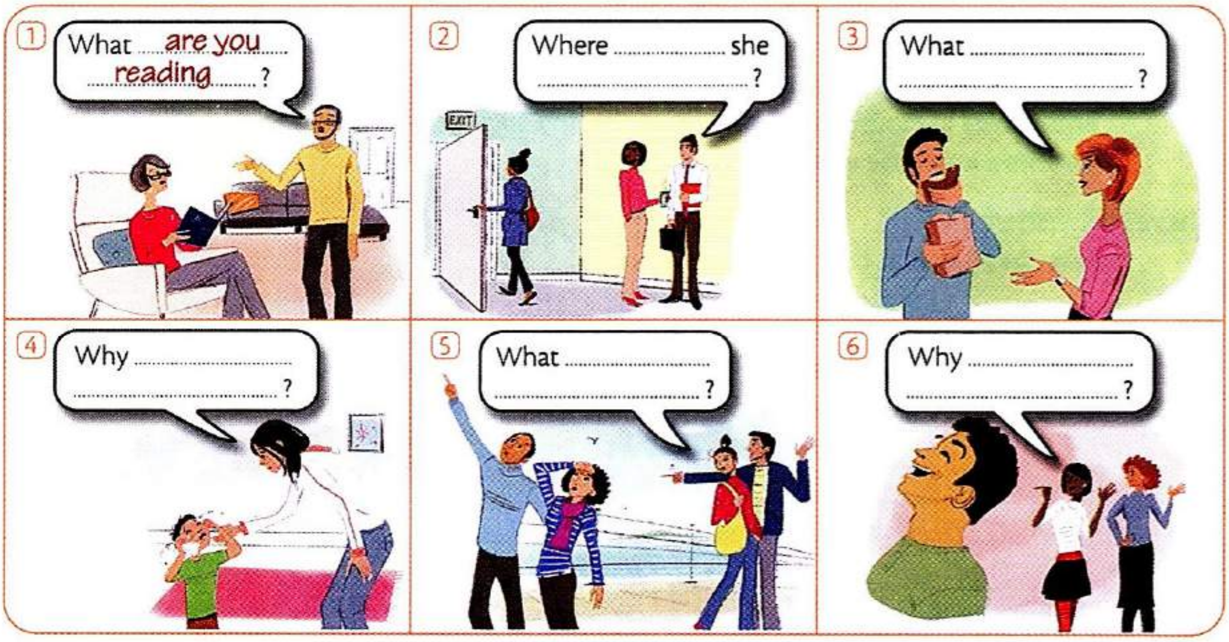
Exercises

4.1 Look at the pictures and write the questions.



4.2 Look at the pictures and complete the questions. Use:

cry eat go laugh look at ~~read~~



4.3 Make questions with these words. Put the words in the right order.

1. (is / working / Ben / today) Is Ben working today?
2. (what / the children / are / doing) What are the children doing?
3. (you / are / listening / to me) ......?
4. (where / your friends / are / going) ......?
5. (are / watching / your parents / TV) ......?
6. (what / Jessica / is / cooking) ......?
7. (why / you / are / looking / at me) ......?
8. (is / coming / the bus) ......?

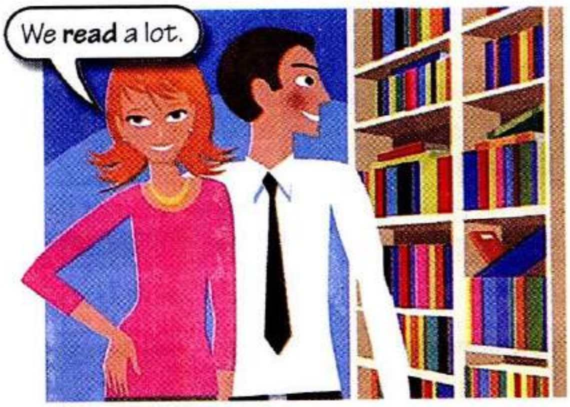
4.4 Write short answers (**Yes, I am.** / **No, he isn't.**, etc.).

1. Are you watching TV? No, I'm not.
2. Are you wearing a watch? ......
3. Are you eating something? ......
4. Is it raining? ......
5. Are you sitting on the floor? ......
6. Are you feeling all right? ......

→ **Additional exercise 3 (page 239)**

Unit 5 **I do/work/like**, etc. (simple present)

A



They have a lot of books.
They **read** a lot.

مرجع آموزش زبان ایرانیان
www.irLanguage.com

He's eating an ice cream cone.
He **likes** ice cream.

They **read** / he **likes** / I **work**, etc. = the *simple present*:

I/we/you/they	**read**	**like**	**work**	**live**	**watch**	**do**	**have**
he/she/it	**reads**	**likes**	**works**	**lives**	**watches**	**does**	**has**

Remember:
he works / **she** lives / **it** rains, etc.

- **I work** in an office. **My brother works** in a bank. (*not* My brother work)
- **Emily lives** in Houston. **Her parents live** in Chicago.
- **It rains** a lot in the winter.

I **have** → he/she/it **has**:

- **John has** lunch at home every day.

For spelling, see Appendix 5.

-es after **-s** / **-sh** / **-ch**:	pass → pass**es**	fini**sh** → finish**es**	wat**ch** → watch**es**
-y → **-ies**:	stud**y** → stud**ies**	tr**y** → tr**ies**	
also:	do → do**es**	go → go**es**	

B

We use the *simple present* for things that are true in general, or for things that happen sometimes or all the time:

- I **like** big cities.
- Your English is good. You **speak** very well.
- Tom **works** very hard. He **starts** at 7:30 and **finishes** at 8:00 at night.
- The earth **goes** around the sun.
- We **do** a lot of different things in our free time.
- It **costs** a lot of money to build a hospital.

C

always/never/often/usually/sometimes + *simple present*

- Sue **always gets** to work early. (*not* Sue gets always)
- I **never eat** breakfast. (*not* I eat never)
- We **often sleep** late on weekends.
- Mark **usually plays** tennis on Sundays.
- I **sometimes walk** to work, but not very often.

I don't . . . (negative) ➔ **Unit 6** **Do you** . . . ? (questions) ➔ **Unit 7** **I am doing** and **I do** ➔ **Unit 8**
always/usually/often, etc. (word order) ➔ **Unit 92**

Exercises

5.1 Write these verbs with **-s** or **-es**.

1 (read) she *reads*
2 (think) he ....
3 (fly) it ....
4 (dance) he ....
5 (have) she ....
6 (finish) it ....

5.2 Complete the sentences about the people in the pictures. Use:

eat go live ~~play~~ play sleep

1 *He plays* the piano.
2 They .... in a very big house.
3 .... a lot of fruit.
4 .... tennis.
5 .... to the movies a lot.
6 .... seven hours a night.

5.3 Complete the sentences. Use:

boil close cost cost like like meet open ~~speak~~ teach wash

1 Maria *speaks* four languages.
2 Banks usually .... at 9:00 in the morning.
3 The art museum .... at 5:00 in the afternoon.
4 Jessica is a teacher. She .... math to young children.
5 My job is very interesting. I .... a lot of people.
6 Mike's car is always dirty. He never .... it.
7 Food is expensive. It .... a lot of money.
8 Shoes are expensive. They .... a lot of money.
9 Water .... at 100 degrees Celsius.
10 Julia and I are good friends. I .... her, and she .... me.

5.4 Write sentences from these words. Use the right form of the verb (**arrive** or **arrives**, etc.).

1 (always / early / Sue / arrive) *Sue always arrives early.*
2 (to the movies / never / I / go) I ....
3 (work / Hannah / hard / always) ....
4 (like / chocolate / children / usually) ....
5 (Julia / parties / enjoy / always) ....
6 (often / people's names / I / forget) ....
7 (TV / Nick / watch / never) ....
8 (usually / dinner / we / have / at 6:30) ....
9 (Jenn / always / nice clothes / wear) ....

5.5 Write sentences about yourself. Use **always/never/often/usually/sometimes**.

1 (watch TV in the evening) *I usually watch TV in the evening.*
2 (read in bed) I ....
3 (get up before 7:00) ....
4 (go to work/school by bus) ....
5 (drink coffee in the morning) ....

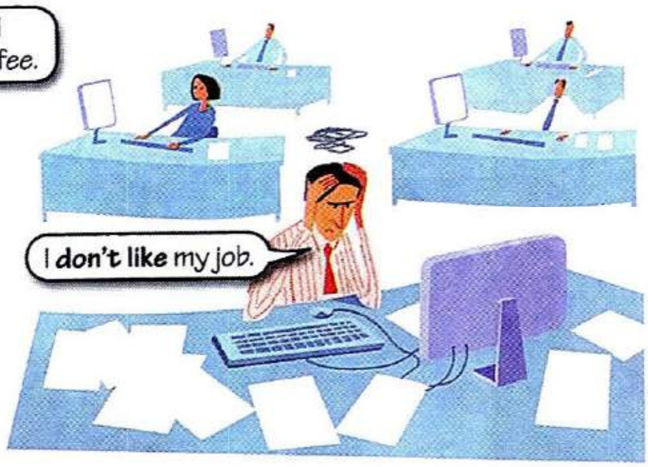
Unit 6
I don't . . . (simple present negative)

www.irLanguage.com

A

The *simple present negative* is **don't/doesn't** + *verb*:

She **doesn't drink** coffee.



He **doesn't like** his job.

Affirmative

I we you they	**work** **like** **do** **have**
he she it	**works** **likes** **does** **has**

Negative

I we you they	**don't** **(do not)**	**work** **like** **do** **have**
he she it	**doesn't** **(does not)**	

- I **drink** coffee, but I **don't drink** tea.
- Sue **drinks** tea, but she **doesn't drink** coffee.
- You **don't work** very hard.
- We **don't watch** TV very often.
- The weather is usually nice. It **doesn't rain** very often.
- Matt and Nicole **don't know** many people.

B

Remember:

I/we/you/they	**don't** . . .
he/she/it	**doesn't** . . .

- **I don't** like football.
- **He doesn't** like football.

- **I don't** like Josh, and **Josh doesn't** like me. (*not* Josh don't like)
- **My car doesn't** use much gas. (*not* My car don't use)
- Sometimes he is late, but **it doesn't** happen very often.

C

We use **don't/doesn't** + *base form* (don't **like** / doesn't **speak** / doesn't **do**, etc.):

- I **don't like** to wash the car. I **don't do** it very often.
- Sarah **speaks** Spanish, but she **doesn't speak** Italian. (*not* doesn't speaks)
- Bill **doesn't do** his job very well. (*not* Bill doesn't his job)
- Mária **doesn't** usually **have** breakfast. (*not* doesn't . . . has)

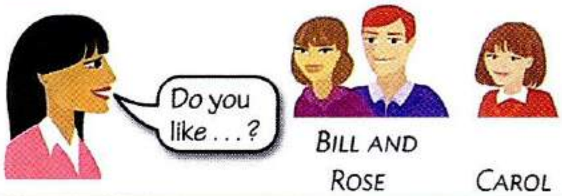
I do/work/like, etc. (simple present) ➜ **Unit 5** **Do you** . . . ? (simple present questions) ➜ **Unit 7**

Exercises

6.1 Write the negative.

1 I play the piano very well. ....*I don't play the piano very well.*....
2 Anna plays the piano very well. Anna ....
3 They know my phone number. They ....
4 We work very hard. ....
5 Mike has a car. ....
6 You do the same thing every day. ....

6.2 Study the information and write sentences with **like**.



	Bill and Rose	Carol	You
1 classical music?	yes	no	?
2 boxing?	no	yes	
3 horror movies?	yes	no	

1 ....*Bill and Rose like classical music.*....
Carol ....
I .... classical music.
2 Bill and Rose ....
Carol ....
I ....
3 ....
....
....

6.3 Write about yourself. Use:

I never . . . or **I . . . a lot** or **I don't . . . very often.**

1 (watch TV) ....*I don't watch TV very often.*.... or ....*I never watch TV.*.... or ....*I watch TV a lot.*....
2 (go to the theater) ....
3 (ride a bike) ....
4 (eat in restaurants) ....
5 (travel by train) ....

6.4 Complete the sentences. All of them are negative. Use **don't/doesn't** + these verbs:

cost go know ~~rain~~ see use wear

1 The weather here is usually nice. It ....*doesn't rain*.... a lot.
2 Andy has a car, but he .... it very often.
3 Dan and his friends like movies, but they .... to the movies very often.
4 Amanda is married, but she .... a ring.
5 I .... much about politics. I'm not interested in it.
6 The Regent Hotel isn't expensive. It .... much to stay there.
7 David lives near us, but we .... him very often.

6.5 Put the verb into the correct form, affirmative or negative.

1 Lauren ....*speaks*.... four languages – English, Korean, Arabic, and Spanish. (speak)
2 I ....*don't like*.... my job. It's very boring. (like)
3 "Where's David?" "I'm sorry. I ...." (know)
4 Sue is a very quiet person. She .... very much. (talk)
5 Andy .... a lot of coffee. It's his favorite drink. (drink)
6 That's not true! I .... it! (believe)
7 That's a very beautiful picture. I .... it a lot. (like)
8 John is a vegetarian. He .... meat. (eat)

Unit 7 Do you . . . ? (simple present questions)

A

We use **do/does** in *simple present questions*:

Affirmative

I we you they	**work** **like** **do** **have**
he she it	**works** **likes** **does** **has**

Question

do	I we you they	**work**? **like**? **do**? **have**?
does	he she it	

B

Study the word order:

do/does + *subject* + *base form*

	Do	you	**play**	the guitar?
	Do	your friends	**live**	near here?
	Does	Chris	**work**	on Sundays?
	Does	it	**rain**	a lot here?
Where	**do**	your parents	**live**?	
How often	**do**	you	**wash**	your hair?
What	**does**	this word	**mean**?	
How much	**does**	it	**cost**	to fly to Puerto Rico?

Questions with **always** and **usually**:

	Does	Chris	**always**	**work**	on Sundays?
What	**do**	you	**usually**	**do**	on weekends?

What do you **do**? = What's your job?

- "**What do** you **do**?" "I work in a bank."

C

Remember:

do I/we/you/they . . .
does he/she/it . . .

- **Do they** like music?
- **Does he** like music?

D

Short answers

Yes,	I/we/you/they	**do**.
	he/she/it	**does**.

No,	I/we/you/they	**don't**.
	he/she/it	**doesn't**.

- "**Do you** play the guitar?" "**No, I don't.**"
- "**Do your parents** speak English?" "**Yes, they do.**"
- "**Does Ryan** work hard?" "**Yes, he does.**"
- "**Does your sister** live in Vancouver?" "**No, she doesn't.**"

I do/work/like, etc. → **Unit 5** **I don't** . . . (negative) → **Unit 6** questions → **Units 42–45**

Exercises

7.1 Write questions with **Do ... ?** and **Does ... ?**

1. I like chocolate. How about you? *Do you like chocolate* ?
2. I play tennis. How about you? .... you .... ?
3. You live near here. How about Emily? .... Emily .... ?
4. Tom plays tennis. How about his friends? .... ?
5. You speak English. How about your brother? .... ?
6. I do yoga every morning. How about you? .... ?
7. Sue often travels on business. How about Eric? .... ?
8. I want to be famous. How about you? .... ?
9. You work hard. How about Anna? .... ?

7.2 Make questions from these words + **do/does**. Put the words in the right order.

1. (where / live / your parents) *Where do your parents live* ?
2. (you / early / always / get up) *Do you always get up early* ?
3. (how often / TV / you / watch) .... ?
4. (you / want / what / for dinner) .... ?
5. (like / you / football) .... ?
6. (your brother / like / football) .... ?
7. (what / you / do / in your free time) .... ?
8. (your sister / work / where) .... ?
9. (breakfast / always / you / have) .... ?
10. (what / mean / this word) .... ?
11. (in the winter / snow / it / here) .... ?
12. (go / usually / to bed / what time / you)
    .... ?
13. (how much / to call Mexico / it / cost)
    .... ?
14. (you / for breakfast / have / usually / what)
    .... ?

7.3 Complete the questions. Use these verbs:

~~do~~ **do** **enjoy** **get** **like** **start** **teach** **work**

1. What *do you do* ? — I work in a bookstore.
2. .... it? — It's OK.
3. What time .... in the morning? — At 9:00.
4. .... on Saturdays? — Sometimes.
5. How .... to work? — Usually by bus.
6. And your husband. What .... ? — He's a teacher.
7. What .... ? — Science.
8. .... his job? — Yes, he loves it.

7.4 Write short answers (**Yes, he does.** / **No, I don't.** etc.).

1. Do you watch TV a lot? *No, I don't.* or *Yes, I do.*
2. Do you live in a big city? ....
3. Do you ever ride a bike? ....
4. Does it rain a lot where you live? ....
5. Do you play the piano? ....

→ **Additional exercises 4–7 (pages 239–240)**

Unit 8 I am doing (present continuous) and I do (simple present)

A

Jack is watching television.
He is *not* playing the guitar.

But Jack has a guitar.
He plays it a lot, and he plays very well.

Jack **plays** the guitar,
but he **is not playing** the guitar now.

Is he playing the guitar?	**No, he isn't.**	*(present continuous)*
Does he play the guitar?	**Yes, he does.**	*(simple present)*

B

Present continuous (**I am doing**) = now, at the time of speaking:

I'm doing

past — *now* — *future*

- Please be quiet. I'**m** work**ing**. (*not* I work)
- Tom **is** tak**ing** a shower at the moment. (*not* Tom takes)
- Take an umbrella with you. It'**s** rain**ing**.
- You can turn off the TV. I'**m** not watch**ing** it.
- Why are you under the table? What **are** you do**ing**?

C

Simple present (**I do**) = in general, all the time, or sometimes:

I do

past — *now* — *future*

- I **work** every day from 9:00 to 5:30.
- Tom **takes** a shower every morning.
- It **rains** a lot there in the winter.
- I **don't watch** TV very often.
- What **do** you usually **do** on weekends?

D

We do *not* use these verbs in the *present continuous* (**I am -ing**):

like	**want**	**know**	**understand**	**remember**
prefer	**need**	**mean**	**believe**	**forget**

Use only *the simple present* with these verbs (I **want** / **do** you **like**?, etc.):

- I'm tired. I **want** to go home. (*not* I'm wanting)
- "**Do** you **know** that girl?" "Yes, but I **don't remember** her name."
- I **don't understand**. What **do** you **mean**?

present continuous ➜ **Units 3–4** simple present ➜ **Units 5–7** present for the future ➜ **Unit 24**

Exercises

8.1 Answer the questions about the pictures.

Does he take photographs? Yes, he does.
Is he taking a photograph? No, he isn't.
What is he doing?
He's taking a bath.

Is she driving a bus? ……
Does she drive a bus? ……
What is she doing?
……

Does he wash windows? ……
Is he washing a window? ……
What is he doing?
……

Are they teaching? ……
Do they teach? ……
What do they do?
……

8.2 Complete the sentences with **am/is/are** or **do/don't/does/doesn't**.

1. Excuse me, do you speak English?
2. "Where's Kate?" "I …… know."
3. What's so funny? Why …… you laughing?
4. "What …… your sister do?" "She's a dentist."
5. It …… raining. I …… want to go out in the rain.
6. "Where …… you come from?" "Canada."
7. How much …… it cost to stay at this hotel? Is it expensive?
8. Steve is a good tennis player, but he …… play very often.

8.3 Put the verb in the *present continuous* (**I am doing**) or the *simple present* (**I do**).

1. Excuse me, do you speak (you/speak) English?
2. "Where's Tom?" "He's taking (he/take) a shower."
3. I don't watch (I/not/watch) TV very often.
4. Listen! Somebody …… (sing).
5. Sarah is tired. …… (she/want) to go home now.
6. How often …… (you/use) your car? Every day?
7. "Excuse me, but …… (you/sit) in my seat." "Oh, I'm sorry."
8. I'm sorry, …… (I/not/understand). Can you speak more slowly?
9. It's late. …… (I/go) home now. …… (you/come) with me?
10. What time …… (your father / finish) work every day?
11. You can turn off the radio. …… (I/not/listen) to it.
12. "Where's Eric?" "In the kitchen. …… (he/cook) something."
13. Josh …… (not/usually/drive) to work. He …… (usually/walk).
14. Sue …… (not/like) coffee. …… (she/prefer) tea.

→ **Additional exercises 8–9 (page 241)**

Unit 9

I have ... and I've got ...

A

You can say **I have** or **I've got**, **he has** or **he's got**:

I we you they	**have**	*or*	I we you they	**have got**	(I**'ve got**) (we**'ve got**) (you**'ve got**) (they**'ve got**)
he she it	**has**	*or*	he she it	**has got**	(he**'s got**) (she**'s got**) (it**'s got**)

short form

- I **have** blue eyes. *or* I**'ve got** blue eyes.
- Tom **has** two sisters. *or* Tom **has got** two sisters.
- Our car **has** four doors. *or* Our car **has got** four doors.
- Sarah isn't feeling well. She **has** a headache. *or* She**'s got** a headache.
- They like animals. They **have** a horse, three dogs, and six cats. *or* They**'ve got** a horse ...

B

I **don't have** / I **haven't got**, etc. (negative)

You can say:

I/you we/they	**don't**	**have**	*or*	I/you we/they	**haven't**	**got**
he/she it	**doesn't**			he/she it	**hasn't**	

- I **don't have** a car. *or* I **haven't got** a car.
- They **don't have** any children. *or* They **haven't got** any children.
- It's a nice house, but it **doesn't have** a garage. *or* ... it **hasn't got** a garage.
- Mariko **doesn't have** a job right now. *or* Mariko **hasn't got** a job right now.

C

do you **have**? / **have** you **got**?, etc. (questions)

You can say:

do	I/you we/they	**have**	*or*	**have**	I/you we/they	**got**
does	he/she it			**has**	he/she it	

- "**Do** you **have** a camera?" "No, I **don't**." *or*
  "**Have** you **got** a camera?" "No, I **haven't**."
- "**Does** Jennifer **have** a car?" "Yes, she **does**." *or*
  "**Has** Jennifer **got** a car?" "Yes, she **has**."
- What kind of car **does** she **have**? *or* ... **has** she **got**?
- How many children **do** they **have**? *or* ... **have** they **got**?

had / didn't have (past) ➜ **Units 11–12**   **have breakfast / have a headache**, etc. ➜ **Unit 56**
some and **any** ➜ **Unit 74**

Exercises

9.1 Write these sentences with **have/has** or **don't have / doesn't have**. The meaning is the same.

1 They have got two children. ......*They have two children.*......
2 She hasn't got a key. ......*She doesn't have a key.*......
3 He has got a new job. He ....
4 Have you got an umbrella? ....
5 We have got a lot of work to do. ....
6 I haven't got your phone number. ....
7 Has your father got a car? ....
8 How much money have we got? ....

9.2 Write these sentences with **got**. The meaning is the same.

1 Do you have any money? ......*Have you got any money?*......
2 I don't have many clothes. I ....
3 Does Tom have a brother? ....
4 How many children do they have? ....
5 Do you have any questions? ....
6 Sam doesn't have a job. ....

9.3 Read the questions and answers. Then write sentences about Mark.

	Question	Answer (Mark)	
1	Do you have a car?	No.	1 ......*He doesn't have a car.*......
2	Do you have a bike?	Yes.	2 He ....
3	Do you have a dog?	No.	3 ....
4	Do you have a cell phone?	Yes.	4 ....
5	Do you have a watch?	No.	5 ....
6	Do you have any brothers or sisters?	Yes, two brothers and a sister.	6 ....

MARK

What about you? Write sentences with **I have** or **I don't have**.

7 (a dog) ....
8 (a bike) ....
9 (brothers/sisters) ....

9.4 Complete the sentences with **have**, **has**, **don't have**, or **doesn't have**.

1 Sarah ...*doesn't have*... a car. She goes everywhere by bike.
2 They like animals. They ...*have*... three dogs and two cats.
3 Matt isn't happy. He .... a lot of problems.
4 They are always busy. They .... much free time.
5 "What's wrong?" "I .... something in my eye."
6 "Where's my pen?" "I don't know. I .... it."
7 Melissa wants to go to the concert, but she .... a ticket.

9.5 Complete the sentences. Use **have/has** or **don't have / doesn't have** with:

a lot of friends | **much time** | ~~**a headache**~~ | **six legs** | **a job** | **a key**

1 I'm not feeling well. I ...*have a headache.*......
2 Everybody likes Tom. He ....
3 She can't open the door. She ....
4 Hurry! We ....
5 An insect ....
6 I'm unemployed. I ....

→ Additional exercises 5–7 (page 240)

was/were

A

last night *now*

Robert **is** at work now.

At midnight last night, he **wasn't** at work.

He **was** in bed.
He **was** asleep.

am/is (present) → **was** (past):

I **am** tired. (now)	I **was** tired **last night**.
Where **is** Kate? (now)	Where **was** Kate **yesterday**?
The weather **is** nice today.	The weather **was** nice **last week**.

are (present) → **were** (past):

You **are** late. (now)	You **were** late **yesterday**.
They **aren't** here. (now)	They **weren't** here **last Sunday**.

B

Affirmative

I he she it	**was**
we you they	**were**

Negative

I he she it	**was not** (**wasn't**)
we you they	**were not** (**weren't**)

Question

was	I? he? she? it?
were	we? you? they?

- Last year Rachel **was** 22, so she **is** 23 now.
- When I **was** a child, I **was** scared of dogs.
- We **were** hungry after the trip, but we **weren't** tired.
- The hotel **was** comfortable, but it **wasn't** expensive.

- **Was** the weather nice when you **were** on vacation?
- Your shoes are nice. **Were** they expensive?
- Why **were** you late this morning?

C

Short answers

Yes,	I/he/she/it	**was**.
	we/you/they	**were**.

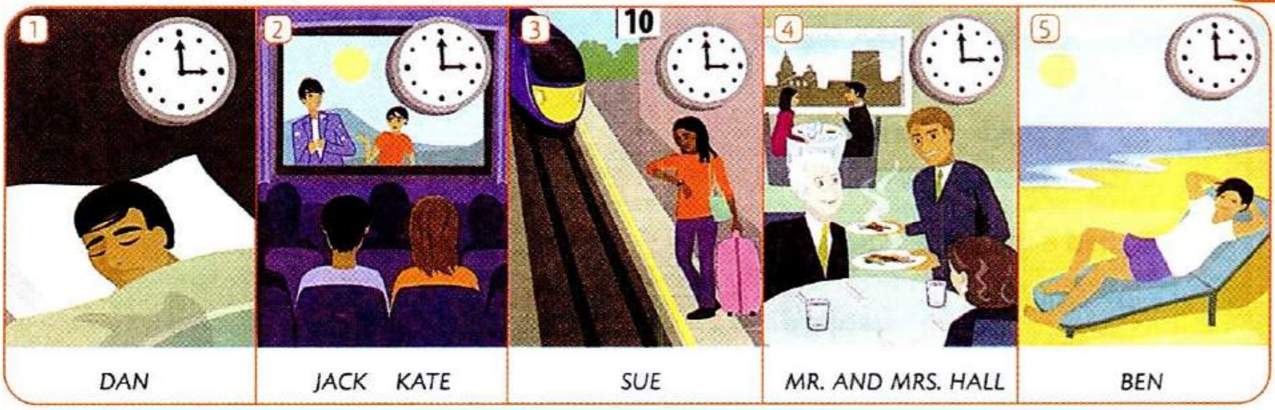
No,	I/he/she/it	**wasn't**.
	we/you/they	**weren't**.

- "**Were you** late?" "**No, I wasn't.**"
- "**Was Tom** at work yesterday?" "**Yes, he was.**"
- "**Were Sue and Jim** at the party?" "**No, they weren't.**"

am/is/are ➜ Units 1–2 I was doing ➜ Unit 13

Exercises

10.1 Where were these people at 3:00 yesterday afternoon?



1 Dan was in bed.
2 Jack and Kate ....
3 Sue ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 And you? I ....

10.2 Write **am/is/are** (present) or **was/were** (past).

1 Last year she ...was... 22, so she ...is... 23 now.
2 Today the weather .... nice, but yesterday it .... very cold.
3 I .... hungry. Can I have something to eat?
4 I feel fine this morning, but I .... very tired last night.
5 Where .... you at 11:00 last Friday morning?
6 Don't buy those shoes. They .... very expensive.
7 I like your new jacket. .... it expensive?
8 This time last year I .... in Paris.
9 "Where .... Sam and Joe?" "I don't know. They .... here a few minutes ago."

10.3 Write **was/were** or **wasn't/weren't**.

1 We weren't happy with the hotel. Our room ...was... very small, and it ...wasn't... clean.
2 Nick .... at work last week because he .... sick. He's better now.
3 Yesterday .... a holiday, so the banks .... closed. They're open today.
4 ".......... Kate and Bill at the party?" "Kate .... there, but Bill ...."
5 Where are my keys? They .... on the table, but they're not there now.
6 You .... home last night. Where .... you?

10.4 Write questions from these words + **was/were**. Put the words in the right order.

1 (late / you / this morning / why?)
Why were you late this morning? → The traffic was bad.

2 (difficult / your exam?)
.... → No, it was easy.

3 (last week / where / Sue and Chris?)
.... → They were on vacation.

4 (your new camera / how much?)
.... → One hundred and twenty dollars.

5 (angry / you / yesterday / why?)
.... → Because you were late.

6 (nice / the weather / last week?)
.... → Yes, it was beautiful.

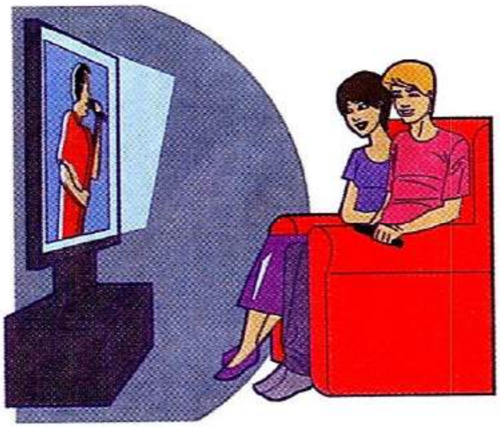
Unit 11

worked/got/went, etc. (simple past)

A

They **watch** TV every night. *(simple present)*

They **watched** TV last night. *(simple past)*



watched is the *simple past:*

I/we/you/they	**watched**
he/she/it	

B

The *simple past* is often **-ed** *(regular verbs)*. For example:

work → **worked** dance → **danced**
clean → **cleaned** stay → **stayed**
start → **started** need → **needed**

- I brush my teeth every morning. This morning I **brushed** my teeth.
- Tony **worked** in a bank from 2005 to 2011.
- Yesterday it **rained** all morning. It **stopped** at lunchtime.
- We **enjoyed** the party last night. We **danced** a lot and **talked** to a lot of people. The party **ended** at midnight.

You can use **just** with the *simple past* (**just** = a short time ago):

- "Is Tom here?" "No, he **just left**."
- I'm not hungry. I **just had** dinner.

For spelling, see Appendix 5.

try → tr**ied** stud**y** → stud**ied** cop**y** → cop**ied**
sto**p** → sto**pped** pla**n** → pla**nned**

C

Some verbs are *irregular* (= not regular). The *simple past* is *not* **-ed**. Here are some important irregular verbs (see also Appendixes 2–3):

begin →	**began**	fall →	**fell**	leave →	**left**	sell →	**sold**
break	**broke**	find	**found**	lose	**lost**	sit	**sat**
bring	**brought**	fly	**flew**	make	**made**	sleep	**slept**
build	**built**	forget	**forgot**	meet	**met**	speak	**spoke**
buy	**bought**	get	**got**	pay	**paid**	stand	**stood**
catch	**caught**	give	**gave**	put	**put**	take	**took**
come	**came**	go	**went**	read	**read** (red)*	tell	**told**
do	**did**	have	**had**	ring	**rang**	think	**thought**
drink	**drank**	hear	**heard**	say	**said**	win	**won**
eat	**ate**	know	**knew**	see	**saw**	write	**wrote**

**pronounced "red"*

- I usually get up early, but this morning I **got** up at 9:30.
- We **did** a lot of work yesterday.
- Megan **went** to the movies three times last week.
- James **came** into the room, **took** off his coat, and **sat** down.

was/were ➜ **Unit 10** **I didn't / Did you ...?** (negative and questions) ➜ **Unit 12** **ago** ➜ **Unit 18**

Exercises

11.1 Complete the sentences. Use a verb from the box.

~~brush~~	die	end	enjoy	happen	open	rain	start	stay	want

1 I ..brushed.. my teeth three times yesterday.
2 It was hot in the room, so I .... the window.
3 The movie was very long. It .... at 7:15 and .... at 10:00.
4 When I was a child, I .... to be a doctor.
5 The accident .... last Sunday afternoon.
6 The weather is nice today, but yesterday it .... all day.
7 We .... our vacation last year. We .... at a very nice place.
8 Anna's grandfather .... when he was 90 years old.

11.2 Read about Liz's trip to Madrid. Put the verbs in the correct form. مرجع زبان ایرانیان

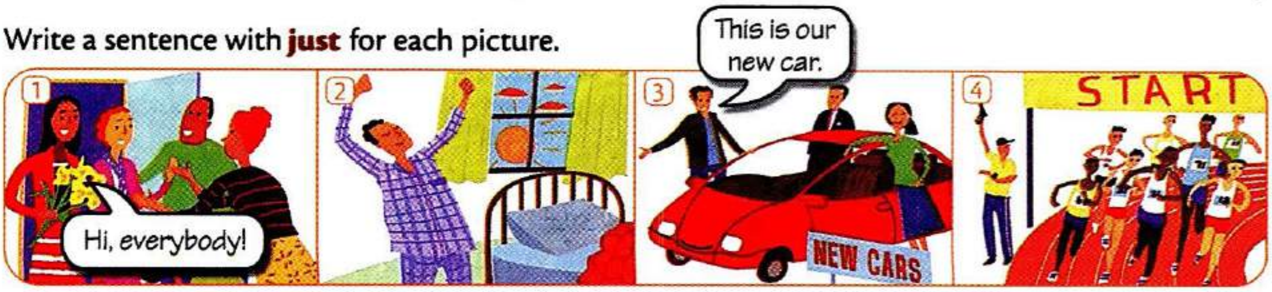
Last Tuesday, Liz (1) ..flew.. from Los Angeles to Madrid. She (2) .... up at 6:00 in the morning and (3) .... a cup of coffee. At 7:15 she (4) .... home and (5) .... to the airport. When she (6) .... there, she (7) .... the car, (8) .... to the terminal, and (9) .... in. Then she (10) .... breakfast at an airport café and (11) .... for her flight. The plane (12) .... on time and (13) .... in Madrid 13 hours later. Finally, she (14) .... a taxi from the airport to her hotel downtown.

fly
get, have
leave, drive
get, park
walk, check
have, wait
depart, arrive
take

11.3 Write sentences about the past (**yesterday** / **last week**, etc.).

1 James always goes to work by car. Yesterday ..he went to work by car..
2 Rachel often loses her keys. She .... last week.
3 Kate meets her friends every night. She .... last night.
4 I buy a newspaper every day. Yesterday I ....
5 We often go to the movies on weekends. Last Sunday we ....
6 I eat an orange every day. Yesterday I ....
7 Tom always takes a shower in the morning. This morning he ....
8 Our friends often come to see us. They .... last Friday.

11.4 Write a sentence with **just** for each picture.



1 ..They just arrived..
2 He ....
3 They ....
4 The race ....

→ Additional exercise 10 (page 242)

Unit 12 I didn't . . . Did you . . . ? (simple past negative and questions)

A

We use **did** in *simple past negatives* and *questions*:

Base Form	*Affirmative*		*Negative*			*Question*		
play	I	**played**	I		play		I	play?
start	we	**started**	we		start		we	start?
watch	you	**watched**	you	**did not**	watch		you	watch?
have	they	**had**	they	**(didn't)**	have	**did**	they	have?
see	he	**saw**	he		see		he	see?
do	she	**did**	she		do		she	do?
go	it	**went**	it		go		it	go?

B

do/does *(present)* → **did** *(past)*:

- I **don't** watch TV very often.
  I **didn't** watch TV **yesterday**.
- **Does** she go out often?
  Did she go out **last night**?

C

We use **did/didn't** + *base form* (**watch/play/go**, etc.):

I **watched**	*but*	I **didn't watch**	(*not* I didn't watched)
they **went**		**did** they **go**?	(*not* did they went?)
he **had**		he **didn't have**	
you **did**		**did** you **do**?	

- I **played** tennis yesterday, but I **didn't win**.
- "**Did** you **do** your homework?" "No, I **didn't have** time."
- We **went** to a nice restaurant, but we **didn't enjoy** the meal.

D

Study the word order in questions:

	did	+ *subject* +	*base form*	
	Did	your sister	**call**	you?
What	**did**	you	**do**	last night?
How	**did**	the accident	**happen**?	
Where	**did**	your parents	**go**	on vacation?

E

Short answers

Yes,	I/we/you/they he/she/it	**did.**

No,	I/we/you/they he/she/it	**didn't.**

- "**Did you** see Joe yesterday?" "**No, I didn't.**"
- "**Did it** rain on Sunday?" "**Yes, it did.**"
- "**Did Emma** come to the party?" "**No, she didn't.**"
- "**Did your parents** have a good trip?" "**Yes, they did.**"

worked/got/went, etc. (past simple) ➜ **Unit 11**

Exercises

12.1 Complete these sentences with the verb in the negative.

1 I saw Rachel, but I *didn't see* Jenn.
2 They worked on Monday, but they .... on Tuesday.
3 We went to the post office, but we .... to the bank.
4 She had a pen, but she .... any paper.
5 Jack did some work in the yard, but he .... any work in the house.

12.2 Write questions with **Did . . . ?**

1 I watched TV last night. How about you? *Did you watch TV last night* ?
2 I enjoyed the party. How about you? .... ?
3 I had a nice vacation. How about you? .... ?
4 I finished work early. How about you? .... ?
5 I slept well last night. How about you? .... ?

12.3 What did you do yesterday? Write affirmative or negative sentences.

1 (watch TV) *I watched TV.* **or** *I didn't watch TV.*
2 (get up before 7:00) I ....
3 (take a shower) ....
4 (buy a magazine) ....
5 (eat meat) ....
6 (go to bed before 10:30) ....

12.4 Write B's questions. Use:

cost get to work go go to bed late happen have a nice time ~~stay~~ win

1 A: We went to Chicago last month. B: Where *did you stay* ? A: With some friends.	5 A: We came home by taxi. B: How much .... ? A: Twenty dollars.
2 A: I was late for the meeting. B: What time .... ? A: 9:30.	6 A: I'm tired this morning. B: .... ? A: No, but I didn't sleep very well.
3 A: I played tennis this afternoon. B: .... ? A: No, I lost.	7 A: We went to the beach yesterday. B: .... ? A: Yes, it was great.
4 A: I had a nice vacation. B: Good. Where .... ? A: To the mountains.	8 A: The window is broken. B: How .... ? A: I don't know.

12.5 Put the verb in the correct form – affirmative, negative, or question.

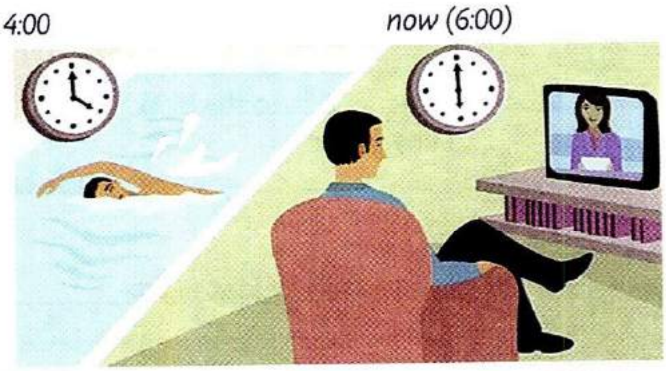
1 We went to the movies, but the film wasn't very good. We *didn't enjoy* it. (enjoy)
2 Tom .... some new clothes yesterday – two shirts, a jacket, and a sweater. (buy)
3 ".......... yesterday?" "No, it was a nice day." (rain)
4 We were tired, so we .... long at the party. (stay)
5 It was very warm in the room, so I .... a window. (open)
6 "Did you call Chris this morning?" "No, I .... time." (have)
7 "I cut my hand this morning." "How .... that?" (do)
8 "Why weren't you at the meeting yesterday?" "I .... about it." (know)

→ **Additional exercises 10–13 (page 242)**

I was doing (past continuous)

مرجع آموزش زبان ایرانیان
irLanguage.com

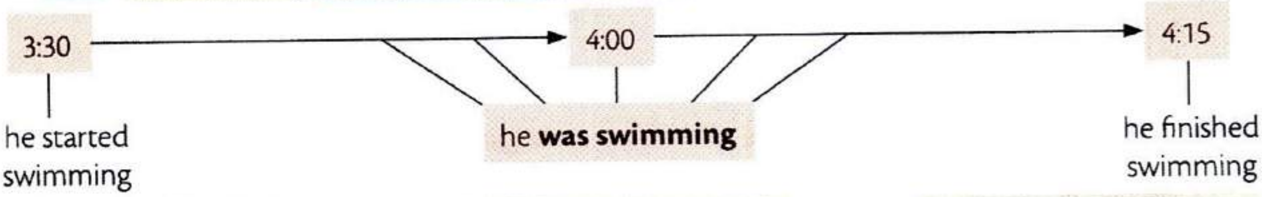
A



It is 6:00 now.
Rob **is** home.
He **is watching** TV.

At 4:00 he **wasn't** at home.
He **was** at the gym.

He **was swimming** in the pool.
He **wasn't watching** TV.



B

was/were + **-ing** is the *past continuous*:

Affirmative

I / he / she / it	**was**	**doing** / **watching** / **playing** / **swimming** / **living**, etc.
we / you / they	**were**	

Negative

I / he / she / it	**was not (wasn't)**	**doing** / **watching** / **playing** / **swimming** / **living**, etc.
we / you / they	**were not (weren't)**	

Question

was	I / he / she / it	**doing?** / **watching?** / **playing?** / **swimming?** / **living?**, etc.
were	we / you / they	

- What **were** you **doing** at 11:30 yesterday? **Were** you **working**?
- "What did he say?" "I don't know. I **wasn't listening**."
- It **was raining**, so we didn't go out.
- In 2009 we **were living** in Japan.
- Today she's wearing a skirt, but yesterday she **was wearing** pants.
- I woke up early yesterday. It was a beautiful morning. The sun **was shining**, and the birds **were singing**.

Spelling (live → liv**ing** / run → run**ning** / l**ie** → l**ying**, etc.) → Appendix 5

C

am/is/are + **-ing** *(present)* → **was/were** + **-ing** *(past)*:

Present

- **I'm working** (now).
- It **isn't raining** (now).
- What **are** you **doing** (now)?

Past

- I **was working** at 10:30 last night.
- It **wasn't raining** when we went out.
- What **were** you **doing** at 3:00?

was/were → **Unit 10**   **I was doing** and **I did** (past continuous and simple past) → **Unit 14**

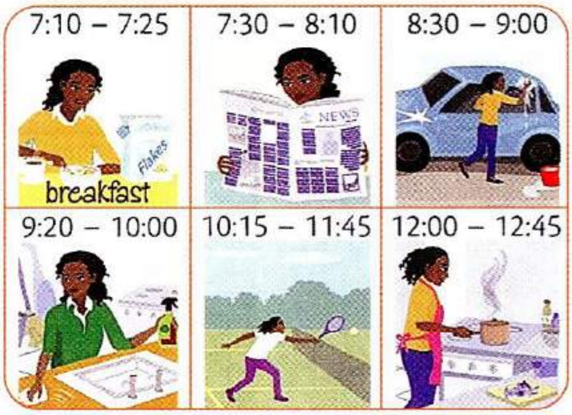
Exercises

13.1 Look at the pictures. Where were these people at 3:00 yesterday afternoon? And what were they doing? Write two sentences for each picture.

1	2	3	4	5
RACHEL	JACK KATE	TOM	AMANDA	MR. AND MRS. HALL
home watch TV	at the movies watch a movie	in his car drive	at the station wait for a train	in the park walk

1 Rachel was home. She was watching TV.
2 Jack and Kate .... They ....
3 Tom ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 And you? I ....

13.2 Sarah did a lot of things yesterday. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



1 At 8:45 she was washing her car.
2 At 10:45 she ....
3 At 8:00 ....
4 At 12:10 ....
5 At 7:15 ....
6 At 9:30 ....

13.3 Complete the questions. Use **was/were -ing**. Use **what/where/why** if necessary.

1 (you/live) Where were you living .... in 2012?
2 (you/do) .... at 2:00?
3 (it/rain) .... when you got up?
4 (Sue/drive) .... so fast?
5 (Tom/wear) .... a suit yesterday?

In Brazil.
I was asleep.
No, it was sunny.
Because she was late.
No, a T-shirt and jeans.

13.4 Look at the picture. You saw Joe in the street yesterday afternoon. What was he doing? Write affirmative or negative sentences.

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

1 (wear / a jacket) He wasn't wearing a jacket.
2 (carry / a bag) ....
3 (ride / a bike) ....
4 (go / home) ....
5 (wear / a hat) ....
6 (carry / an umbrella) ....
7 (go / to the dentist) ....
8 (eat / an ice cream cone) ....

I was doing (past continuous) and I did (simple past)

A

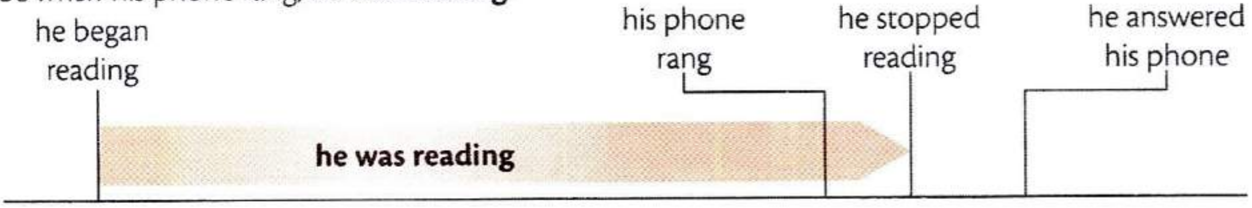
Jack **was reading** a book. His phone **rang**. He **stopped** reading. He **answered** his phone.

What **happened**? His phone **rang**. (*simple past*)

What **was** Jack **doing** when his phone rang? He **was reading** a book. } (*past continuous*)

What **did** he **do** when his phone rang? He **stopped** reading and **answered** his phone. } (*simple past*)

Jack began reading *before* his phone rang.
So *when* his phone rang, he **was reading**.



B

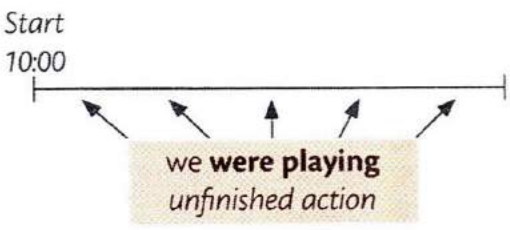
Simple past

- A: What **did** you **do** yesterday morning?
  B: We **played** tennis. (from 10:00 to 11:30)

- Jack **read** a book yesterday. (= from beginning to end)
- **Did** you **watch** the game on TV last night?
- It **didn't rain** while we were on vacation.

Past continuous

- A: What **were** you **doing** at 10:30?
  B: We **were playing** tennis.



- Jack **was reading** a book when his phone rang.
- **Were** you **watching** TV when I called you?
- It **wasn't raining** when I got up.

- I **started** work at 9:00 and **finished** at 4:30. At 2:30 **I was working**.
- It **was raining** when we **went** out. (= it started raining *before* we went out)
- I **saw** Emily and Sam this morning. They **were waiting** at the bus stop.
- Grace **fell** asleep while she **was reading**.

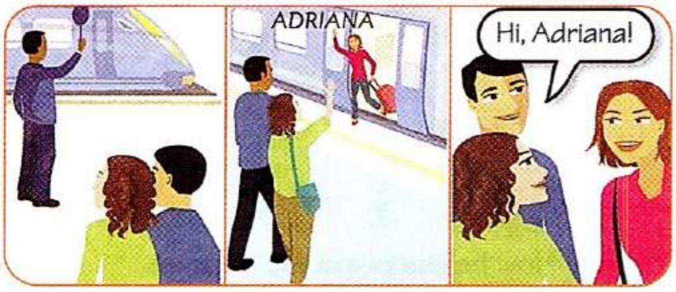
I did (simple past) ➜ **Units 11–12** **I was doing** (past continuous) ➜ **Unit 13** **while** ➜ **Unit 103**

Exercises

14.1 Look at the pictures. Put the verbs in the correct form, *past continuous* or *simple past*.

1

Emily ......broke...... (break) her arm last week. It .... (happen) when she .... (paint) her room. She .... (fall) off the ladder.

2


The train .... (arrive) at the station, and Adriana .... (get) off. Two friends of hers, Jon and Rachel, ... (wait) to meet her.

3

Yesterday Sue .... (walk) down the street when she .... (meet) James. He .... (go) to the station to catch a train, and he .... (carry) a bag. They .... (stop) to talk for a few minutes.

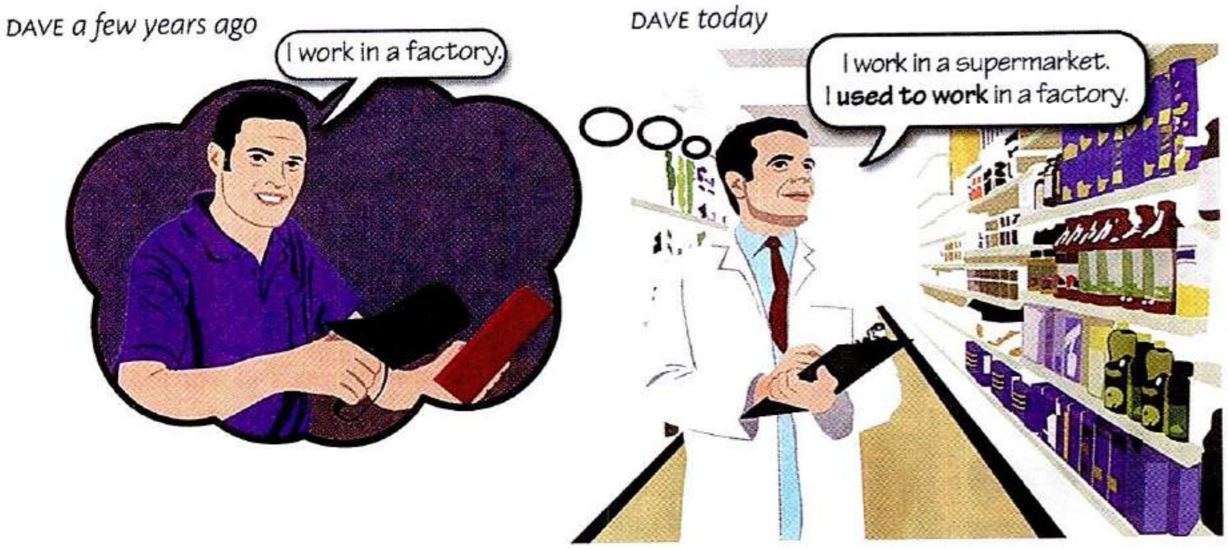
14.2 Put the verb into the *past continuous* or *simple past*.

1 A: What was the weather like when you ......got...... (get) up this morning?
B: It ......was raining...... (rain).
2 A: Was Emma busy when you went to see her?
B: Yes, she .... (study).
3 A: .... (Eric/call) you this morning?
B: Yes, he .... (call) while I .... (have) breakfast.
4 A: Was Natalie at work today?
B: No, she .... (not/go) to work. She was sick.
5 A: How fast .... (you/drive) when the police .... (stop) you?
B: I'm not sure, but I .... (not/drive) very fast.
6 A: .... (your team / win) the baseball game yesterday?
B: No, the weather was very bad, so we .... (not/play).
7 A: How .... (you/break) the window?
B: We .... (play) baseball. I .... (hit) the ball and it .... (break) the window.
8 A: .... (you/see) Jenny last night?
B: Yes, she .... (wear) a very nice jacket.
9 A: What .... (you/do) at 2:00 this morning?
B: I .... (sleep).
10 A: I .... (lose) my key last night.
B: How .... (you/get) into your apartment?
A: I .... (climb) in through a window.

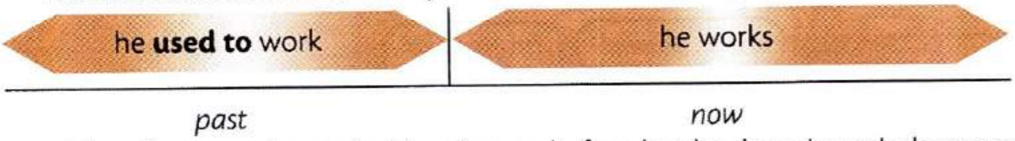
→ **Additional exercises 14–15 (pages 243–244)**

Unit 15 I used to . . .

A



Dave **used to work** in a factory. Now he **works** in a supermarket.

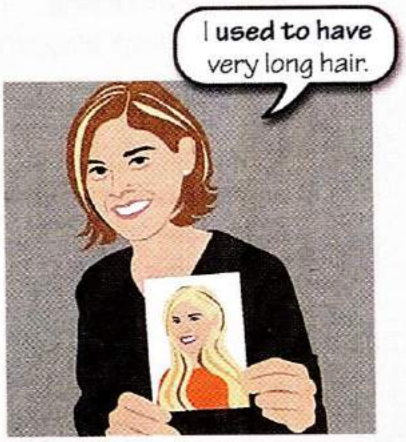


Dave **used to work** in a factory = he worked in a factory before, but he doesn't work there now

B

You can say **I used to work** . . . / **she used to have** . . . / **they used to be** . . . , etc. :

I/you/we/they he/she/it	**used to**	**be** **work** **have** **play** etc.



- When I was a child, I **used to like** chocolate.
- I **used to read** a lot of books, but I don't read much these days.
- Liz has short hair now, but it **used to be** very long.
- They **used to live** on the same street as us, so we **used to see** them a lot. But we don't see them much anymore.
- Allison **used to have** a piano, but she sold it a few years ago.

The negative is **I didn't use to** . . . :

- I **didn't use to like** tomatoes, but I like them now.

The question is **did you use to** . . . **?**

- Where **did** you **use to live** before you came here?

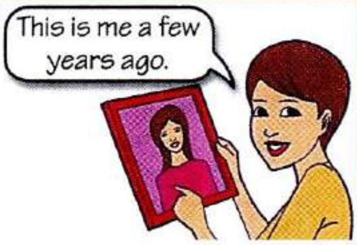
C

We use **used to** . . . only for the past. You cannot say "I use to . . ." for the present:

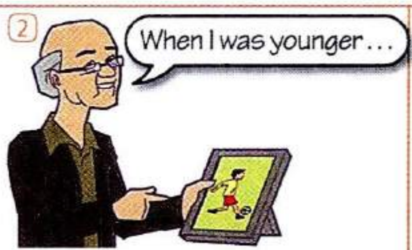
- **I used to play** tennis. Now I **play** golf. (*not* I use to play golf)
- We usually **get** up early. (*not* We use to get up early)

Exercises

15.1 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with **used to . . . .**

1 

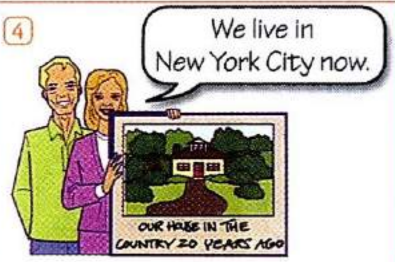
She used to have long hair.

2 

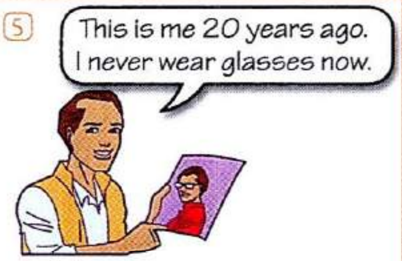
He .... soccer.

3

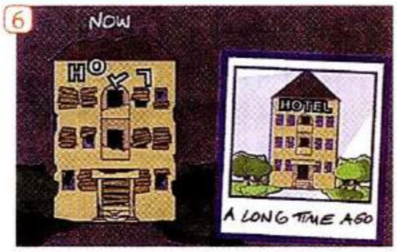
.... a taxi driver.

4 

.... in the country.

5 

....

6 

This building ....

15.2 Amanda works very hard and has very little free time. A few years ago, things were different.

Amanda a few years ago

Do you play any sports?	Yes, I swim every day, and I play volleyball.
Do you go out much?	Yes, three or four nights a week.
Do you play a musical instrument?	Yes, the guitar.
Do you like to read?	Yes, I read a lot.
Do you travel much?	Yes, I take two or three trips a year.

Amanda now

Write sentences about Amanda with **used to . . . .**

1 She used to swim every day.
2 She .... volleyball.
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

15.3 Complete these sentences. Use **used to** or the *simple present* (**I play** / **he lives**, etc.).

1 I used to play tennis. I stopped playing a few years ago.
2 "Do you play any sports?" "Yes, I play basketball."
3 "Do you have a car?" "No, I .... one, but I sold it."
4 Kevin .... a waiter. Now he's the manager of a hotel.
5 "Do you go to work by car?" "Sometimes, but most days I .... by train."
6 When I was a child, I never .... meat, but I eat it now.
7 Hannah loves to watch TV. She .... TV every night.
8 We .... near the airport, but we moved downtown a few years ago.
9 Normally I start work at 7:00, so I .... up very early.
10 Where .... you .... before you came to this company?

Unit 16

Have you . . . ?

A

have been / have played / have driven, etc., is the *present perfect* (**have** + *past participle*):

I we you they	**have** (**'ve**) **have not** (**haven't**)	**played** **lived** **visited** **read** **lost** **been** **driven**
he she it	**has** (**'s**) **has not** (**hasn't**)	

↑ *past participle*

have	I we you they	**played?** **lived?** **visited?**	*regular verbs*
		read?	
has	he she it	**lost?** **been?** **driven?**	*irregular verbs*

Regular verbs The *past participle* is **-ed** (the same as the *simple past*):

play → I have play**ed** live → I have liv**ed** visit → she has visit**ed**

Irregular verbs The *past participle* is not **-ed**.

Sometimes the *past participle* is the same as the *simple past*:

buy → I **bought** / I have **bought** have → he **had** / he has **had**

Sometimes the *simple past* and the *past participle* are different (see Appendixes 2–3):

break → **I broke** / I have **broken** see → you **saw** / you have **seen**

B

We use the *present perfect* when we talk about a time from the past until now – for example, a person's life:

Have you (ever) been to Japan?

time from the past until now

past *now*

- "**Have** you been to France?" "No, I **haven't**."
- We**'ve been** to Canada, but we **haven't been** to Alaska.
- Mary is an interesting person. She **has had** many different jobs and **has lived** in many different places.
- I**'ve seen** that woman before, but I can't remember where.
- How many times **has** Brazil **won** the World Cup?
- "**Have** you **read** this book?" "Yes, I**'ve read** it twice." (**twice** = two times)

C

We use the *present perfect* + **ever** (in questions) and **never**:

- "**Has** Michelle **ever been** to Australia?" "Yes, once." (**once** = one time)
- "**Have** you **ever played** golf?" "Yes, I play a lot."
- My sister **has never traveled** by plane.
- I**'ve never ridden** a horse.
- "Who is that man?" "I don't know. **I've never seen** him before."

present perfect → **Units 17–18** present perfect and simple past → **Unit 19**
irregular verbs → **Appendixes 2–3**

Exercises

16.1 You are asking Lauren questions beginning with **Have you ever . . . ?** Write the questions.

		Question	Lauren
1	(be / Montreal?)	*Have you ever been to Montreal?*	No, never.
2	(play / golf?)	*Have you ever played golf?*	Yes, many times.
3	(be / South Korea?)	Have	Yes, once.
4	(lose / your passport?)	....	No, never.
5	(fly / in a helicopter?)	....	Yes, a few times.
6	(win / a race?)	....	No, never.
7	(be / Peru?)	....	Yes, twice.
8	(drive / a bus?)	....	No, never.
9	(break / your leg?)	....	Yes, once.

16.2 Write sentences about Lauren. (Look at her answers in Exercise 16.1.)

1 (be / Peru) *She's been to Peru twice.*
2 (be / South Korea) She ....
3 (win / a race) ....
4 (fly / in a helicopter) ....

Now write about yourself. How often have you done these things?

5 (be / New York) I ....
6 (play / tennis) ....
7 (drive / a truck) ....
8 (be / late for work or school) ....

16.3 Mary is 65 years old. She has had an interesting life. What has she done?

MARY

~~have~~	be
do	write
travel	meet

all over the world	a lot of interesting things
~~many different jobs~~	a lot of interesting people
10 books	married three times

1 *She has had many different jobs.*
2 She ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

16.4 Complete the sentences. Use the *present perfect*.

1 *I've seen* (I / see) that woman before, but I can't remember her name.
2 "*Have you ever played* (you / ever / play) golf?" "Yes, I play golf a lot."
3 ".......... (you / ever / write) a poem?" "Yes, in high school."
4 "Does Emma know Sam?" "No, ... (she / never / meet) him."
5 Amanda and Josh have lots of books, and .... (they / read) all of them.
6 .... (I / never / be) to Australia, but .... (my brother / be) there twice.
7 Danielle's favorite movie is *Only Tomorrow*. .... (she / see) it five times, but .... (I / never / see) it.
8 .... (I / travel) by plane, bus, and train. Someday, I want to take a trip by boat.

Unit 17

How long have you . . . ?

A

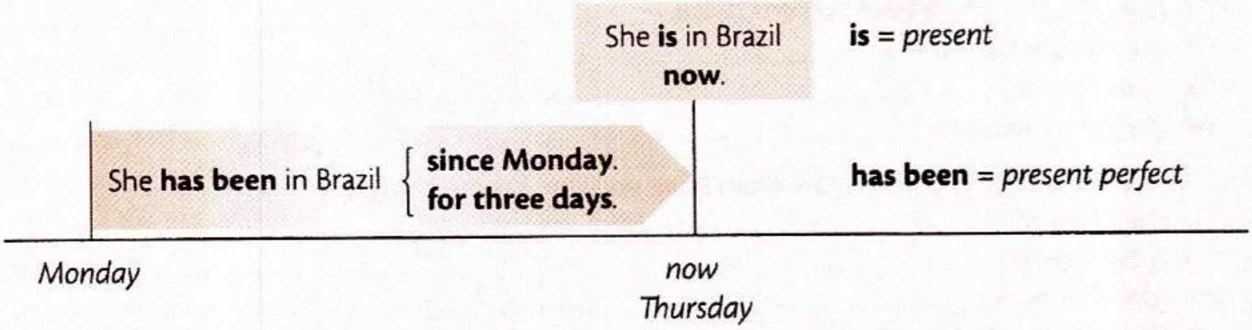
Rachel is on vacation in Brazil.
She is there now.

She arrived in Brazil on Monday.
Today is Thursday.

How long **has she been** in Brazil?

She **has been** in Brazil { **since Monday.** / **for three days.** }

Compare **is** and **has been**:



B

Compare:

Simple present	*Present perfect* (**have been** / **have lived** / **have known**, etc.)
Dan and Kate **are** married.	They **have been** married **for five years.** (*not* They are married for five years.)
Are you married?	**How long have** you **been** married? (*not* How long are you married?)
Do you **know** Lisa?	**How long have** you **known** her? (*not* How long do you know her?)
I know Lisa.	**I've known** her **for a long time.** (*not* I know her for . . .)
Vera **lives** in Brasília.	**How long has** she **lived** in Brasília? She **has lived** there **all her life.**
I have a car.	**How long have** you **had** your car? **I've had** it **since April.**

Present continuous	*Present perfect continuous* (**have been** + **-ing**)
I'm studying German.	**How long have** you **been studying** German? (*not* How long are you studying German?) **I've been studying** German **for two years.**
David **is watching** TV.	**How long has** he **been watching** TV? He**'s been** (= He **has been**) **watching** TV **since 5:00.**
It**'s raining.**	It**'s been** (= It **has been**) **raining all day.**

for and **since** → **Units 18, 102**

Exercises

17.1 Complete these sentences.

1 Rachel is in Brazil. She ...has been... there since Monday.
2 I know Lisa. I ...have known... her for a long time.
3 Amy and Jason are married. They .... married since 2005.
4 Matt is sick. He .... sick for the last few days.
5 We live on Main Street. We .... there for a long time.
6 Catherine works in a bank. She .... in a bank for five years.
7 Nick has a headache. He .... a headache since he got up this morning.
8 I'm studying English. I .... English for six months.

17.2 Make questions with **How long . . . ?**

1	Emily is on vacation.	...How long has she been on vacation...?
2	Dan and Megan are in Brazil.	How long ....?
3	I know Emma.	How long .... you ....?
4	Rachel is studying Italian.	..................................?
5	My brother lives in Seattle.	..................................?
6	I'm a teacher.	..................................?
7	It is raining.	..................................?

17.3 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with:

for 10 minutes	**all day**	**all her life**
~~for 10 years~~	**since he was 20**	**since Sunday**

1 ...They have been married for 10 years...
2 She ....
3 They ....
4 The sun ....
5 She ....
6 He ....

17.4 Which is right?

1 Ryan ~~lives~~ / has lived in Canada since April. (has lived *is right*)
2 Olivia and I are friends. I know / I've known her very well.
3 Olivia and I are friends. I know / I've known her for a long time.
4 A: Sorry I'm late. How long are you waiting / have you been waiting?
B: Not long. Only five minutes.
5 John works / has worked in a hotel now. He likes his job a lot.
6 Amanda is reading a newspaper. She is reading / She has been reading it for two hours.
7 "How long do you live / have you lived in this house?" "About 10 years."
8 "Is that a new coat?" "No, I have / I've had this coat for a long time."
9 Tom is / has been in Seattle right now. He is / He has been there for the last three days.

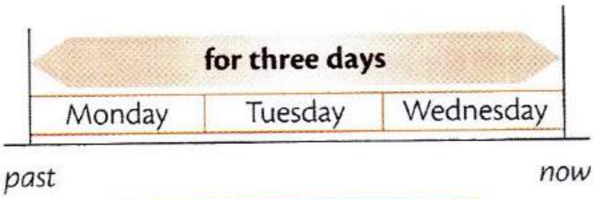
Unit 18 for since ago

A for and since

We use **for** and **since** to say *how long*:

- Rachel is in Brazil. She **has been** there { **for three days.** / **since Monday.** }

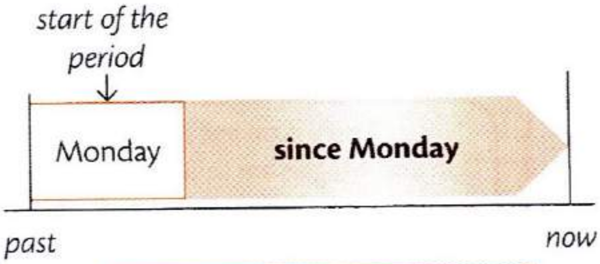
We use **for** + a period of time (**three days** / **two years**, etc.):



for	
three days	10 minutes
an hour	two hours
a week	four weeks
a month	six months
five years	a long time

- David has been in Canada **for six months.** (*not* since six months)
- We've been waiting **for two hours.** (*not* since two hours)
- I've lived in Chicago **for a long time.**

We use **since** + the start of the period (**Monday** / **9:00**, etc.):



since	
Monday	Wednesday
9:00	12:30
July 4th	my birthday
January	I was 10 years old
2000	we arrived

- David has been in Canada **since January.** (= from January to now)
- We've been waiting **since 9:00.** (= from 9:00 to now)
- I've lived in Chicago **since I was 10 years old.**

B ago

ago = before now:

- Anna started her new job **three weeks ago.** (= three weeks before now)
- "When did Tom leave?" **"Ten minutes ago."** (= ten minutes before now)
- I had dinner **an hour ago.**
- Life was very different **a hundred years ago.**

We use **ago** with the *past* (**started/did/had/was**, etc.).

Compare **ago** and **for:**

- **When did** Rachel **arrive** in Brazil?
  She **arrived** in Brazil **three days ago.**
- **How long has** she **been** in Brazil?
  She **has been** in Brazil **for three days.**

present perfect + **for/since** → **Unit 17** **from/until/since/for** → **Unit 102** **for and during** → **Unit 103**

Exercises

18.1 Write **for** or **since**.

1 Rachel has been in Brazil ...since... Monday.
2 Rachel has been in Brazil ...for... three days.
3 My aunt has lived in Australia .... 15 years.
4 Jennifer is in her office. She has been there .... 7:00.
5 Mexico has been an independent country .... 1821.
6 The bus is late. We've been waiting .... 20 minutes.
7 Nobody lives in those houses. They have been empty .... many years.
8 Michael has been sick .... a long time. He has been in the hospital .... October.

18.2 Answer these questions. Use **ago**.

1 When was the last time you ate? ...Three hours ago....
2 When was the last time you were sick? ....
3 When was the last time you went to the movies? ....
4 When was the last time you were in a car? ....
5 When was the last time you went on vacation? ....

18.3 Complete the sentences. Use **for** or **ago** with these words.

1 Rachel arrived in Brazil ...three days ago.... (three days)
2 Rachel has been in Brazil ...for three days.... (three days)
3 Stephanie and Robert have been married .... (20 years)
4 Stephanie and Robert got married .... (20 years)
5 Dan arrived .... (an hour)
6 I bought these shoes .... (a few days)
7 Ana has been studying English .... (six months)
8 Have you known Allison ....? (a long time)

18.4 Complete the sentences with **for** or **since**.

1 (Rachel is in Brazil – she arrived there three days ago)
...Rachel has been in Brazil for three days....
2 (Jack is here – he arrived on Tuesday)
Jack has ....
3 (It's raining – it started an hour ago)
It's been ....
4 (I know Sue – I met her in 2008)
I've ....
5. (Emily and Matthew are married – they got married six months ago)
Emily and Matthew have ....
6 (Liz is studying medicine – she started three years ago)
Liz has ....
7 (David plays the piano – he started when he was seven years old)
David has ....

18.5 Write sentences about yourself. Begin your sentences with:

I've lived . . .   I've been . . .   I've been studying . . .   I've known . . .   I've had . . .

1 ...I've lived in this town for three years....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....

→ **Additional exercises 16–18 (pages 244–245)**

Unit 19

I have done (present perfect) and **I did** (past)

A

Kate is making some coffee.

Kate **has made** some coffee.

Kate **has made** some coffee = she made some coffee and the coffee is ready now

B

You can use the *present perfect* (**have done / has made**, etc.) for new information:

- "I**'ve decided** to quit my job." "Really? Why?"
- We**'ve sold** our car. Now we take the bus every day.
- They're having a party next week, but they **haven't invited** me.
- I'm looking for Amy. **Have** you **seen** her?

You can also use the past (I **decided**, we **sold**, etc.) in these examples:

- I **decided** to quit my job.

We say that something **has changed**. It is different *now* from what it was before:

- Her English **has improved**. It's pretty good now.
- The city **has changed** a lot. It's very different now.

C

We use the past, not the *present perfect*, with a finished time (**last year**, **yesterday**, etc.):

- They **arrived yesterday**. (*not* have arrived)
- Where **were** you **on Sunday**?
  (*not* Where have you been)
- We **didn't take** a vacation **last year**.
  (*not* haven't taken)
- A: **Did** you **go** out **last night**?
  B: No, I **stayed** home.
- William Shakespeare **lived from 1564 to 1616**. He **was** a writer. He **wrote** many plays and poems.

yesterday
last year
six months ago
at 3:00
in 2011
finished time

past ——— *now*

We use the past to ask **When . . . ?** or **What time . . . ?**:

- **When did** you **sell** your car? (*not* When have you sold)
- **What time did** Andy **go** out? (*not* What time has)

D

We use the present perfect with **yet** in negative sentences and questions.
Yet (= until now) is usually at the end:

- A: Does James know that you're going away?
  B: No, I **haven't told** him **yet**.
- A: **Have** Sarah and Nick **arrived yet**?
  B: No, not yet, but they'll be here soon.
- A: **Has** Nicole **started** her new job **yet**?
  B: No, she's starting next week.
- Silvia has bought a new dress, but she **hasn't worn** it **yet**.

You can also use the past with **yet**:

- **Did** Nicole **start** her new job **yet**?

present perfect ➜ **Units 16–18** simple past ➜ **Units 11–12** yet ➜ **Unit 93**

Exercises

19.1 Complete the sentences. Use the *present perfect* (**I've made**, etc.) with these words.

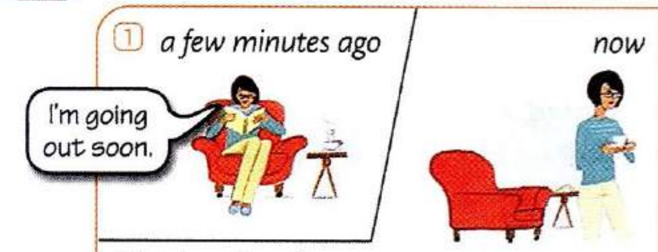
change **decide** **finish** **fix** **go up** **invite** ~~**make**~~ **see** **stop**

1 I *'ve made* some coffee. Would you like some?
2 The wedding is in June. We .... 50 people.
3 I can't find my glasses. .... you .... them anywhere?
4 The weather .... It's colder now.
5 What are your plans? What .... you .... to do?
6 Food prices .... a lot. Everything is more expensive now.
7 .... you .... the book you were reading?
8 There was a problem with the car, but I .... it. It's OK now.
9 It .... raining. We can go out now.

19.2 Are the verbs in these sentences OK? Correct them if necessary. (The verbs are underlined.)

1 Where have you been on Sunday? *Where were you on Sunday?*
2 I'm looking for Amy. Have you seen her? *OK*
3 I've washed all the clothes. Everything is clean. ....
4 Vicky has bought some clothes yesterday. ....
5 I've decided to try to learn Japanese. ....
6 Last year I've decided to try to learn Japanese. ....
7 The weather hasn't been good last weekend. ....
8 Steve's grandmother has died six months ago. ....

19.3 Write negative sentences with **yet** (**They haven't . . . yet / She hasn't . . . yet**, etc.).



(she / go / out)
She hasn't gone out yet.

(the train / leave)
....

(he / open / it)
....

(the / movie / start)
....

19.4 Write questions. Use the *present perfect* + **yet**.

1 Your friend has a new job. Maybe she has started it.
You ask her: *Have you started your new job yet?*
2 Your friend has some new neighbors. Maybe he has met them.
You ask him: .... you ....
3 Your friend is going on a trip soon. Maybe she has booked her flight.
You ask her: ....
4 Some people (not you) are having a meeting at work. Maybe the meeting has finished.
You ask a colleague: ....

→ **Additional exercises 19–23 (pages 246–248)**

is done was done (passive 1)

A

The office **is cleaned** every day.

The office **was cleaned** yesterday.

Compare *active* and *passive*:

Somebody **cleans** the office every day. *(active)*

The office **is cleaned** every day. *(passive)*

Somebody **cleaned** the office yesterday. *(active)*

The office **was cleaned** yesterday. *(passive)*

B

The *passive* is:

				past participle	
simple present	**am/is/are**	(not)	+	**cleaned**	**done**
simple past	**was/were**			**invented**	**built**
				injured	**taken**, etc.

The *past participle* of regular verbs is **-ed** (clean**ed**/invent**ed**, etc.).
For a list of irregular *past participles* (**done/built/taken**, etc.), see Appendixes 2–3.

- Butter **is made** from milk.
- Oranges **are imported** into Canada.
- How often **are** these rooms **cleaned**?
- I **am** never **invited** to parties.

- This house **was built** 100 years ago.
- These houses **were built** 100 years ago.
- When **was** the telephone **invented**?
- We **weren't invited** to the party last week.
- "**Was** anybody **injured** in the accident?" "Yes, two people **were taken** to the hospital."

C

was/were born

- I **was born** in Colombia in 1995. (*not* I am born)
- "Where **were** you **born**?" "In Cairo."

D

passive + **by** . . .

- The telephone was invented **by Alexander Graham Bell** in 1876.
  (= Alexander Graham Bell invented it)
- I was bitten **by a dog** a few days ago.
- Do you like these paintings? They were painted **by a friend of mine.**

is being done / has been done → **Unit 21** irregular verbs → **Unit 23, Appendixes 2–3** **by** → **Unit 109**
active and passive → **Appendix 1**

Exercises

20.1 Write sentences from these words. Some of the sentences are questions.
Sentences 1–7 are present.

1 (the office / clean / every day) — *The office is cleaned every day.*
2 (how often / these rooms / clean?) — *How often are these rooms cleaned?*
3 (glass / make / from sand) — Glass ……
4 (the windows / wash / every two weeks) — ……
5 (this word / not / use / very often) — ……
6 (we / allow / to park here?) — ……
7 (how / this word / pronounce?) — ……

Sentences 8–15 are past.

8 (the office / clean / yesterday) — *The office was cleaned yesterday.*
9 (the house / paint / last month) — The house ……
10 (my phone / steal / a few days ago) — ……
11 (three people / injure / in the accident) — ……
12 (when / this bridge / build?) — ……
13 (I / not / wake up / by the noise) — ……
14 (how / these windows / break?) — ……
15 (you / invite / to Jon's party last week?) — ……

20.2 These sentences are not correct. Correct them.

1 This house built 100 years ago. — *This house was built*
2 Soccer plays in most countries of the world. — ……
3 Why did the email send to the wrong address? — ……
4 A movie studio is a place where movies make. — ……
5 Where are you born? — ……
6 How many languages are speaking in Switzerland? — ……
7 Somebody broke into our house, but nothing stolen. — ……
8 When was invented the bicycle? — ……

20.3 Complete the sentences. Use the *passive* (present or past) of these verbs:

~~clean~~ damage find give invite make make show steal ~~take~~

1 The room *is cleaned* every day.
2 I saw an accident yesterday. Two people *were taken* to the hospital.
3 Paper …… from wood.
4 There was a fire at the hotel last week. Two of the rooms …… .
5 "Where did you get this picture?" "It …… to me by a friend of mine."
6 Many British programs …… on American TV.
7 "Did Jim and Sue go to the wedding?" "No. They ……, but they didn't go."
8 "How old is this movie?" "It …… in 1985."
9 My car …… last week, but the next day it …… by the police.

20.4 Where were they born?

1 (Haruka / Tokyo) — *Haruka was born in Tokyo.*
2 (Isabela / São Paulo) — Isabela ……
3 (her parents / Rio de Janeiro) — Her ……
4 (you / ???) — I ……
5 (your mother / ???) — ……

Unit 21

is being done has been done (passive 2)

A

is/are being . . . *(present continuous passive)*

Somebody **is painting** the door. *(active)*

The door **is being painted**. *(passive)*

- My car is at the garage. It **is being repaired**. (= somebody is repairing it)
- Some new houses **are being built** across from the park. (= somebody is building them)

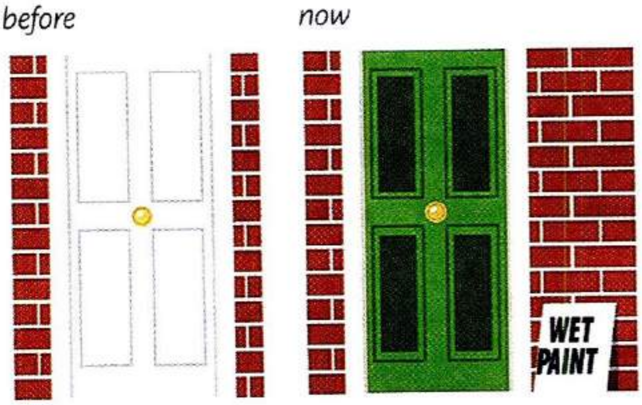
Compare the *present continuous passive* and *simple present passive*:

- The office **is being cleaned** right now. *(present continuous passive)*
  The office **is cleaned** every day. *(simple present passive)*
- Football games **are** usually **played** on weekends, but no big games **are being played** next weekend.

For the *present continuous* and *simple present*, see Units 8 and 24.

B

has/have been . . . *(present perfect passive)*



Somebody **has painted** the door. *(active)*

The door **has been painted**. *(passive)*

- My key **has been stolen**. (= somebody has stolen it)
- My keys **have been stolen**. (= somebody has stolen them)
- I'm not going to the party. I **haven't been invited**. (= nobody has invited me)
- **Has** this shirt **been washed**? (= has somebody washed it?)

Compare the *present perfect passive* and *simple past passive*:

- The room isn't dirty anymore. It **has been cleaned**. *(present perfect passive)*
  The room **was cleaned** yesterday. *(simple past passive)*
- I can't find my keys. I think they**'ve been stolen**. *(present perfect passive)*
  My keys **were stolen** last week. *(simple past passive)*

For the *present perfect* and *simple past*, see Unit 19.

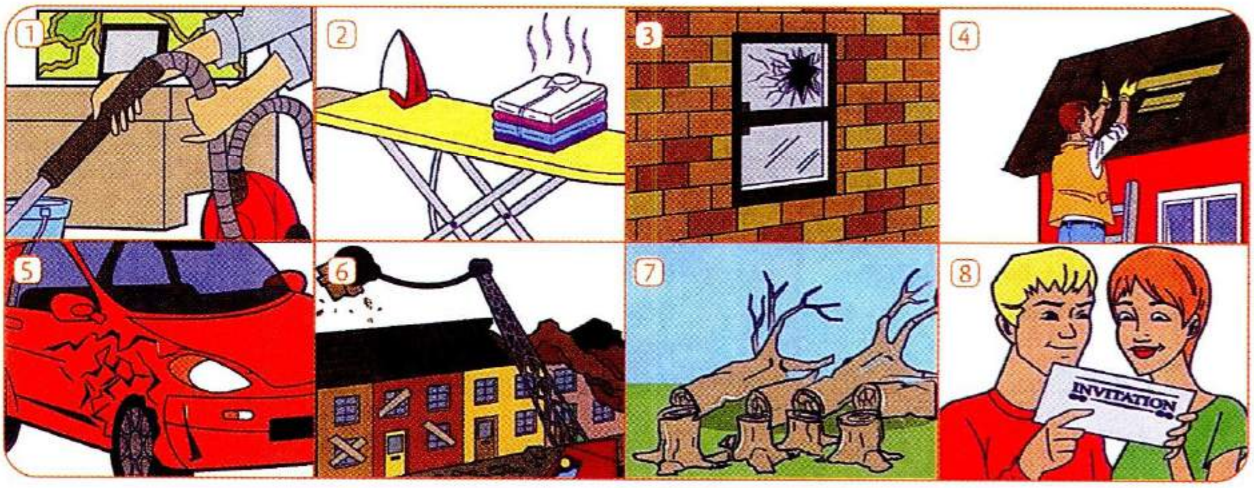
is done / was done ➜ **Unit 20** active and passive ➜ **Appendix 1**

Exercises

21.1 What's happening?

1 The car *is being repaired.* ......
2 A bridge ......
3 The windows ......
4 The grass ......

21.2 Look at the pictures. What is happening or what has happened? Use the *present continuous* (**is/are being . . .**) or the *present perfect* (**has/have been . . .**).



1 (the office / clean) *The office is being cleaned.*
2 (the shirts / iron) *The shirts have been ironed.*
3 (the window / break) The window ......
4 (the roof / repair) The roof ......
5 (the car / damage) ......
6 (the houses / tear / down) ......
7 (the trees / cut / down) ......
8 (they / invite / to a party) ......

21.3 Complete the sentences. (Study Unit 20 before you do this exercise.)

1 I can't use my office right now. It *is being painted* (paint).
2 We didn't go to the party. We *weren't invited* (not/invite).
3 The washing machine was broken, but it's OK now. It ...... (repair).
4 The washing machine ...... (repair) yesterday afternoon.
5 A factory is a place where things ...... (make).
6 How old are these houses? When ...... (they/build)?
7 A: ...... (the photocopier / use) right now?
B: No. You can use it.
8 I've never seen these flowers before. What ...... (they/call)?
9 My sunglasses ...... (steal) at the beach yesterday.
10 The bridge is closed. It ...... (damage) last week, and it ...... (not/repair) yet.

→ **Additional exercises 24–27 (pages 249–250)**

Unit 22

be/have/do in present and past tenses

A

be (= **am/is/are/was/were**) + **-ing** (**cleaning/working**, etc.)

am/is/are + **-ing** *(present continuous)* → Units 3–4 and 24	Please be quiet. I'**m working**. It **isn't raining** right now. What **are** you **doing** tonight?
was/were + **-ing** *(past continuous)* → Unit 13	I **was working** when she arrived. It **wasn't raining**, so we didn't need an umbrella. What **were** you **doing** at 3:00?

B

be + *past participle* (**cleaned/made/eaten**, etc.)

am/is/are + *past participle* *(simple present passive)* → Unit 20	I'**m** never **invited** to parties. Butter **is made** from milk. These offices **aren't cleaned** every day.
was/were + *past participle* *(simple past passive)* → Unit 20	The office **was cleaned** yesterday. These houses **were built** 100 years ago. How **was** the window **broken**? Where **were** you **born**?

C

have/has + *past participle* (**cleaned/lost/eaten/been**, etc.)

have/has + *past participle* *(present perfect)* → Units 16–17, 19	**I've lived** in this house for 10 years. Tom **has never ridden** a horse. Kate **hasn't been** to South America. What countries **have** you **visited**?

D

do/does/did + *base form* (**clean/like/eat/go**, etc.)

do/does + *base form* *(simple present negative and questions)* → Units 6–7	I like coffee, but I **don't like** tea. Chris **doesn't go** out very often. What **do** you usually **do** on weekends? **Does** Gabriela **live** alone?
did + *base form* *(simple past negative and questions)* → Unit 12	I **didn't watch** TV yesterday. It **didn't rain** last week. What time **did** Eric and Nicole **go** out?

irregular verbs → **Unit 23, Appendixes 2–3**

Exercises

22.1 Write **is/are** or **do/does**.

1 ...*Do*... you work at night?
2 Where ...*are*... they going?
3 Why .... you looking at me?
4 .... Bill live near you?
5 .... you like to cook?
6 .... the sun shining?
7 What time .... the stores close?
8 .... Maria working today?
9 What .... this word mean?
10 .... you feeling all right?

22.2 Write **am not/isn't/aren't** or **don't/doesn't**. All these sentences are negative.

1 Tom ...*doesn't*... work at night.
2 I'm very tired. I .... want to go out tonight.
3 I'm very tired. I .... going out tonight.
4 Josh .... working this week. He's on vacation.
5 My parents are usually at home. They .... go out very often.
6 Nicole has traveled a lot, but she .... speak any foreign languages.
7 You can turn off the television. I .... watching it.
8 Liz has invited us to her party next week, but we .... going.

22.3 Write **was/were/did/have/has**.

1 Where ...*were*... your shoes made?
2 .... you go out last night?
3 What .... you doing at 10:30?
4 Where .... your mother born?
5 .... Anna go home?
6 What time .... she leave?
7 When .... these houses built?
8 .... Mike arrived yet?
9 Why .... you go home early?
10 How long .... they been married?

22.4 Write **is/are/was/were/have/has**.

1 Joe ...*has*... lost his passport.
2 This bridge .... built 10 years ago.
3 .... you finished your work yet?
4 This town is always clean. The streets .... cleaned every day.
5 Where .... you born?
6 I .... just made some coffee. Would you like some?
7 Glass .... made from sand.
8 This is a very old photograph. It .... taken a long time ago.
9 David .... bought a new car.

22.5 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb into the correct form.

damage	~~**rain**~~	**enjoy**	~~**go**~~	**pronounce**	**eat**
listen	**use**	**open**	**go**	**understand**	

1 I'm going to take an umbrella with me. It's ...*raining*... .
2 Why are you so tired? Did you ...*go*... to bed late last night?
3 Where are the chocolates? Have you .... all of them?
4 How is your new job? Are you .... it?
5 My car was badly .... in the accident, but I was OK.
6 Chris has a car, but he doesn't .... it very often.
7 Mary isn't at home. She has .... away for a few days.
8 I don't .... the problem. Can you explain it again?
9 Tony is in his room. He's .... to music.
10 I don't know how to say this word. How is it .... ?
11 How do you .... this window? Can you show me?

Unit 23

Regular and irregular verbs

A

Regular verbs

The *simple past* and *past participle* of regular verbs is **-ed**:
clean → clean**ed** live → liv**ed** paint → paint**ed** study → studi**ed**

Simple past (→ Unit 11)

- I **cleaned** my room yesterday.
- Nick **studied** engineering in college.

Past participle

have/has + *past participle* (*present perfect* → Units 16–17, 19):

- I **have lived** here for 10 years.
- The city **has changed** a lot.

be (**is/are/were/has been**, etc.) + *past participle* (*passive* → Units 22–23):

- These rooms **are cleaned** every day.
- My car **was damaged** in the accident.

B

Irregular verbs

The *simple past* and *past participle* of irregular verbs do *not* end in **-ed**:

	make	break	cut
simple past	**made**	**broke**	**cut**
past participle	**made**	**broken**	**cut**

Sometimes the *simple past* and *past participle* are the same. For example:

	make	find	buy	cut
simple past / *past participle*	**made**	**found**	**bought**	**cut**

- I **made** a cake yesterday. (*simple past*)
- I **have made** some coffee. (*past participle – present perfect*)
- Butter **is made** from milk. (*past participle – present passive*)

Sometimes the *simple past* and *past participle* are different. For example:

	break	know	begin	go
simple past	**broke**	**knew**	**began**	**went**
past participle	**broken**	**known**	**begun**	**gone**

- Somebody **broke** this window last night. (*simple past*)
- Somebody **has broken** this window. (*past participle – present perfect*)
- This window **was broken** last night. (*past participle – past passive*)

irregular verbs → **Appendixes 2–3** spelling (regular verbs) → **Appendix 5**

Exercises

23.1 Write the *simple past / past participle* of these verbs. (The *simple past* and *past participle* are the same for all the verbs in this exercise.)

1 make	made	6 enjoy	....	11 hear	....
2 cut	cut	7 buy	....	12 put	....
3 say	....	8 sit	....	13 catch	....
4 bring	....	9 leave	....	14 watch	....
5 pay	....	10 happen	....	15 understand	....

23.2 Write the *simple past* and *past participle* of these verbs.

1 break	broke	broken	8 come	....	....
2 begin	....	....	9 know	....	....
3 eat	....	....	10 take	....	....
4 drink	....	....	11 go	....	....
5 drive	....	....	12 give	....	....
6 speak	....	....	13 throw	....	....
7 write	....	....	14 get	....	....

23.3 Put the verb in the right form.

1. I ...washed... my hands because they were dirty. (wash)
2. Somebody has ...broken... this window. (break)
3. I feel good. I .... really well last night. (sleep)
4. We .... a really good movie yesterday. (see)
5. It .... a lot while we were on vacation. (rain)
6. I .... my bag. Have you .... it? (lose / see)
7. Laura's bike was .... last week. (steal)
8. I .... to bed early because I was tired. (go)
9. Have you .... your work yet? (finish)
10. The shopping mall was .... about 20 years ago. (build)
11. Anna .... to drive when she was 16. (learn)
12. I've never .... a horse. (ride)
13. Julia is a good friend of mine. I've .... her for a long time. (know)
14. Yesterday I .... and .... my leg. (fall / hurt)
15. My brother .... in the Boston Marathon last year. Have you ever .... in a marathon? (run / run)

23.4 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb into the correct form.

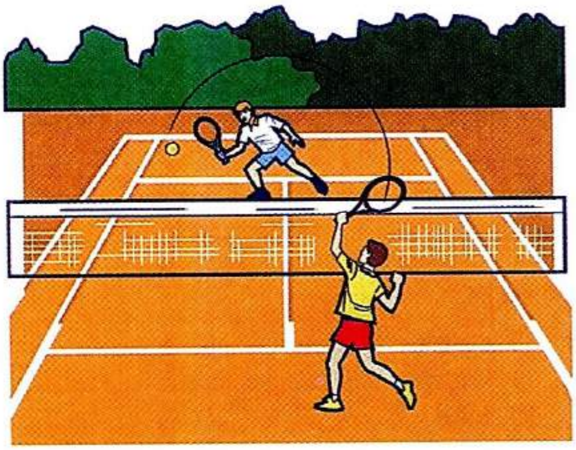
cost	**drive**	**fly**	~~**make**~~	**meet**	**sell**
speak	**swim**	**tell**	**think**	**wake up**	**win**

1. I have ...made... some coffee. Would you like some?
2. Have you .... John about your new job yet?
3. We played basketball on Sunday. We didn't play very well, but we .... the game.
4. I know Josh, but I've never .... his wife.
5. We were .... by loud music in the middle of the night.
6. Stephanie jumped into the river and .... to the other side.
7. "Did you like the movie?" "Yes, I .... it was very good."
8. Many different languages are .... in the Philippines.
9. Our vacation .... a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel.
10. Have you ever .... a very fast car?
11. All the tickets for the concert were .... very quickly.
12. A bird .... in through the open window while we were having our dinner.

Unit 24

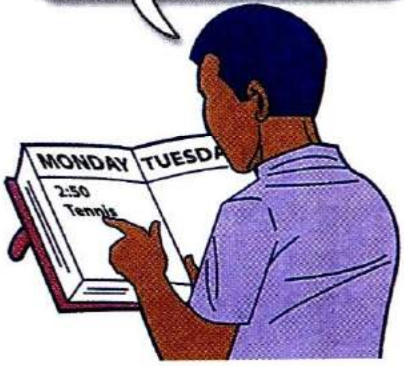
What are you doing tomorrow?

A



They **are playing** tennis (**now**).

today is Sunday



He **is playing** tennis **tomorrow**.

We use **am/is/are + -ing** *(present continuous)* for something happening now:

- "Where are Sue and Amanda?" "They**'re playing** tennis in the park."
- Please be quiet. I**'m working**.

We also use **am/is/are + -ing** for the *future* (tomorrow / next week, etc.):

- Andrew **is playing** tennis tomorrow.
- I**'m** not **working** next week.

B

I am doing something tomorrow = I have arranged to do it; I have a plan to do it:

- Sophie **is going** to the dentist on Friday. (= she has an appointment with the dentist)
- We**'re having** a party next weekend.
- **Are** you **meeting** your friends tonight?
- What **are** you **doing** tomorrow night?
- I**'m** not **going** out tonight. I**'m staying** home.

You can also say "I**'m going** to do something" (→ Unit 25).

C

We use the *present continuous* (**I'm staying / are you coming**, etc.) to say what somebody has arranged to do:

- **I'm staying** home tomorrow. (*not* I stay)
- **Are** you **going** out tonight? (*not* Do you go)
- Lisa **isn't coming** to the party next week. (*not* Lisa doesn't come)

But we use the *simple present* (**start, arrives**, etc.) for schedules, programs, trains, buses, etc.:

- Our plane **arrives** in New York at 7:30 tomorrow morning.
- What time **does** the movie **end** tonight?

Compare:

Present continuous (usually for people)	*Simple present* (for schedules)
I**'m going** to a concert tomorrow.	The concert **starts** at 7:30.
What time **are** you **leaving**?	What time **does** your plane **leave**?

present continuous → **Units 3–4** simple present → **Units 5–7** **I'm going to** ... → **Unit 25**

Exercises

irLanguage.com

24.1 Look at the pictures. What are these people doing next Friday?

irLanguage.com

1 Andrew is playing tennis on Friday.
2 Dan .... to the movies.
3 Rachel ....
4 .... lunch with Will.
5 ....

24.2 Write questions. All the sentences are future.

1 (you / go / out / tonight?) Are you going out tonight?
2 (you / work / next week?) ....
3 (what / you / do / tomorrow night?) ....
4 (what time / your friends / come?) ....
5 (when / Liz / go / on vacation?) ....

24.3 Write sentences about yourself. What are you doing in the next few days?

1 I'm staying home tonight.
2 I'm going to the theater on Monday.
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

24.4 Put the verb in the *present continuous* (**he is leaving**, etc.) or *simple present* (**the train leaves**, etc.).

1 "Are you going (you/go) out tonight?" "No, I'm too tired."
2 We're going (we/go) to a concert tonight. It starts (it/start) at 7:30.
3 Listen to this! .... (Karen/get) married next month!
4 A: My parents .... (go) on vacation next week.
B: Oh, that's nice. Where .... (they/go)?
5 Ana is taking an English course this semester. The course .... (end) on Friday.
6 There's a party tomorrow night, but .... (I/not/go).
7 .... (I/go) out with some friends tonight. Why don't you come, too? .... (we/meet) at John's house at 8:00.
8 A: How .... (you/get) home after the party tomorrow? By taxi?
B: No, I can go by bus. The last bus .... (leave) at midnight.
9 A: Do you want to go to the movies tonight?
B: Yes, what time .... (the movie/begin)?
10 A: What .... (you/do) tomorrow afternoon?
B: .... (I/work).

Unit 25 I'm going to . . .

A

I'm going to do something

morning *tonight*

She **is going to watch** TV tonight.

We use **am/is/are going to** . . . for the *future*:

I	**am**	(not) **going to**	do . . .
he/she/it	**is**		drink . . .
we/you/they	**are**		watch . . .

am	I	**going to**	buy . . . ?
is	he/she/it		eat . . . ?
are	we/you/they		wear . . . ?

B

I am going to do something = I have decided to do it; my intention is to do it:

- **I'm going to buy** some books tomorrow.
- Sarah **is going to sell** her car.
- **I'm not going to have** breakfast this morning. I'm not hungry.
- What **are** you **going to wear** to the wedding next week?
- "Your hands are dirty." "Yes, I know. **I'm going to wash** them."
- **Are** you **going to invite** Matt to your party?

We also use the *present continuous* (**I am doing**) for the future, usually for arrangements (→ Unit 24):

- I **am playing** tennis with Julia tomorrow.

C

Something **is going to happen**

Something **is going to happen** = we can see *now* that it is sure to happen:

- Look at the sky! It**'s going to rain.**
  (black clouds *now* → rain)
- Oh, no! It's 9:00, and I'm not ready.
  I'm going to be late.
  (9:00 *now* and not ready → late)

present for the future → **Unit 24** will → **Unit 26**

Exercises

25.1 What are these people saying?

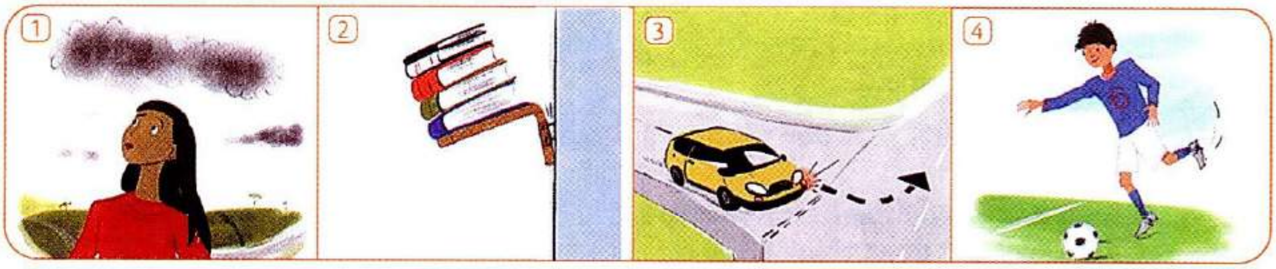
مرجع زبان ایرانیان

25.2 Complete the sentences. Use **going to** + these verbs:

do eat give lie down stay walk ~~wash~~ watch ~~wear~~

1 My hands are dirty. *I'm going to wash* them.
2 What *are you going to wear* to the party tonight?
3 It's a nice day. I don't want to take the bus. I ....
4 Ryan is going to San Diego next week. He .... with some friends.
5 I'm hungry. I .... this sandwich.
6 It's Megan's birthday next week. We .... her a present.
7 Sue says she's feeling very tired. She .... for an hour.
8 The president's speech is on TV tonight. .... you .... it?
9 What .... Rachel .... when she finishes school?

25.3 Look at the pictures. What is going to happen?



1 *It's going to rain.*
2 The shelf ....
3 The car ....
4 He ....

25.4 What are you going to do today or tomorrow? Write three sentences.

1 I'm ....
2 ....
3 ....

will

A

Sarah goes to work every day. She is always there from 8:30 until 4:30.

It is 11:00 now. Sarah **is** at work.

At 11:00 yesterday, she **was** at work.

At 11:00 tomorrow, she **will be** at work.

will + *base form* (**will be / will win / will come**, etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	**will ('ll)** **will not** **(won't)**	**be** **eat** **come**, etc.

will	I/we/you/they he/she/it	**be?** **eat?** **come?**, etc.

'll = **will**: I'**ll** (I will) / you'**ll** / she'**ll**, etc.
won't = **will not**: I **won't** (= I will not) / you **won't** / she **won't**, etc.

B

We use **will** for the *future* (tomorrow / next week, etc.):

- Sue travels a lot. Today she is in Los Angeles. Tomorrow she'**ll be** in Mexico City. Next week she'**ll be** in New York.
- Leave the old bread in the yard. The birds **will eat** it.
- We'**ll** probably **go** out tonight.
- I don't think it **will rain** this afternoon.
- **Will** you **be** home tomorrow morning?
- I **won't be** here tomorrow. (= I will not be here)
- Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You **won't sleep** well.

C

You can use **I'll** . . . (**I will**) when you offer something or decide to do something:

- "My suitcase is heavy." "**I'll carry** it for you."
- "**I'll call** you tomorrow, OK?" "OK, bye."
- I can't decide what to have for dinner. I know! **I'll make** spaghetti.

We often say **I think I'll** . . . / **I don't think I'll** . . . when we decide to do something:

- It's a nice day. **I think I'll sit** outside.
- It's raining. **I don't think I'll go** out.

Do *not* use the *simple present* (**I go / I call**, etc.) in sentences like these:

- **I'll call** you tomorrow, OK? (*not* I call you)
- I think I'**ll go** to bed early. (*not* I go to bed)

D

We do *not* use **will** for things we decided before (→ Units 24–25):

- We'**re going** to the movies on Saturday. Do you want to come with us? (*not* we will go)
- I don't want my car anymore. **I'm going to sell** it. (*not* I'll sell)
- **Are** you **doing** anything tomorrow night? (*not* do you do)

What are you doing tomorrow? → **Unit 24** **I'm going to . . .** → **Unit 25**

Exercises

26.1 Hannah is traveling in South America. Complete the sentences with **she was**, **she's**, or **she'll be**.

1 Yesterday *she was* in Rio de Janeiro.
2 Tomorrow .... in Bogotá.
3 Last week .... in Santiago.
4 Next week .... in Caracas.
5 Right now .... in Lima.
6 Three days ago .... in Buenos Aires.
7 At the end of her trip .... very tired.

26.2 Complete the sentences with **'ll** (**will**) or **won't**.

1 Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You *won't* sleep well.
2 "Are you ready yet?" "Not yet. I .... be ready in five minutes."
3 You don't need to take an umbrella. It .... rain.
4 It's a good movie. I think you .... like it.
5 I'm sorry I was late this morning. It .... happen again.
6 It's Ben's birthday next Monday. He .... be 25.

26.3 Complete the sentences. Use **I'll** (**I will**) + these verbs:

~~carry~~ do eat have show sit stay

1 My suitcase is very heavy. — *I'll carry* it for you.
2 Did you call Jen? — Oh no, I forgot. .... it now.
3 What would you like to drink? — .... some tea, please.
4 Do you want a chair? — No, it's OK. .... on the floor.
5 I don't want this banana. — Well, I'm hungry. .... it.
6 Are you coming with me? — No, I don't think so. .... here.
7 How do you use this camera? — Give it to me, and .... you.

26.4 Complete the sentences. Use **I think I'll . . .** or **I don't think I'll . . .** + these verbs:

buy buy ~~go~~ have play

1 It's cold today. *I don't think I'll go* out.
2 I'm hungry. I .... something to eat.
3 I feel very tired. .... tennis.
4 I like this hat. .... it.
5 This camera is too expensive. .... it.

26.5 Which is right? (If necessary, study Units 24–25 before you do this exercise.)

1 ~~I call~~ / I'll call you tomorrow, OK? (*I'll call is right*)
2 I haven't done the shopping yet. I do / I'll do it later.
3 I like sports. I watch / I'll watch a lot of sports on TV.
4 I think your aunt will lend / is lending us some money. She's very rich.
5 Why are you putting on your coat? Will you go out/ Are you going out?'
6 I don't know where I am / I'll be two years from now.
7 Gerry is going to buy / will buy a new car. He told me last week.
8 Do you think Emily passes / is passing / will pass the driving test?
9 A: Do you have any plans for tonight?
B: Yes, I meet / I'm meeting / I'll meet some friends.

→ **Additional exercises 28–31 (pages 250–253)**

Unit 27

might

A

He **might go** to Costa Rica.
(= it is possible that he will go to Costa Rica)

It **might rain**.
(= it is possible that it will rain)

might + *base form* (**might go** / **might be** / **might rain**, etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	**might** (not)	**be** **go** **play** **come**, etc.

B

I might = it is possible that I will:

- I **might go** to the movies tonight, but I'm not sure. (= it is possible that I will go)
- A: When is Rebecca going to call you?
  B: I don't know. She **might call** this afternoon.
- Take an umbrella with you. It **might rain**.
- Buy a lottery ticket. You **might be** lucky. (= maybe you will be lucky)
- A: Are you going out tonight?
  B: **I might**. (= I might go out)

Study the difference:

- **I'm playing** tennis tomorrow. (*sure*)
  I **might play** tennis tomorrow. (*possible*)
- Rebecca **is going to call** later. (*sure*)
  Rebecca **might call** later. (*possible*)

C

I might not = it is possible that I will not:

- I **might not go** to work tomorrow.
  (= it is possible that I will not go)
- Sue **might not come** to the party.
  (= it is possible that she will not come)

D

may

You can use **may** in the same way. **I may** = **I might**:

- I **may go** to the movies tonight. (= I might go)
- Sue **may not come** to the party. (= Sue might not come)

May I . . . ? = Is it OK to . . . ? / Can I . . . ?:

- **May I** ask a question? (= is it OK to ask / can I ask?)
- "**May I** sit here?" "Sure."

will → Unit 26 can → Unit 28

Exercises

27.1 Write sentences with **might**.

1 (it's possible that I'll go to the movies) *I might go to the movies.*
2 (it's possible that I'll see you tomorrow) I ....
3 (it's possible that Sarah will forget to call) ....
4 (it's possible that it will snow today) ....
5 (it's possible that I'll be late tonight) ....

Write sentences with **might not**.

6 (it's possible that Tony will not be here next week) ....
7 (it's possible that I won't have time to go out) ....

27.2 Somebody is asking you about your plans. You have some ideas, but you are not sure. Choose from the list and write sentences with **I might**.

fish ~~**Italy**~~ **Monday** **a new car** **a trip** **a taxi**

1	Where are you going for your vacation?	I'm not sure. *I might go to Italy.*
2	What are you doing this weekend?	I don't know. I ....
3	When will you see Kate again?	I'm not sure. ....
4	What are you going to have for dinner?	I don't know. ....
5	How are you going to get home tonight?	I'm not sure. ....
6	I hear you won some money. What are you going to do with it?	I haven't decided yet. ....

27.3 You ask Ben questions about his plans for tomorrow. Sometimes he is sure, but usually he is not sure.

1	Are you playing tennis tomorrow?	Yes, in the afternoon.
2	Are you going out tomorrow evening?	Possibly.
3	Are you going to get up early?	Maybe.
4	Are you working tomorrow?	No, I'm not.
5	Will you be at home tomorrow morning?	Maybe.
6	Are you going to watch TV?	I might.
7	Are you going out in the afternoon?	Yes, I am.
8	Are you going shopping?	Maybe. I'm not sure.

BEN

Now write about Ben. Use **might** where necessary.

1 *He's playing tennis tomorrow afternoon.*
2 *He might go out tomorrow evening.*
3 He ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....

27.4 Write three things that you **might** do tomorrow.

1 ....
2 ....
3 ....

Unit 28

can and could

A

He **can play** the piano.

can + *base form* (**can do** / **can play** / **can come**, etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	**can** **can't** (**cannot**)	**do** **play** **see** **come**, etc.

can	I/we/you/they he/she/it	**do?** **play?** **see?** **come?**, etc.

B

I can do something = I *know how* to do it, or *it is possible* for me to do it:

- **I can play** the piano. My brother **can play** the piano, too.
- Sarah **can speak** Italian, but she **can't speak** Spanish.
- A: **Can** you **swim**?
  B: Yes, but I'm not a very good swimmer.
- A: **Can** you **change** a twenty-dollar bill?
  B: I'm sorry, **I can't**.
- I'm having a party next week, but Eric and Rachel **can't come**.

C

For the *past* (yesterday / last week, etc.), we use **could/couldn't**:

- When I was young, **I could run** very fast.
- Before Maria came to the United States, she **couldn't understand** much English. Now she **can understand** everything.
- I was tired last night, but **I couldn't sleep**.
- I had a party last week, but Eric and Rachel **couldn't come**.

D

Can you ...? Could you ...? Can I ...? Could I ...?

We use **Can you ...?** or **Could you ...?** when we ask people to do things:

- **Can you** open the door, please? *or* **Could you** open the door, please?
- **Can you** wait a minute, please? *or* **Could you** wait ...?

We use **Can I have ...?** or **Could I have ...?** to ask for something:

- **Can I have** a glass of water, please? *or* **Could I have** ...?

Can I ...? or **Could I ...?** = is it OK to do something?:

- **Can I** sit here?
- Tom, **could I** borrow your umbrella?

May I ...? → Unit 27

Exercises

28.1 Ask Andy if he can do these things:

1 Can you swim?
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

Can you do these things? Write sentences about yourself. Use **I can** or **I can't**.

7 I ....
8 ....
9 ....
10 ....
11 ....
12 ....

28.2 Complete these sentences. Use **can** or **can't** + one of these verbs:

~~come~~	find	hear	see	speak

1 I'm sorry, but we *can't come* to your party next Saturday.
2 I like this hotel room. You .... the mountains from the window.
3 You are speaking very quietly. I .... you.
4 Have you seen my suitcase? I .... it.
5 Catherine got the job because she .... five languages.

28.3 Complete these sentences. Use **can't** or **couldn't** + one of these verbs:

decide	eat	find	go	go	~~sleep~~

1 I was tired, but I *couldn't sleep* .
2 I wasn't hungry yesterday. I .... my dinner.
3 Kate doesn't know what to do. She ....
4 I wanted to speak to Dan yesterday, but I .... him.
5 James .... to the concert next Saturday. He has to work.
6 Catarina .... to the meeting last week. She was sick.

28.4 What do you say in these situations? Use **can** or **could**.

must

مرجع آموزش زبان ایرانیان
irLanguage.com

A

She **must be** sick. = I am sure she is sick. It is clear that she is sick.

must + *base form* (**must be** / **must know**, etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	**must** (**not**)	**be** **know** **have** **live**, etc.

We use **must** when we believe that something is true.

- It's evening, and you haven't eaten anything all day. You **must be** hungry.
- My brother has worked at your company for years. You **must know** him.
- My friends have the same zip code as you. They **must live** near you.
- (*on the phone*) This isn't John? I'm sorry. I **must have** the wrong number.

We use **must not** when we believe that something is *not* true.

- The phone rang eight times, and Megan didn't answer. She **must not have** her phone with her.
- Miguel takes the bus everywhere. He **must not have** a car.
- The Silvas are always home on Fridays. They **must not work** then.

B

Must has another meaning. You **must do** something = it is necessary to do it:

- You **must eat** well if you want to be healthy.
- They're in a dangerous situation. They **must be careful**.
- Workers **must wear** safety glasses at this machine.
- In the United States, you **must be** 18 to vote.
- You **must have** a passport to travel outside your country.

For the *past* (yesterday, last week, etc.), we use **had to** ... (*not* must).

- They were in a dangerous situation. They **had to be** careful. (*not* They must be careful.)
- We **had to wear** safety glasses when we visited the factory last week. (*not* We must wear)

You **must not do** something = don't do it.

- Bicyclists **must not ride** on the sidewalk. (= they must ride in the street)
- You **must not be** late for school again!

I have to ... → **Unit 31**

Exercises

29.1 Complete the sentences. Use **must be** + these words or phrases:

for you	**good**	~~**hungry**~~	**in the kitchen**	**tired**	**very happy**

1 It's evening, and you haven't eaten anything all day. You ......*must be hungry*...... .
2 Mariana worked 10 hours today. She ....
3 It's the most popular restaurant in town, so the food ....
4 "I got the job." "You did? You ...."
5 The phone's ringing. I know it's not for me. It ....
6 My keys aren't in the living room, so they ....

29.2 Complete the sentences. Use **must** + these verbs:

drink	**have**	~~**know**~~	**like**	**work**

1 My brother has worked at your company for years. You ......*must know*...... him.
2 Jessica wears something blue every day. She .... the color blue.
3 The Hills have six children and three dogs. They .... a big house.
4 Mrs. Lee bought three gallons of milk at the store. Her children .... a lot of milk.
5 I know Mrs. Romo has a job, but she's always home during the day. She .... at night.

29.3 Write **must** or **must not**.

1 (*on the phone*) This isn't John? I ......*must*...... have the wrong number.
2 Miguel takes the bus everywhere. He ......*must not*...... have a car.
3 Brandon is very thin. He .... eat very much.
4 I never see my neighbor in the morning. He .... leave for work very early.
5 I always have to repeat things when I talk to Emma. She .... hear very well.
6 Jim wears the same clothes every day. He .... have many clothes.
7 You have a cold and a fever? Poor thing! You .... feel awful.

29.4 Write **must** or **must not**.

1 We ......*must not*...... forget to send Sam a birthday card.
2 We ......*must*...... wear safety glasses when we visit the factory.
3 The city .... do something about the traffic. It's a big problem.
4 Members of the club .... disobey the rules.
5 Keep these papers in a safe place. You .... lose them.
6 Bicyclists .... follow the same traffic rules as drivers.
7 Everyone .... wait in line for their turn.

29.5 Complete the sentences. Use **must**, **must not**, or **had to** + these verbs.

~~**be**~~	**be**	**feed**	**go**	**know**	**miss**	**take**	**wear**

1 In most of the United States, you ......*must be*...... at least 16 to get a driver's license.
2 In my last job, all employees .... both English and Spanish.
3 People in the front seat of a car .... a seat belt.
4 Students who want good grades .... class often.
5 This highway was closed. Drivers .... a different road.
6 A tennis player .... very good to play professionally.
7 You .... the animals in the zoo.
8 There was no food in the house. We .... to the supermarket.

Unit 30 should

A

should + *base form*
(**should do** / **should watch**, etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	**should** **shouldn't**	**do** **stop** **go** **watch**, etc.

B

You **should do** something = it is a good thing to do; it is the right thing to do:

- Tom doesn't study enough. He **should study** harder.
- It's a good movie. You **should go** and see it.
- When you play tennis, you **should** always **watch** the ball.

You **shouldn't do** something = it is not a good thing to do.
shouldn't = should not:

- Tom **shouldn't go** to bed so late.
- You watch TV all the time. You **shouldn't watch** TV so much.

C

We often say **I think . . . should** . . . :

- **I think** Rachel **should buy** some new clothes.
  (= I think it is a good idea.)
- It's late. **I think** I **should go** home now.

I don't think . . . should . . . :

- **I don't think** you **should work** so hard.
  (= I don't think it is a good idea.)

Do you think . . . should . . . ?:

- **Do you think** I **should buy** this hat?

D

Should is different from **have to**.

- I **should** study tonight, but I think I'll go to the movies.
- I **have to** study tonight. I can't go to the movies.

E

Should I / Should we . . . ? = Do you think this is a good idea?

- It's very warm in this room. **Should I open** the window?
- "**Should I call** you tonight?" "OK."
- It's a nice day. **Should we go** for a walk?
- What **should we have** for dinner?

We sometimes use **shall** in the same way:

- "**Shall I call** you tonight?" "OK."
- It's a nice day. **Shall we go** for a walk?

must → **Unit 29** **have to** → **Unit 31**

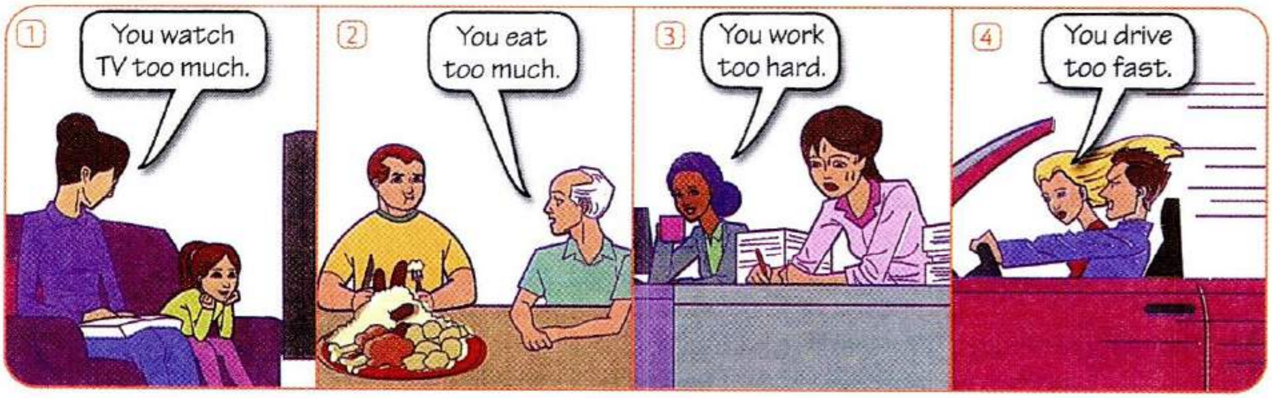
Exercises

30.1 Complete the sentences. Use **you should** + these verbs:

eat	go	read	visit	~~watch~~	wear

1 When you play tennis, ...*you should watch*... the ball.
2 It's late, and you're very tired. .... to bed.
3 .... plenty of fruit and vegetables.
4 If you have time, ... the Science Museum. It's very interesting.
5 When you're driving, ... a seat belt.
6 It's a very good book. .... it.

30.2 Write about the people in the pictures. Use **He/She shouldn't . . . so . . . .**



1 ...*She shouldn't watch TV so much.*...
2 He ....
3 .... hard.
4 ....

30.3 You are not sure what to do, so you ask a friend. Use **Do you think I should . . . ?**

1 You are in a store. You are trying on a jacket. (buy?)
You ask your friend: ...*Do you think I should buy this jacket?*...
2 You can't drive. (learn?)
You ask your friend: Do you think ....
3 You don't like your job. (get another job?)
You ask your friend: ....
4 You are going to have a party. (invite Ryan?)
You ask your friend: ....

30.4 Write sentences with **I think . . . should . . .** or **I don't think . . . should . . .**

1 We have to get up early tomorrow. (go home now) ...*I think we should go home now.*...
2 That coat is too big for you. (buy it) ...*I don't think you should buy it.*...
3 You don't need your car. (sell it) ....
4 Amanda needs a change. (take a trip) ....
5 Nicole and Dan are too young. (get married) ....
6 You're still sick. (go to work) ....

30.5 What does Anne say to Kathy? Find the right answers.

	KATHY		ANNE	
1	It's very warm in this room.	A	If you want. Where should we go?	1 ...*D*...
2	Should I wait here?	B	Yes, who should we invite?	2 ......
3	Should we have a party?	C	No, should I go and get some?	3 ......
4	It's dark in this room.	D	Should I open the window?	4 ......
5	Do you have any bread?	E	Should I turn on the light?	5 ......
6	Should we go out?	F	No, come with me.	6 ......

Unit 31

I have to . . .

A

I have to do something = it is necessary for me to do it; I am obliged to do it

I/we/you/they	**have**	**to do** **to work** **to go** **to watch**, etc.
he/she/it	**has**	

- I'll be late for work tomorrow. I **have to go** to the dentist.
- Megan starts work at 7:00, so she **has to get up** at 6:00.
- You **have to pass** a test before you can get a driver's license.

B

The past (yesterday / last week, etc.) is **had to** . . . :

- I was late for work yesterday. I **had to go** to the dentist.
- We **had to walk** home last night. There were no buses.

C

In questions and negatives we use **do/does** (present) and **did** (past):

Present

do	I/we/you/they	**have to** . . . ?
does	he/she/it	

I/we/you/they	**don't**	**have to** . . .
he/she/it	**doesn't**	

Past

did	I/we/you/they he/she/it	**have to** . . . ?

I/we/you/they he/she/it	**didn't have to** . . .

- What time **do** you **have to go** to the dentist tomorrow?
- **Does** Megan **have to work** on Saturdays?
- Why **did** they **have to leave** the party early?

I don't have to (do something) = it is not necessary to do it:

- I'm not working tomorrow, so **I don't have to get** up early.
- Mike **doesn't have to work** very hard. He's got an easy job.
- We **didn't have to wait** very long for the bus – it came in a few minutes.

D

must

You can also use **must** to say it is necessary to do something:

- You **must pass** a test before you can get a driver's license. *or* You **have to pass** a test . . .
- In many countries, men **must do** military service. *or* . . . men **have to do** . . .

We use **have to** more often than **must**, especially in spoken English.

must ➔ **Unit 29**

Exercises

31.1 Complete the sentences. Use **have to** or **has to** + these verbs:

hit read speak take travel ~~wear~~

1 My eyes are not very good. I *have to wear* glasses.
2 At the end of the course all the students .... a test.
3 Sarah is studying literature. She .... a lot of books.
4 Alberto doesn't understand much English. You .... very slowly to him.
5 Kate is not at home much. She .... a lot for her job.
6 In tennis you .... the ball over the net.

31.2 Complete the sentences. Use **have to** or **had to** + these verbs:

answer buy change go take wake ~~walk~~

1 We *had to walk* home last night. There were no buses.
2 It's late. I .... now. I'll see you tomorrow.
3 I went to the store after work yesterday. I .... some food.
4 This train doesn't go all the way downtown. You .... at First Avenue.
5 We took a test yesterday. We .... six questions out of ten.
6 I'm going to bed. I .... up early tomorrow.
7 Amy and her cousin can't go out with us tonight. They .... care of Amy's little brother.

31.3 Complete the questions. Some are present and some are past.

1	I have to get up early tomorrow.	What time *do you have to get up* ?
2	John had to wait a long time.	How long .... ?
3	Liz has to go somewhere.	Where .... ?
4	We had to pay a lot of money.	How much .... ?
5	I have to do some work.	What exactly .... ?
6	They had to leave early.	Why .... ?
7	Jim has to go to Moscow.	When .... ?

31.4 Write sentences with **don't/doesn't/didn't have to . . . .**

1 Why are you going out? You *don't have to go out.*
2 Why is Sue waiting? She ....
3 Why did you get up early? You ....
4 Why is Alex working so hard? He ....
5 Why do you want to leave now? We ....
6 Why did they tell me something I already know? They ....

31.5 Write some things that you (or your friends or family) have to do or had to do.

1 (every day) *I have to drive 50 miles to work every day.*
2 (every day) ....
3 (yesterday) ....
4 (tomorrow) ....
5 (last week) ....
6 (when I was younger) ....

Would you like . . . ? I'd like . . .

www.irLanguage.com

A

Would you like . . . **?** = Do you want . . . ?

We use **Would you like . . . ?** to offer things:

- A: **Would you like** some coffee?
  B: No, thank you.
- A: **Would you like** a piece of candy?
  B: Yes, please.
- A: Which **would you like**, tea or coffee?
  B: Tea, please.

We use **Would you like to . . . ?** to invite somebody:

- **Would you like to go** for a walk?
- A: **Would you like to come** for dinner on Sunday?
  B: Yes, **I'd love to.** (= I would love to have dinner with you)
- What **would you like to do** tonight?

B

I'd like . . . is a polite way to say "I want." **I'd** like = **I would** like

- I'm thirsty. **I'd like** a drink.
- (*in a tourist office*) **I'd like** some information about hotels, please.
- I'm feeling tired. **I'd like to stay** home tonight.

C

Would you like . . . ? and **Do you like . . . ?**

Would you like . . . ? / I'd like . . .

Would you like some coffee? = Do you want some coffee?

- A: **Would you like** to go to the movies tonight?
  (= do you want to go *tonight*?)
  B: Yes, I'd love to.
- **I'd like** an orange, please.
  (= can I have an orange?)
- What **would you like** to do next weekend?

Do you like . . . ? / I like . . .

Do you like coffee? = Do you think coffee is good?

- A: **Do you like** to go to the movies? (*in general*)
  B: Yes, I go to the movies a lot.
- **I like** oranges. (*in general*)
- What **do you like** to do on weekends?

like to do and **like -ing** → **Unit 50** **I would do** something **if** . . . → **Unit 98**

Exercises

32.1 What are the people in the pictures saying? Use **Would you like . . . ?**

32.2 What do you ask Sue in these situations? Use **Would you like to . . . ?**

1 You want to go to the movies tonight. Perhaps Sue will go with you. (go)
You ask: *Would you like to go to the movies tonight?*

2 You want to play tennis tomorrow. Perhaps Sue will play, too. (play)
You ask: ....

3 You have an extra ticket for a concert next week. Perhaps Sue will come. (come)
You ask: ....

4 It's raining and Sue is going out. She doesn't have an umbrella, but you have one. (borrow)
You ask: ....

32.3 Which is right?

1 "~~Do you like~~ / Would you like a piece of candy?" "Yes, thanks." (Would you like *is right*)
2 "Do you like / Would you like bananas?" "Yes, I love them."
3 "Do you like / Would you like some ice cream?" "No, thank you."
4 "What do you like / would you like to drink?" "A glass of water, please."
5 "Do you like / Would you like to go out for a walk?" "Not now. Maybe later."
6 I like / I'd like tomatoes, but I don't eat them very often.
7 What time do you like / would you like to have dinner tonight?
8 "Do you like / Would you like something to eat?" "No, thanks. I'm not hungry."
9 "Do you like / Would you like your new job?" "Yes, I'm enjoying it."
10 I'm tired. I like / I'd like to go to bed now.
11 "I like / I'd like a sandwich, please." "Sure. What kind of sandwich?"
12 "What kind of music do you like / would you like?" "All kinds."

I'd rather . . .

A

Anna likes to sit on the floor. She doesn't want to sit on a chair. So she says:

I'd rather sit on the floor. (= I would prefer to sit on the floor.)

I'**d** rather . . . = I **would** rather . . .

I **would rather** do something = I would prefer to do something:

Affirmative

I'd rather (I **would rather**)	do stay have be

Negative

I'**d rather not** (I **would rather not**)	do stay have be

Question

would you **rather**	do . . . ? stay . . . ? have . . . ? be . . . ?

- I don't really want to go out. I'**d rather stay** home. (= I'd prefer to stay home)
- "Should we go now?" "No, not yet. I'**d rather wait** until later."
- I'd like to go now, but Tom **would rather wait** until later.
- I don't like to be late. I'**d rather be** early.

- I'm feeling tired. I'**d rather not go out** tonight. (= I'd prefer not to go out)
- Sue is feeling tired. She'**d rather not go out** tonight.
- We're not hungry. We'**d rather not eat** yet.
- "Would you like to go out tonight?" "I'**d rather not.**" (= I'd rather not go out)

- "**Would** you **rather have** milk or juice?" "Juice, please."
- Which **would** you **rather do** – go to the movie theater or watch a movie at home?

B

We say "I'**d rather do** something" (*not* to do something):

- I'**d rather sit** on the floor. (*not* I'd rather to sit)
- Sue **would rather** not **go** out. (*not* to go)

But we say "I'**d prefer to do** something":

- I'**d prefer to sit** on the floor.
- Sue **would prefer** not **to go** out.

C

You can say "I'**d rather . . . than . . .** ":

- I'**d rather** go out **than** stay home.
- I'**d rather** have a dog **than** a cat.
- We'**d rather** go to the movie theater **than** watch a movie at home.
- I'**d rather** be at home right now **than** here.

مرجع آموزش زبان ایرانیان
www.irLanguage.com

Exercises

33.1 Look at the pictures and complete B's sentences. Use **I'd rather . . . .**

A | B

1 Would you like to sit here?

No, thanks. ......I'd rather sit...... on the floor.

2 Don't you want to watch TV?

No, I .... my book.

3 Would you like some tea?

Well, ... coffee if you have some.

4 Should we go out now?

.... until it stops raining.

33.2 Complete these questions. Use **would you rather . . . .**

1 Do you want to go out, or ......would you rather stay...... home?
2 Should we have dinner now, or .... later?
3 Would you like a glass of juice, or .... water?
4 Do you want to go to the movies, or .... TV?
5 Should we call your brother tonight, or .... tomorrow morning?

33.3 Complete the sentences with a verb. Sometimes you need **to.**

1 I'd rather ......stay...... home tonight. I'd prefer not ......to go...... out.
2 Should we walk home, or would you rather .... a taxi?
3 Do you want me to come with you, or would you prefer .... alone?
4 Lauren doesn't want to go to college. She'd rather .... a job.
5 "Can I help you with your suitcase?" "No, thank you. I'd rather .... it myself."
6 I'd rather not .... him. I'd prefer .... him an email.

33.4 Answer these questions about yourself. Use **I'd rather . . . than . . . .**

1 Which would you prefer to be – a bus driver or an airplane pilot?
......I'd rather be a bus driver than an airplane pilot.......
2 Which would you prefer to be – a journalist or a schoolteacher?
....
3 Where would you prefer to live – in a big city or a small town?
....
4 Which would you prefer to have – a small house or a big one?
....
5 Which would you prefer to study – electronics or philosophy?
....
6 Which would you prefer to watch – a soccer game or a movie?
....

Do this! Don't do that! Let's do this!

A

www.irLanguage.com

We use **come/look/be**, etc., when we tell somebody to do something:

- "**Come** here and **look** at this." "What is it?"
- I don't want to talk to you. **Go** away!
- I'm not ready yet. Please **wait** for me.
- Please **be** quiet. I'm working.

also

- **Have** a good vacation! / **Have** a good trip! / **Have** a nice time! / **Have** fun!
  (= I hope you have . . .)
- **Enjoy** your meal! / **Enjoy** the party!
  (= I hope you enjoy it)
- Good night. **Sleep** well!
  (= I hope you sleep well)
- A: **Have** a chocolate!
  (= would you like a chocolate?)
  B: Oh, thanks.

B

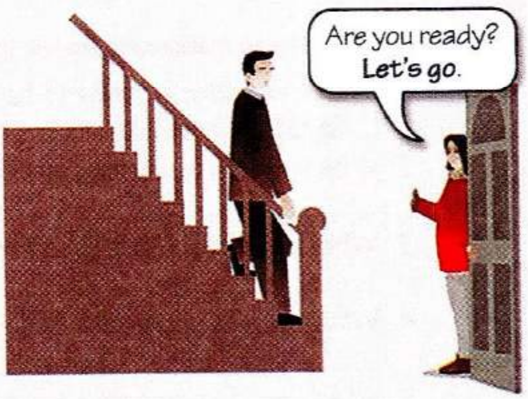
We use **don't** . . . when we tell somebody not to do something:

- Be careful! **Don't fall**.
- Please **don't go**. Stay here with me.
- Be here on time. **Don't be** late.

C

You can say **Let's** . . . when you want people to do things with you. **Let's** = Let us.

- It's a nice day. **Let's go** out.
  (= *you and* I can go out)
- Come on! **Let's dance**.
  (= *you and* I can dance)
- Are you ready? **Let's go**.
- **Let's have** fish for dinner tonight.
- A: Should we go out tonight?
  B: No, I'm tired. **Let's stay** home.



The negative is **Let's not** . . . :

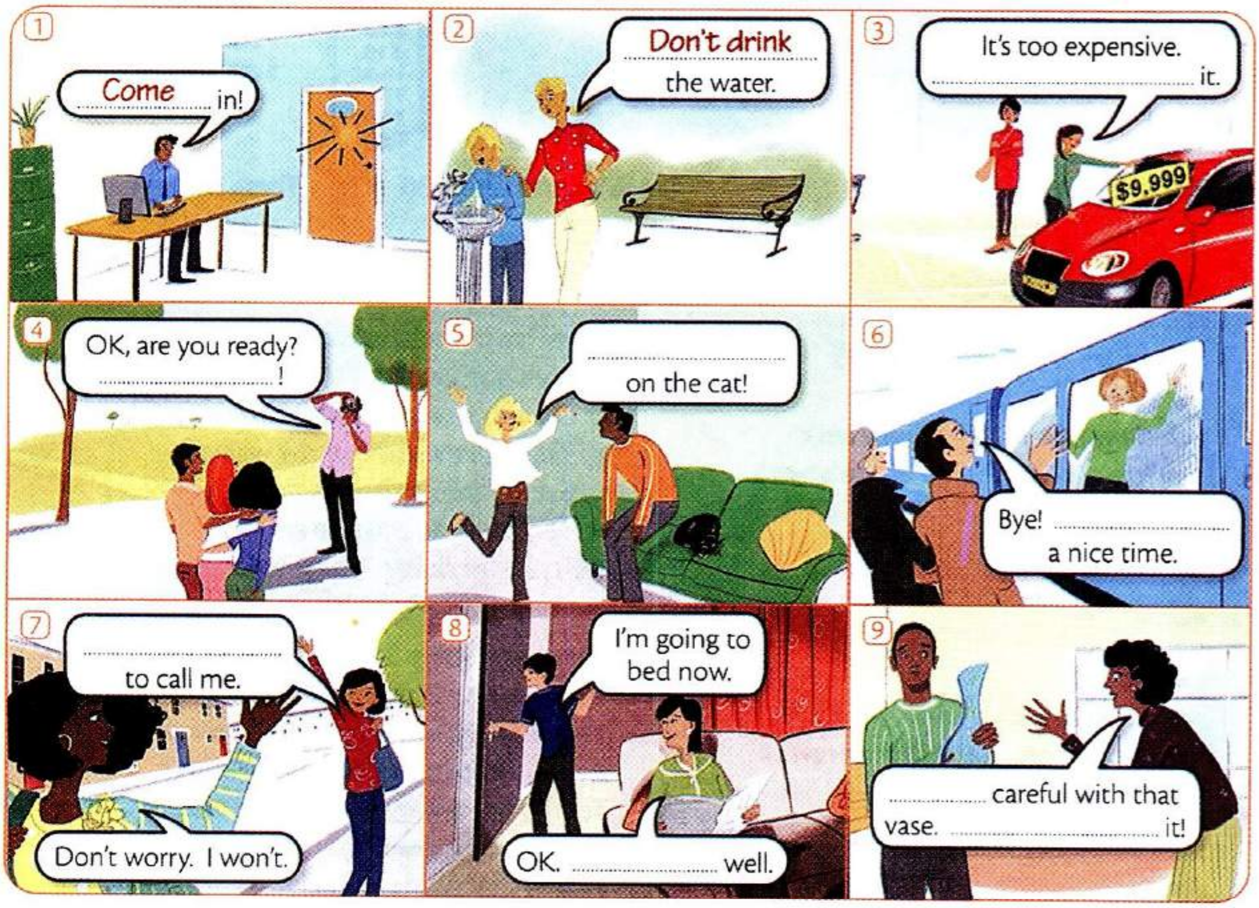
- It's cold. **Let's not** go out. Let's stay home.
- **Let's not** have fish for dinner tonight. Let's have chicken.

should we . . . ? → Unit 30

Exercises

34.1 Look at the pictures. What are the people saying? Some sentences are affirmative (**buy**/**come**, etc.) and some are negative (**don't buy** / **don't come**, etc.). Use these verbs:

be buy ~~come~~ ~~drink~~ drop forget have sit sleep smile



34.2 Complete the sentences. Use **let's** with:

~~go for a swim~~ go to a restaurant take the bus wait a little watch TV

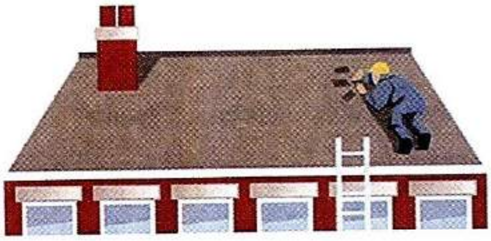
1 Would you like to play tennis? No, *let's go for a swim*.
2 Do you want to walk home? No, ...
3 Should I put some music on? No, ...
4 Should we eat at home? No, ...
5 Would you like to go now? No, ...

34.3 Answer with **No, don't . . .** or **No, let's not . . .** .

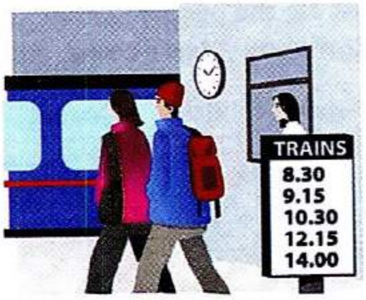
1 Should I wait for you? *No, don't wait for me.*
2 Should we go home now? *No, let's not go home yet.*
3 Should we go out? ....
4 Do you want me to close the window? ....
5 Should I call you tonight? ....
6 Do you think we should wait for Andy? ....
7 Do you want me to turn on the light? ....
8 Should we take a taxi? ....

there is there are

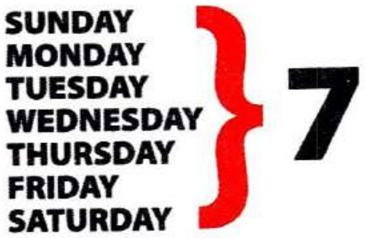
A



There's a man on the roof.



There's a train at 10:30.



There are seven days in a week.

Singular

there is . . .	**(there's)**
is there . . . ?	
there is not . . .	**(there isn't** *or* **there's not)**

- **There's** a big tree in the yard.
- **There's** nothing on TV tonight.
- A: Do you have any money?
  B: Yes, **there's** some in my wallet.
- A: Excuse me, **is there** a hotel near here?
  B: Yes, **there is**. / No, **there isn't**.
- We can't go skiing. **There isn't** any snow.

Plural

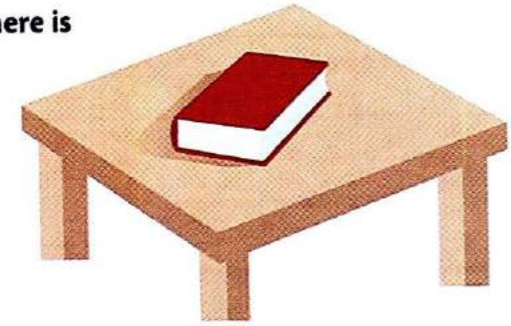
there are . . .	
are there . . . ?	
there are not . . .	**(there aren't)**

- **There are** some big trees in the yard.
- **There are** a lot of accidents on this road.
- A: **Are there** any restaurants near here?
  B: Yes, **there are**. / No, **there aren't**.
- This restaurant is very quiet. **There aren't** many people here.
- How many players **are there** on a soccer team?
- **There are** 11 players on a soccer team.

B

There is and **it is**

there is



There's a book on the table.
(*not* It's a book on the table.)

it is

I like this book. **It's** interesting.
(**It** = this book)

Compare:

- "What's **that noise**?" "**It's** a train." (**It** = that noise)
  There's a train at 10:30. **It's** a fast train. (**It** = the 10:30 train)
- **There's** a lot of salt in this soup.
  I don't like **this soup**. **It's** too salty. (**It** = this soup)

there was / were / has been, etc. → **Unit 36** **it** and **there** → **Unit 37** **some** and **any** → **Unit 74**

Exercises

35.1 Springfield is a small town. Look at the information in the box and write sentences about Springfield with **There is/are** or **There isn't/aren't**.

1	a golf course?	No
2	any restaurants?	Yes (a lot)
3	a hospital?	Yes
4	a swimming pool?	No
5	any movie theaters?	Yes (two)
6	a university?	No
7	any big hotels?	No

1 There isn't a golf course.
2 There are a lot of restaurants.
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....

35.2 Write sentences about your town (or a town that you know). Use **There is/are** or **There isn't/aren't**.

1 There are a few restaurants.
2 There's a big park.
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

35.3 Write **there is / there isn't / is there** or **there are / there aren't / are there**.

1 Springfield isn't an old town. There aren't any old buildings.
2 Look! .... a picture of your brother in the newspaper!
3 "Excuse me, ... a bank near here?" "Yes, at the end of the block."
4 .... five people in my family: my parents, my two sisters, and me.
5 "How many students .... in the class?" "Twenty."
6 The road is usually very quiet. .... much traffic.
7 ".......... a bus from downtown to the airport?" "Yes, every 20 minutes."
8 ".......... any problems?" "No, everything is OK."
9 .... nowhere to sit down. .... any chairs.

35.4 Write sentences with **There are . . . .** Choose from the boxes.

five	twenty-six
~~seven~~	thirty
eight	fifty

letters	~~days~~
players	days
planets	states

September	the solar system
the United States	~~a week~~
a basketball team	the English alphabet

1 There are seven days in a week.
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

35.5 Write **there's / is there** or **it's / is it**.

1 "There's a flight at 10:30." "Is it a nonstop flight?"
2 I'm not going to buy this shirt. .... too expensive.
3 "What's wrong?" ".......... something in my eye."
4 .... a red car outside your house. .... yours?
5 A: .... anything good on TV tonight?
B: Yes, ... a show I want to see at 8:00.
6 "What's that building?" ".......... a school."
7 ".......... a restaurant in this hotel?" "No, I'm afraid not."

Unit 36

there was/were there has/have been there will be

A there was / there were (*past*)

There is a train every hour.

The time now is 11:15.
There was a train at 11:00.

Compare:

there is/are (*present*)

- **There is** nothing on TV tonight.
- We are staying at a very big hotel. **There are** 1,250 rooms.
- Is everything OK? **Are there** any problems?
- I'm hungry, but **there isn't** anything to eat.

there was/were (*past*)

- **There was** nothing on TV last night.
- We stayed at a very big hotel. **There were** 1,250 rooms.
- Was everything OK yesterday? **Were there** any problems?
- I was hungry when I got home, but **there wasn't** anything to eat.

B there has been / there have been (*present perfect*)

- Look! **There's been** an accident. (**there's been** = there **has** been)
- This road is very dangerous. **There have been** a lot of accidents.

Compare **there was** (*past*):

- **There was** an accident **last night**. (*not* There has been an accident last night.)

For *simple past* and *present perfect*, see Unit 19.

C there will be

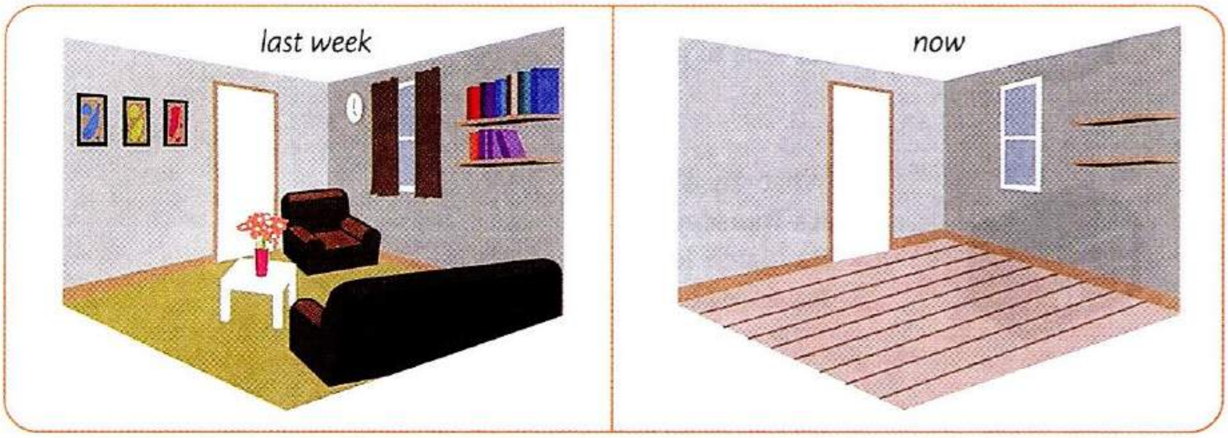
- Do you think **there will be** a lot of people at the party on Saturday?
- The president of the company is leaving, so **there will be** a new president soon.
- I'm going out of town tomorrow. I'm packing my things today because **there won't be** time tomorrow. (**there won't be** = there **will not** be)

was/were → Unit 10 has/have been → Units 16–17 will → Unit 26 there is/are → Unit 35
there and it → Units 35, 37 some and any → Unit 74

Exercises

36.1 Look at the two pictures. Now the room is empty, but what was in the room last week? Choose from the box and write sentences with **There was . . .** or **There were . . . .**

an armchair	**a carpet**	**some flowers**	**a sofa**
some books	**~~a clock~~**	**three pictures**	**a small table**



1 *There was a clock* .... on the wall near the window.
2 .... on the floor.
3 .... on the wall near the door.
4 .... in the middle of the room.
5 .... on the table.
6 .... on the shelves.
7 .... in the corner near the door.
8 .... opposite the armchair.

36.2 Write **there was / there wasn't / was there** or **there were / there weren't / were there**.

1 I was hungry, but *there wasn't* anything to eat.
2 Was everything OK yesterday? *Were there* any problems?
3 I opened the envelope, but it was empty. .... nothing in it.
4 "We stayed at a very nice hotel." "Really? .... a swimming pool?"
5 "Did you buy any cherries?" "No, ... any at the store."
6 The wallet was empty. .... any money in it.
7 "........ many people at the meeting?" "No, very few."
8 We didn't visit the museum. .... enough time.
9 I'm sorry I'm late. .... a lot of traffic.
10 Twenty years ago .... many tourists here. Now there are a lot.

36.3 Write **there** + **is / are / was / were / has been / have been / will be**.

1 *There was* a good program on TV last night.
2 .... 24 hours in a day.
3 .... a party at work last Friday, but I didn't go.
4 "Where can I get something to eat?" "........ a restaurant at the end of the block."
5 "Why are the police outside the bank?" "........ a robbery."
6 When we got to the theater, ... a long line outside.
7 When you arrive tomorrow, ... somebody at the airport to meet you.
8 Ten years ago .... 500 children in the school. Now .... more than a thousand.
9 Last week I went back to the town where I was born. It's very different now. .... a lot of changes.
10 I think everything will be OK. I don't think .... any problems.

Unit 37 it

A

We use **it** for time/day/distance/weather:

time

- What time is **it**?
- **It**'s 10:30.
- **It**'s late.
- **It**'s time to go home.

day

- What day is **it**?
- **It**'s Thursday.
- **It**'s March 16th.
- **It** was my birthday yesterday.

distance

- **It**'s two miles from our house to downtown.
- How far is **it** from New York to Los Angeles?
- **It**'s a long way from here to the airport.
- We can walk home. **It** isn't far.

We use **far** in questions (**is it far**?) and negatives (**it isn't far**).
In affirmative sentences, we use **a long way** (**it's a long way**).

weather

- **It**'s raining. **It** isn't raining. **Is** it snowing?
- **It** rains a lot here. **It** didn't rain yesterday.
  Does **it** snow very often?
- **It**'s warm/hot/cold/nice/cloudy/windy/sunny/clear/dry/humid/rainy/foggy/dark, etc.
- **It**'s a nice day today.

Compare **it** and **there**:

- **It rains** a lot in the winter.
  It's very **rainy** in the winter.
  There is **a lot of rain** in the winter.
- **It** was very **windy** yesterday.
  There was **a strong wind** yesterday.

B

It's nice to . . . , etc.

It's	easy / difficult / impossible / dangerous / safe expensive / interesting / nice / wonderful / terrible, etc.	**to** . . .

- **It**'s nice **to see you again**.
- **It**'s impossible **to understand her**.
- **It** wasn't easy **to find your house**.

C

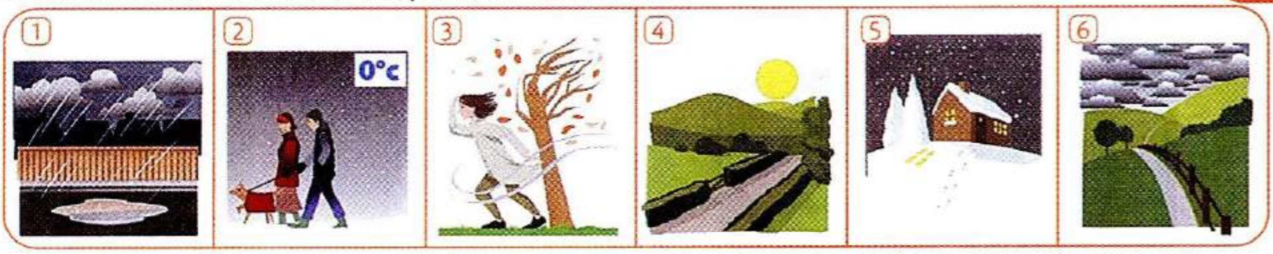
Don't forget **it**:

- **It**'s raining again. (*not* Is raining again)
- Is **it** true that you're moving to Dallas? (*not* Is true that . . .)

there is → **Units 35–36**

Exercises

37.1 Write about the weather in the pictures. Use **It's . . . .**



1 It's raining.
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

37.2 Write **it is** (**it's**) or **is it**.

1 What time is it?
2 We have to go now. .... very late.
3 .... true that Bill can fly a helicopter?
4 "What day .... today? Tuesday?" "No, ... Wednesday."
5 .... 10 miles from downtown to the airport.
6 .... OK to call you at the office?
7 "Do you want to walk to the hotel?" "I don't know. How far .... ?"
8 .... Rachel's birthday today. She's 27.
9 I don't believe it! .... impossible.

37.3 Write questions with **How far . . . ?**

1 (here / the station) How far is it from here to the station?
2 (the hotel / the beach) How ....
3 (New York / Washington) ....
4 (your house / the airport) ....

37.4 Write **it** or **there**.

1 The weather isn't so nice today. It 's cloudy.
2 There was a strong wind yesterday.
3 .... 's hot in this room. Open a window.
4 .... was a nice day yesterday. .... was warm and sunny.
5 .... was a storm last night. Did you hear it?
6 I was afraid because .... was very dark.
7 .... 's often cold here, but .... isn't much rain.
8 .... 's a long way from here to the nearest gas station.

37.5 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

it's	**easy**	**dangerous**	**to**	**work here**	~~**get up early**~~
	~~**difficult**~~	**nice**		**visit different places**	**go out alone**
	impossible	**interesting**		**see you again**	**make friends**

1 If you go to bed late, it's difficult to get up early in the morning.
2 Hello, Jane. .... How are you?
3 .... There is too much noise.
4 Everybody is very nice at work. ....
5 I like traveling. ....
6 Some cities are not safe. .... at night.

I am, I don't, etc.

A

She isn't tired, but **he is**.
(**he is** = he is tired)

He likes tea, but **she doesn't**.
(**she doesn't** = she doesn't like tea)

In these examples, it is not necessary to repeat some words ("he is *tired*," "she doesn't *like tea*").

You can use these verbs in the same way:

am/is/are
was/were
have/has
do/does/did
can
will
might
should

- I haven't seen the movie, but my sister **has**. (= my sister has seen the movie)
- A: Please help me.
  B: I'm sorry. I **can't**. (= I can't help you)
- A: Are you tired?
  B: I **was**, but **I'm not** now. (= I was tired, but I'm not tired now)
- A: Do you think Megan will come and see us?
  B: She **might**. (= she might come)
- A: Are you going to study tonight?
  B: I **should**, but I probably **won't**. (= I should study, but I probably won't study)

You *cannot* use **'m/'s/'ve**, etc. (*short forms*) in this way. You must use **am/is/have**, etc.:
- She isn't tired, but he **is**. (*not* . . . but he's)

But you *can* use **isn't / haven't / won't**, etc. (*negative short forms*):
- My sister has seen the movie, but I **haven't**.
- "Are you and Megan working tomorrow?" "I am, but Megan **isn't**."

B

You can use **I am / I'm not**, etc., after **Yes** and **No**:
- "Are you tired?" "Yes, I **am**. / No, I'**m not**."
- "Will Bill be here tomorrow?" "Yes, he **will**. / No, he **won't**."
- "Is there a bus to the airport?" "Yes, there **is**. / No, there **isn't**."

C

We use **do/does** for the *simple present* (see Units 6–7):
- I don't like hot weather, but Sue **does**. (= Sue likes hot weather)
- Sue works hard, but I **don't**. (= I don't work hard)
- "Do you enjoy your work?" "Yes, I **do**."

We use **did** for the *simple past* (see Unit 12):
- A: Did you and Chris like the movie?
  B: I **did**, but Chris **didn't**. (= I liked it, but Chris didn't like it)
- "I had a good time." "I **did**, too." (= I had a good time, too)
- "Did it rain yesterday?" "No, it **didn't**."

You have? / Have you?, etc. ➜ **Unit 39** **so am I / neither do I**, etc. ➜ **Unit 40**

Exercises

38.1 Complete these sentences. Use only one verb (**is**/**have**/**can**, etc.) each time.

1 Kate wasn't hungry, but we *were*.
2 I'm not married, but my brother ....
3 Bill can't help you, but I ....
4 I haven't read the book, but Tom ....
5 Karen won't be here, but Chris ....
6 You weren't late, but I ....

38.2 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (**isn't**/**haven't**/**can't**, etc.).

1 My sister can play the piano, but I *can't*.
2 Sam is working today, but I ....
3 I was working, but my friends ....
4 Alex has been to China, but I ....
5 I'm ready to go, but Tom ....
6 I've seen the movie, but Emma ....

38.3 Complete these sentences with **do**/**does**/**did** or **don't**/**doesn't**/**didn't**.

1 I don't like hot weather, but Sue *does*.
2 Sue likes hot weather, but I *don't*.
3 My mother wears glasses, but my father ....
4 You don't know Robert very well, but I ....
5 I didn't enjoy the party, but my friends ....
6 I don't watch TV much, but Ben ....
7 Kate lives in Canada, but her parents ....
8 You had breakfast this morning, but I ....

38.4 Complete the sentences. Write about yourself and other people.

1 I didn't *go out last night, but my friends did.*
2 I like ...., but ....
3 I don't ...., but ....
4 I'm ....
5 I haven't ....

38.5 Put in a verb, affirmative or negative.

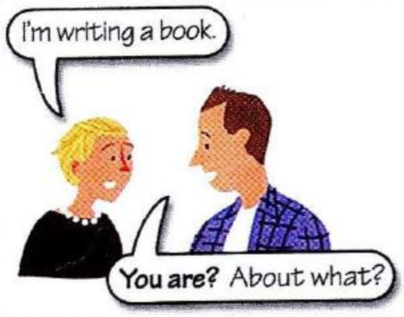
1 "Are you tired?" "I *was* earlier, but I'm not now."
2 Nate is happy today, but he .... yesterday.
3 The stores aren't open yet, but the post office ....
4 I don't have a telescope, but I know somebody who ....
5 I would like to help you, but I'm sorry I ....
6 I don't usually drive to work, but I .... yesterday.
7 A: Have you ever been to Costa Rica?
B: No, but Grace .... She went there on vacation last year.
8 "Do you and Kevin watch TV a lot?" "I ...., but Kevin doesn't."
9 I was invited to Sam's wedding, but Kate ....
10 "Do you think Sarah will pass her driving test?" "Yes, I'm sure she ...."
11 "Are you going out tonight?" "I .... I don't know for sure."

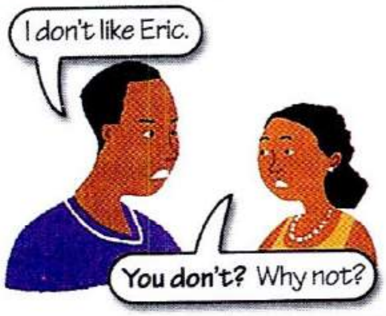
38.6 Answer these questions about yourself. Use **Yes, I have.** / **No, I'm not.**, etc.

1 Are you Brazilian? *No, I'm not.*
2 Do you have a car? ....
3 Do you feel OK? ....
4 Is it snowing? ....
5 Are you hungry? ....
6 Do you like classical music? ....
7 Will you be in Boston tomorrow? ....
8 Have you ever broken your arm? ....
9 Did you buy anything yesterday? ....
10 Were you asleep at 3:00 a.m.? ....

Unit 39 You have? Have you? You are? Are you?, etc.

A





You can say **you have? / it is? / he can't?**, etc., to show that you are interested or surprised:

- "**You're** late." "**I am?** I'm sorry."
- "**I was** sick last week." "**You were?** I didn't know that."
- "**It's** raining again." "**It is?** It was sunny 10 minutes ago."
- "**There's** a problem with the car." "**There is?** What's wrong with it?"

- "**Bill can't** drive." "**He can't?** I didn't know that."
- "**I'm not** hungry." "**You aren't?** I am."
- "**Sue isn't** at work today." "**She isn't?** Is she sick?"

Use **do/does** for the *simple present* and **did** for the *simple past*:

- "**I speak** four languages." "**You do?** Which ones?"
- "**Tim doesn't** eat meat." "**He doesn't?** Does he eat fish?"
- "**Nicole got** married last week." "**She did?** Really?"

B

Tag questions

You can use **have you? / is it? / can't she?**, etc., at the end of a sentence.

These "mini questions" are *tag questions*.

Affirmative sentence → *Negative* tag question

It's a nice day, **isn't it?**
Anna lives in Portland, **doesn't she?**
You closed the window, **didn't you?**
Those shoes are nice, **aren't they?**
Tom will be here soon, **won't he?**

Yes, it's perfect.
Yes, that's right.
Yes, I think so.
Yes, very nice.
Yes, probably.

Negative sentence → *Affirmative* tag question

That isn't your car, **is it?**
You haven't met my mother, **have you?**
Emily doesn't go out much, **does she?**
You won't be late, **will you?**

No, it's my mother's.
No, I haven't.
No, she doesn't.
No, I'm never late.

I am, I don't, etc. → **Unit 38**

Exercises

39.1 Answer with **You do?** / **She doesn't?** / **They did?**, etc.

1	I speak four languages.	You do ?	Which ones?
2	I work in a bank.	.... ?	I work in a bank, too.
3	I didn't go to work yesterday.	.... ?	Were you sick?
4	Julia doesn't like me.	.... ?	Why not?
5	You look tired.	.... ?	I feel fine.
6	Kate called me last night.	.... ?	What did she say?

39.2 Answer with **You are?** / **She does?** / **It isn't?**, etc.

1	I'm writing a book.	You are ?	What is it about?
2	Tom doesn't eat meat.	He doesn't ?	Does he eat fish?
3	I lost my key.	.... ?	When did you have it last?
4	Sue can't drive.	.... ?	She should learn.
5	I was born in Italy.	.... ?	I didn't know that.
6	I didn't sleep well last night.	.... ?	Was the bed uncomfortable?
7	There's a football game on TV tonight.	.... ?	Are you going to watch it?
8	I'm not happy.	.... ?	Why not?
9	I saw Diana last week.	.... ?	How is she?
10	Maria works in a factory.	.... ?	What kind of factory?
11	I won't be here next week.	.... ?	Where will you be?
12	The clock isn't working.	.... ?	It was working yesterday.

39.3 Complete these sentences with a tag question (**isn't it?** / **haven't you?**, etc.).

1	It's a nice day, isn't it ?	Yes, it's beautiful.
2	These flowers are nice, ... ?	Yes, what kind are they?
3	Emily was at the party, ... ?	Yes, but I didn't speak to her.
4	You've been to Chile, ... ?	Yes, many times.
5	You speak Thai, ... ?	Yes, but not very well.
6	Bill looks tired, ... ?	Yes, he works very hard.
7	You'll help me, ... ?	Yes, of course I will.

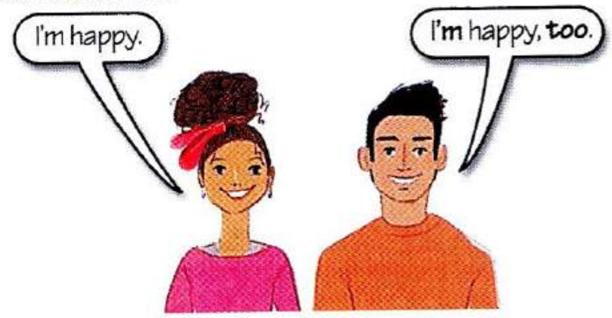
39.4 Complete these sentences with a tag question, affirmative (**is it?** / **do you?**, etc.) or negative (**isn't it?** / **don't you?**, etc.).

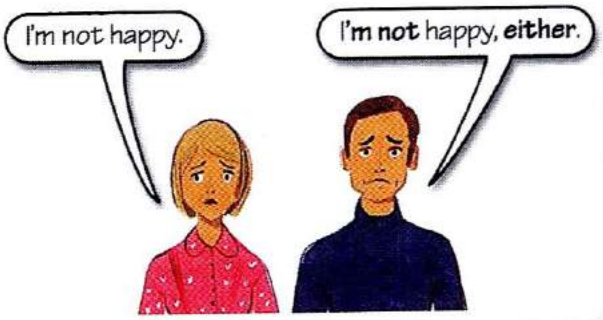
1	You haven't eaten yet, have you ?	No, I'm not hungry.
2	You aren't tired, ... ?	No, I feel fine.
3	Liz is a very nice person, ... ?	Yes, everybody likes her.
4	You can play the piano, ... ?	Yes, but I'm not very good.
5	You don't know Mike's sister, ... ?	No, I've never met her.
6	Sarah went to college, ... ?	Yes, she studied psychology.
7	The movie wasn't very good, ... ?	No, it was terrible.
8	Anna lives near you, ... ?	Yes, just a few blocks away.
9	You won't tell anybody what I said, ... ?	No, of course not.

too/either so am I / neither do I, etc.

A

too and **either**





We use **too** and **either** at the end of a sentence.

We use **too** after an *affirmative* verb:

- A: I'm happy.
  B: I**'m** happy, **too**.
- A: I liked the movie.
  B: I **liked** it, **too**.
- Jane is a doctor. Her husband **is** a doctor, **too**.

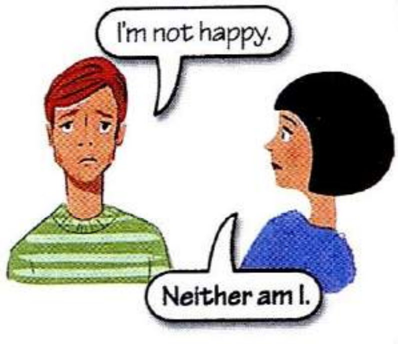
We use **either** after a *negative* verb:

- A: I'm not happy.
  B: I**'m not** happy, **either**.
- A: I can't cook.
  B: I **can't**, **either**.
- Bill doesn't watch TV. He **doesn't** read newspapers, **either**.

B

so am I / neither do I, etc.

	am/is/are ...
	was/were ...
so	**do/does** ...
	did ...
	have/has ...
neither	**can** ...
	will ...
	should ...



so am I = I am, too
so have I = I have, too (etc.):

- A: **I'm** working.
  B: **So am I.** (= I'm working, too)
- A: **I was** late for work today.
  B: **So was Sam.** (= Sam was late, too)
- A: **I work** in a bank.
  B: **So do I.**
- A: **We went** to the movies last night.
  B: You did? **So did we.**
- A: **I'd** like to go to Australia.
  B: **So would I.**

neither am I = I'm not, either
neither can I = I can't, either (etc.):

- A: **I haven't** been to China.
  B: **Neither have I.** (= I haven't, either)
- A: **Kate can't** cook.
  B: **Neither can Tom.**
- A: **I won't** (= will not) be here tomorrow.
  B: **Neither will I.**
- A: **I never go** to the movies.
  B: **Neither do I.**

Remember: So **am I** (*not* So I am), Neither **have I** (*not* Neither I have).

I am, I don't, etc. → **Unit 38**

Exercises

40.1 Write **too** or **either**.

1	I'm happy.	I'm happy, *too* .
2	I'm not hungry.	I'm not hungry, ...
3	I'm going out.	I'm going out, ...
4	It rained on Saturday.	It rained on Sunday, ...
5	Jenn can't drive a car.	She can't ride a bike, ...
6	I don't like to go shopping.	I don't like to go shopping, ...
7	Lauren's mother is a teacher.	Her father is a teacher, ...

40.2 Answer with **So . . . I** (**So am I** / **So do I** / **So can I**, etc.).

1	I went to bed late last night.	*So did I.*
2	I'm thirsty.	....
3	I've already read this book.	....
4	I need a vacation.	....
5	I'll be late tomorrow.	....
6	I was very tired this morning.	....

Answer with **Neither . . . I**.

7	I can't go to the party.	....
8	I didn't call Alex last night.	....
9	I haven't eaten lunch yet.	....
10	I'm not going out tonight.	....
11	I don't know what to do.	....

40.3 You are talking to Maria. Write sentences about yourself. Where possible, use **So . . . I** or **Neither . . . I**. Look at these examples carefully:

I'm tired today. — You can answer: *So am I.* OR *I'm not.*

I don't work hard. — You can answer: *Neither do I.* OR *I do.*

	MARIA	YOU
1	I'm studying English.	....
2	I can ride a bike.	....
3	I'm not American.	....
4	I like to cook.	....
5	I don't like cold weather.	....
6	I slept well last night.	....
7	I've never run a marathon.	....
8	I don't use my phone much.	....
9	I'm going out tomorrow night.	....
10	I haven't been to India.	....
11	I didn't watch TV last night.	....
12	I go to the movies a lot.	....

Unit 41

isn't, haven't, don't, etc. (negatives)

A

We use **not** (**n't**) in negative sentences:

Affirmative → *Negative*

am	**am not** (**'m not**)
is	**is not** (**isn't** *or* **'s not**)
are	**are not** (**aren't** *or* **'re not**)
was	**was not** (**wasn't**)
were	**were not** (**weren't**)
have	**have not** (**haven't**)
has	**has not** (**hasn't**)
will	**will not** (**won't**)
can	**cannot** (**can't**)
could	**could not** (**couldn't**)
should	**should not** (**shouldn't**)
would	**would not** (**wouldn't**)
must	**must not**

- I**'m not** tired.
- It **isn't** (*or* It**'s not**) raining.
- They **aren't** (*or* They**'re not**) here.
- Ryan **wasn't** hungry.
- The stores **weren't** open.
- I **haven't** finished my work yet.
- Sue **hasn't** been to Mexico.
- We **won't** be here tomorrow.
- John **can't** drive.
- I **couldn't** sleep last night.
- You **shouldn't** work so hard.
- I **wouldn't** like to be an actor.
- They **must not** have a car.

B

don't/doesn't/didn't

Simple present negative	I/we/you/they	**do not** (**don't**)	**work/live/go**, etc.
	he/she/it	**does not** (**doesn't**)	
Simple past negative	I/they/he/she, etc.	**did not** (**didn't**)	

Affirmative	→	*Negative*
I **want** to go out.	→	I **don't want** to go out.
They **work** hard.	→	They **don't work** hard.
Liz **plays** the guitar.	→	Liz **doesn't play** the guitar.
My father **likes** his job.	→	My father **doesn't like** his job.
I **got** up early this morning.	→	I **didn't get** up early this morning.
They **worked** hard yesterday.	→	They **didn't work** hard yesterday.
We **played** tennis.	→	We **didn't play** tennis.
Olivia **had** dinner with us.	→	Olivia **didn't have** dinner with us.

Don't . . .

Look!	→	**Don't look!**
Wait for me.	→	**Don't wait** for me.

Sometimes **do** is the main verb (**don't do / doesn't do / didn't do**):

Do something!	→	**Don't do** anything!
Sue **does** a lot on weekends.	→	Sue **doesn't do** much on weekends.
I **did** what you said.	→	I **didn't do** what you said.

simple present negative ➜ **Unit 6** simple past negative ➜ **Unit 12** **don't look / don't wait**, etc. ➜ **Unit 34**
Why isn't/don't . . . ? ➜ **Unit 42**

Exercises

41.1 **Make these sentences negative.**

1 He's gone out. *He hasn't gone out.*
2 They're married. ....
3 I had dinner. ....
4 It's cold today. ....
5 We'll be late. ....
6 You should go. ....

41.2 **Make these sentences negative. Use don't/doesn't/didn't.**

1 She saw me. *She didn't see me.*
2 I like cheese. ....
3 They understood. ....
4 He lives here. ....
5 Go away! ....
6 I did the dishes. ....

41.3 **Make these sentences negative.**

1 She can swim. *She can't swim.*
2 They've arrived. ....
3 I went to the bank. ....
4 He speaks Japanese. ....
5 We were angry. ....
6 He'll be happy. ....
7 Call me tonight. ....
8 It rained yesterday. ....
9 I could hear them. ....
10 I believe you. ....

41.4 **Complete these sentences with a negative verb (isn't/haven't/don't, etc.).**

1 They aren't rich. They *don't* have much money.
2 "Would you like something to eat?" "No, thank you. I .... hungry."
3 I .... find my glasses. Have you seen them?
4 David .... go to the movie theater much. He'd rather watch movies at home.
5 We can walk to the station from here. It .... very far.
6 "Where's Jane?" "I .... know. I .... seen her today."
7 Be careful! .... fall!
8 We went to a restaurant last night. I .... like the food very much.
9 I've been to Japan many times, but I .... been to South Korea.
10 Julia .... be here tomorrow. She'll be out of town.
11 "Who broke that window?" "Not me. I .... do it."
12 We didn't see what happened. We .... looking at the time.
13 Jenn bought a new coat a few days ago, but she .... worn it yet.
14 You .... drive so fast. It's dangerous.

41.5 **You ask Sam some questions. He answers "Yes" or "No." Write sentences about Sam, affirmative or negative.**

SAM

YOU

YOU	SAM	
Are you married?	No.	1 *He isn't married.*
Do you live in Los Angeles?	Yes.	2 *He lives in Los Angeles.*
Were you born in Los Angeles?	No.	3 ....
Do you like Los Angeles?	No.	4 ....
Would you like to live someplace else?	Yes.	5 ....
Can you drive?	Yes.	6 ....
Have you traveled abroad?	No.	7 ....
Do you read the newspaper?	No.	8 ....
Are you interested in politics?	No.	9 ....
Do you usually watch TV at night?	Yes.	10 ....
Did you watch TV last night?	No.	11 ....
Did you go out last night?	Yes.	12 ....

is it . . . ? have you . . . ? do they . . . ?, etc. (questions 1)

A

Affirmative	**you**	**are**	**You are** eating.	
Question	**are**	**you**	**Are you** eating?	What **are you** eating?

In questions, the first verb (**is**/**are**/**have**, etc.) is before the subject:

Affirmative subject + verb			*Question* verb + subject	
I	**am** late.	→	**Am**	**I** late?
Max	**is** from Canada.	→	Where **is**	**Max** from?
She	**was** angry.	→	Why **was**	**she** angry?
The movie	**has** started.	→	**Has**	**the movie** started?
You	**have** been to Japan.	→	**Have**	**you** been to Japan?
They	**will** be here soon.	→	When **will**	**they** be here?
Paula	**can** swim.	→	**Can**	**Paula** swim?

The subject is after the first verb:

- **Has the movie** started? (*not* Has started the movie?)
- **Are those people** waiting for something? (*not* Are waiting . . . ?)
- When **was the telephone** invented? (*not* When was invented . . . ?)

B

do . . . ? / does . . . ? / did . . . ?

Simple present questions	**do**	I/we/you/they	**work**/**live**/**go**, etc. . . . ?
	does	he/she/it	
Simple past questions	**did**	I/they/he/she, etc.	

Affirmative		*Question*
They **work** hard.	→	**Do** they **work** hard?
You **watch** TV.	→	How often **do** you **watch** TV?
Chris **has** a car.	→	**Does** Chris **have** a car?
She **gets up** early.	→	What time **does** she **get** up?
They **worked** hard.	→	**Did** they **work** hard?
You **had** dinner.	→	What **did** you **have** for dinner?
She **got** up early.	→	What time **did** she **get** up?

Sometimes **do** is the main verb (do you **do** / did he **do**, etc.):

- What **do** you usually **do** on weekends?
- A: What **does** your brother **do**?
  B: He works in a bank.
- A: I broke my finger last week.
  B: How **did** you **do** that? (*not* How did you that?)

C

Why isn't . . . ? / Why don't . . . ?, etc. (**Why** + *negative*):

- Where's John? **Why isn't he** here? (*not* Why he isn't here?)
- **Why can't Nicole** come to the meeting tomorrow? (*not* Why Nicole can't . . . ?)
- **Why didn't you** call me last night?

simple present questions ➔ **Unit 7** simple past questions ➔ **Unit 12** questions 2–3 ➔ **Units 43–44**
what/which/how ➔ **Units 45–46**

Exercises

42.1 Write questions.

1	I can swim.	(and you?)	*Can you swim?*
2	I work hard.	(and Jack?)	*Does Jack work hard?*
3	I was late this morning.	(and you?)	
4	I've seen that movie.	(and Kate?)	
5	I'll be here tomorrow.	(and you?)	
6	I'm going out tonight.	(and Sam?)	
7	I like my job.	(and you?)	
8	I live near here.	(and Nicole?)	
9	I enjoyed the movie.	(and you?)	
10	I had a good vacation.	(and you?)	

42.2 You are talking to a friend about driving. Write complete questions.

YOU

	YOU	Friend
1	(have / a car?) *Do you have a car?*	Yes, I do.
2	(use / a lot?) .... it	Yes, every day.
3	(use / yesterday?)	Yes, to go to work.
4	(enjoy driving?)	Not very much.
5	(a good driver?)	I think I am.
6	(ever / have / an accident?)	No, never.

42.3 Make questions with these words. Put the words in the right order.

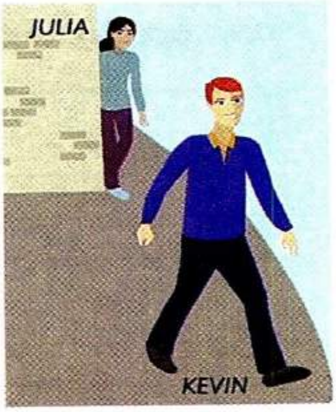
1 (did / go / where / David?) *Where did David go?*
2 (working / Rachel / is / today?) *Is Rachel working today?*
3 (the children / what / are / doing?) What ....
4 (made / is / how / cheese?)
5 (to the party / coming / is / your sister?)
6 (you / the truth / tell / don't / why?)
7 (your guests / have / yet / arrived?)
8 (leave / what time / your plane / does?)
9 (to work / Emma / why / go / didn't?)
10 (your car / in the accident / was / damaged?)

42.4 Complete the questions.

1	I want to go out.	Where *do you want to go?*
2	Kate and Ben aren't going to the party.	Why *aren't they going?*
3	I'm reading.	What
4	Sue went to bed early.	What time
5	My parents are going on vacation.	When
6	I saw Tom a few days ago.	Where
7	I can't come to the party.	Why
8	I've been to Canada.	How many times
9	I need some money.	How much
10	Anna doesn't like me.	Why
11	It rains sometimes.	How often
12	I did the shopping.	When

Who saw you? Who did you see? (questions 2)

A



Julia saw Kevin.

Who **saw** Kevin?
Julia. (Julia saw him.)

Who **did** Julia **see**?
Kevin. (She saw Kevin.)

Julia saw Kevin.

Subject

Somebody saw Kevin.

Who saw Kevin?

Julia. (Julia saw him.)

who is the *subject*
Kevin is the *object*

Object

Julia saw somebody.

Who did Julia see?

Kevin. (She saw Kevin.)

who is the *object*
Julia is the *subject*

B

In these questions, **who/what** is the *subject*:

- **Who lives** in this house? (= somebody lives in it – who?)
  (*not* Who does live?)
- **What happened**? (= something happened – what?)
  (*not* What did happen?)
- **What's happening**? (What's = What **is**)
- **Who's got** my keys? (Who's = Who **has**)

In these questions, **who/what** is the *object*:

- Who did **you** meet yesterday? (= **you** met somebody – who?)
- What did **Kevin** say? (= **Kevin** said something – what?)
- Who are **you** calling?
- What was **Julia** wearing?

Compare:

- Eric likes oranges. → **Who likes** oranges? – Eric.
  What does Eric like? – Oranges.
- Emily won a new car. → **Who won** a new car? – Emily.
  What did Emily win? – A new car.

C

Use **who** for people (somebody). Use **what** for things, ideas, etc. (something):

- **Who** is your favorite **singer**?
- **What** is your favorite **song**?

questions → Units 42, 44 what/which/how → Unit 45

Exercises

43.1 Make questions with **who** or **what**. In these questions, **who**/**what** is the subject.

1 Somebody broke the window. — *Who broke the window?*
2 Something fell off the shelf. — What ....
3 Somebody wants to see you. — .... me?
4 Somebody took my umbrella. — ....
5 Something made me sick. — ....
6 Somebody is coming. — ....

43.2 Make questions with **who** or **what** (subject or object).

1 I bought something. — *What did you buy?*
2 Somebody lives in this house. — *Who lives in this house?*
3 I called somebody. — ....
4 Something happened last night. — ....
5 Somebody knows the answer. — ....
6 Somebody did the dishes. — ....
7 Emma did something. — ....
8 Something woke me up. — ....
9 Somebody saw the accident. — ....
10 I saw somebody. — ....
11 Somebody has my pen. — ....
12 This word means something. — ....

43.3 You want the missing information (XXXXX). Write questions with **who** or **what**.

1 I lost **XXXXX** yesterday, but fortunately **XXXXX** found it and gave it back to me.
What did you lose?
Who found it?

2 **XXXXX** called me last night. She wanted **XXXXX**.
Who ....
What ....

3 I needed some advice, so I asked **XXXXX**. He said **XXXXX**.
....
....

4 I hear that **XXXXX** got married last week. **XXXXX** told me.
....
....

5 I met **XXXXX** on my way home tonight. She told me **XXXXX**.
....
....

6 Andy and I played tennis yesterday. **XXXXX** won. After the game, we **XXXXX**.
....
....
....

7 It was my birthday last week, and I got some presents. **XXXXX** gave me a book, and Catherine gave me **XXXXX**.
....
....
....

Unit 44

Who is she talking to? What is it like? (questions 3)

A

Julia is talking to somebody.

Who is she talking **to**?

In questions beginning **Who . . . ? / What . . . ? / Where . . . ? / Which . . . ?**, prepositions (**to/from/with**, etc.) usually go at the end:

- "**Where** are you **from**?" "I'm from Thailand."
- "Jack was afraid." "**What** was he afraid **of**?"
- "**Who** do these books belong **to**?" "They're mine."
- "Tom's father is in the hospital." "**Which hospital** is he **in**?"
- "Kate is going on vacation." "**Who with**?" / "**Who** is she going **with**?"
- "Can we talk?" "Sure. **What** do you want to talk **about**?"

B

What's it like? / What are they like?, etc.

What**'s** it like? = What **is** it like?

What's it like? = tell me something about it – is it good or bad, big or small, old or new, etc.?

When we say "**What is it like?**," **like** is a *preposition*. It is not the verb **like** (**Do** you **like** your new house?, etc.).

- A: There's a new restaurant near my house.
  B: **What's** it **like**? Is it good?
  A: I don't know. I haven't eaten there yet.
- A: **What's** your new teacher **like**?
  B: She's very good. We learn a lot.
- A: I met Nicole's parents yesterday.
  B: You did? **What** are they **like**?
  A: They're very nice.
- A: Did you have a good vacation? **What** was the weather **like**?
  B: It was great. It was sunny every day.

questions 1–2 ➔ **Units 42–43** what/which/how ➔ **Unit 45** prepositions ➔ **Units 101–111**

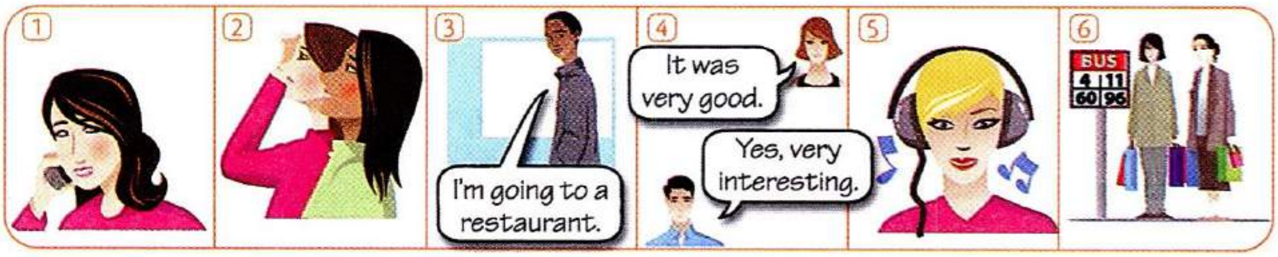
Exercises

44.1 You want the missing information (XXXXX). Write questions with **who** or **what**.

1 The letter is from **XXXXX**. — *Who is the letter from?*
2 I'm looking for a **XXXXX**. — What .... you ....
3 I went to the movies with **XXXXX**. — ....
4 The movie was about **XXXXX**. — ....
5 I gave the money to **XXXXX**. — ....
6 The book was written by **XXXXX**. — ....

44.2 Write questions about the people in the pictures. Use these verbs + a preposition:

go listen look ~~talk~~ talk wait



1 *Who is she talking to?*
2 What .... they ....
3 Which restaurant ....
4 What ....
5 What ....
6 Which bus ....

44.3 Write questions with **Which . . . ?**

1 Tom's father is in the hospital. — *Which hospital is he in?*
2 We stayed at a hotel. — .... you ....
3 Jack plays for a football team. — ....
4 I went to school in this town. — ....

44.4 You want some information about another country. You ask somebody who has been there. Ask questions with **What is/are . . . like?**

1 (the roads) *What are the roads like?*
2 (the food) ....
3 (the people) ....
4 (the weather) ....

44.5 Ask questions with **What was/were . . . like?**

1 Your friend just came back from a trip. Ask about the weather.
What was the weather like?
2 Your friend just came back from the movies. Ask about the movie.
....
3 Your friend just finished a computer course. Ask about the classes.
....
4 Your friend just came back from a business trip. Ask about the hotel.
....

Unit 45

What . . . ? Which . . . ? How . . . ? (questions 4)

A

What + *noun* (**What color . . . ? / What kind . . . ?**, etc.)

- **What color** is your car?
- **What size** is this shirt?
- **What time** is it?
- **What kind** of job do you want?
  (*or* **What type** of job . . . ? / **What sort** of job . . . ?)
- **What color** are your eyes?
- **What nationality** is she?
- **What day** is it today?

What without a noun:

- **What's** your favorite color?
- **What** do you want to do tonight?

B

Which + *noun* (things or people)

- **Which train** did you catch – the 9:50 or the 10:30?
- **Which doctor** did you see – Doctor Lopez, Doctor Gray, or Doctor Hill?

We use **which** without a noun for things, not people:

- **Which** is bigger – Canada or Australia?

We use **who** for people (without a noun):

- **Who** is taller – Joe or David? (*not* Which is taller?)

C

What or **which**?

We use **which** when we are thinking about a small number of possibilities (perhaps 2, 3, or 4):

- We can go this way or that way.
  Which way should we go?
- There are four umbrellas here.
  Which is yours?

? or **?** or **?** or **?**

WHICH?

What is more general:

- **What's** the capital of Argentina? (of all the cities in Argentina)
- **What kind** of music do you like? (of all kinds of music)

Compare:

- **What color** are his eyes? (*not* Which color?)
  Which color do you prefer, **pink or yellow**?
- **What** is the longest river in the world?
  Which is the longest river – **the Mississippi, the Amazon, or the Nile**?

D

How . . . ?

- "**How** was the party last night?" "It was great."
- "**How** do you get to work?" "By bus."

You can use **how** + *adjective/adverb* (**how tall / how old / how often**, etc.):

"**How**	**tall** are you?" "I'm five feet 10." (5 feet 10 inches *or* 1.78 meters)
	big is the house?" "Not very big."
	old is your mother?" "She's 45."
	far is it from here to the airport?" "Ten miles." (about 16 kilometers)
	often do you use your car?" "Every day."
	long have they been married?" "Ten years."
	much was the taxi?" "Twenty dollars."

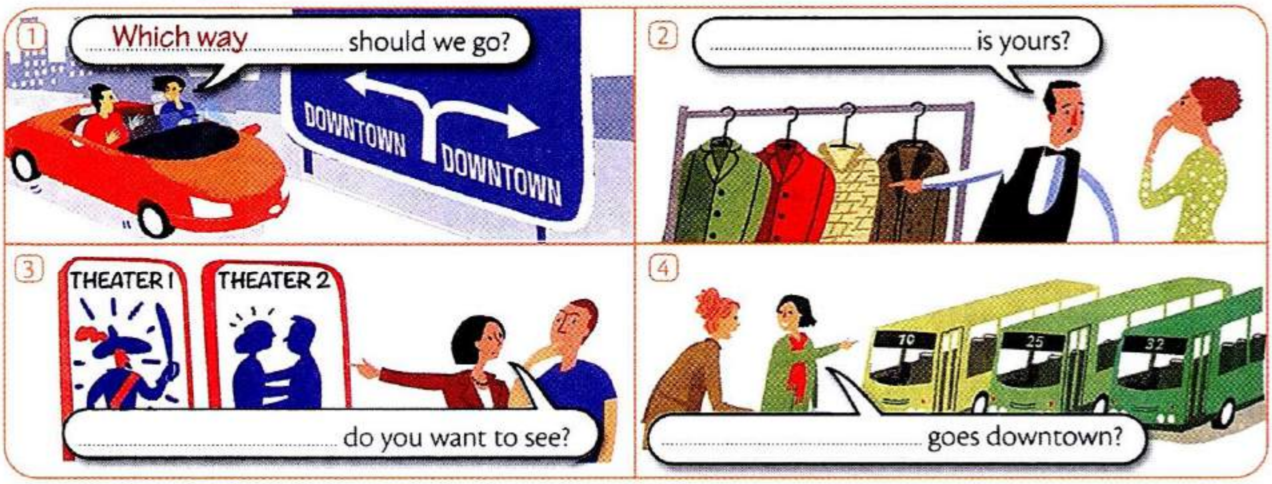
questions → **Units 42–44** **How long does it take . . . ?** → **Unit 46** **which one(s)** → **Unit 73**

Exercises

45.1 Write questions with **what**.

1	This shirt is nice.	(size?)	*What size is it?*
2	I want a job.	(kind?)	*What kind of job do you want?*
3	I bought a new sweater.	(color?)	What ....
4	I got up early this morning.	(time?)	.... get up?
5	I like music.	(type?)	....
6	I want to buy a car.	(kind?)	....

45.2 Complete the questions. Use **Which . . . ?**



45.3 Write **what/which/who**.

1 *What* is that man's name?
2 *Which* way should we go? Left or right?
3 Tea or coffee? .... do you prefer?
4 "........................ day is it today?" "Friday."
5 .... is your favorite sport?
6 This is a nice office. .... desk is yours?
7 .... is more expensive, meat or fish?
8 .... is older, Liz or Mike?
9 .... kind of camera do you have?
10 A: I have three cameras.
B: .... camera do you use most?
11 .... nationality are you?

45.4 Complete the questions with **How** + adjective or adverb (**high**/**long**, etc.).

1	*How high* is Mount Everest?	Over 29,000 feet.
2	.... is it to the station?	Almost two miles.
3	.... is Helen?	She's 26.
4	.... do the buses run?	Every 10 minutes.
5	.... is the water in the pool?	Seven feet.
6	.... have you lived here?	Almost three years.

45.5 Write questions with **How . . . ?**

1 Are you five feet nine? Five feet ten? Five feet eleven? *How tall are you?*
2 Is this box one kilogram? Two? Three? ....
3 Are you 20 years old? 22? 25? ....
4 Did you spend $20? $30? $50? ....
5 Do you watch TV every day? Once a week? Never?
....
6 Is it 2,000 miles from New York to Los Angeles? 2,500? 3,000?
....

Unit 46

How long does it take . . . ?

A How long does it take to get from . . . to . . . ?

How long **does it take to get** from New York to Washington, D.C., by plane?

It takes an hour.

- ○ How long **does it take to get** from Los Angeles to New York by train?
- ○ **It takes** several days **to get** from Los Angeles to New York by train.
- ○ How long **does it take to get** from your house to the airport by car?
- ○ **It takes** ten minutes **to get** from my house to the airport by car.

B How long does it take to do something?

How long	**does** **did** **will**	**it take to** . . . ?

It	**takes** **took** **will take**	a week a long time three hours	**to** . . .
It	**doesn't** **didn't** **won't** **take**	long	**to** . . .

- ○ How long **does it take to cross** the Atlantic by ship?
- ○ "I came by train." "You did? How long **did it take** (**to get** here)?"
- ○ How long **will it take to get** from here to the hotel?

- ○ **It takes** a long time **to learn** a language.
- ○ **It doesn't take** long **to make** an omelet.
- ○ **It won't take** long **to fix** the computer.

C How long does it take you to do something?

I started reading the book on Monday.
I finished it on Wednesday evening.

It took me three days **to read** it.

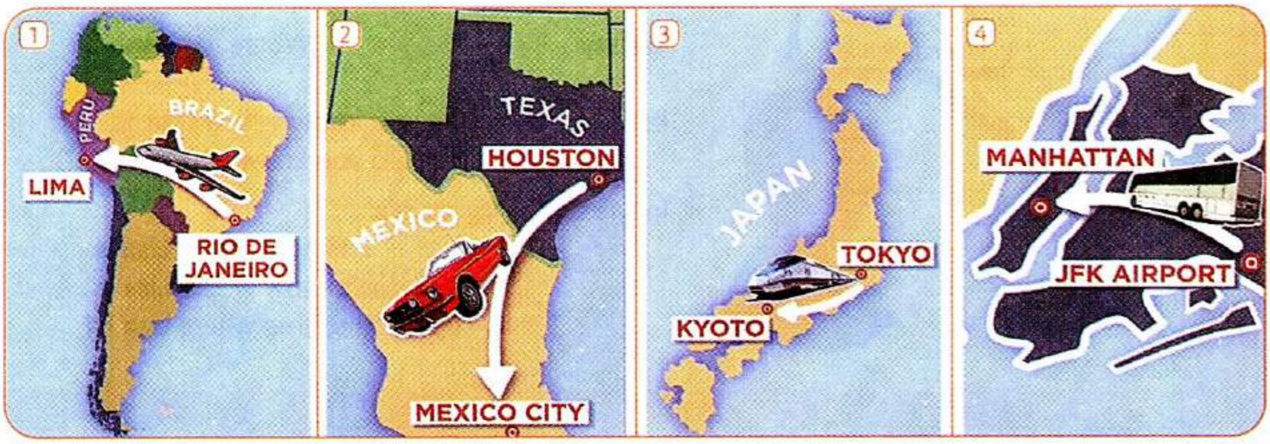
How long	**does** **did** **will**	**it take**	you Tom them	**to** . . . ?

It	**takes** **took** **will take**	me Tom them	a week a long time three hours	**to** . . .

- ○ How long **will it take me to learn** to drive?
- ○ **It takes Tom** 20 minutes **to get** to work in the morning.
- ○ **It took us** an hour **to do** the shopping.
- ○ **Did it take you** a long time **to find** a job?
- ○ **It will take me** an hour **to cook** dinner.

Exercises

46.1 Look at the pictures and write questions with **How long . . . ?**



1 *How long does it take to get from Rio de Janeiro to Lima by plane?*
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....

46.2 How long does it take to do these things? Write complete sentences.

1 fly from your city/country to Los Angeles
It takes about 11 hours to fly from Seoul to Los Angeles.
2 fly from your city/country to Australia
....
3 become a doctor in your country
....
4 walk from your home to the nearest supermarket
....
5 get from your house to the nearest airport
....

46.3 Write questions with **How long did it take . . . ?**

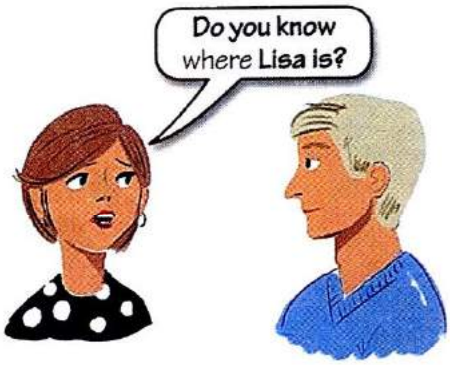
1 (Jane found a job.) *How long did it take her to find a job?*
2 (I walked to the station.) .... you ....
3 (Tom painted the bathroom.) ....
4 (I learned to ski.) ....
5 (They repaired the car.) ....

46.4 Read the situations and write sentences with **It took . . . .**

1 I read a book last week. I started reading it on Monday. I finished it three days later.
It took me three days to read the book.
2 We walked home last night. We left at 10:00, and we got home at 10:20.
....
3 I learned to drive last year. I had my first driving lesson in January. I passed my driving test six months later.
....
4 Mark drove to Houston yesterday. He left home at 7:00 and got to Houston at 10:00.
....
5 Lisa began looking for a job a long time ago. She got a job last week.
....
6 *Write a sentence about yourself.*
....

Do you know where . . . ? I don't know what . . . , etc.

A



We say: Where **is** **Lisa**?

but **Do you know** where **Lisa** **is**?
(*not* Do you know where is Lisa?)

In the same way we say:
I know where **Lisa is**.
I don't know where **Lisa is**.
Can you tell me where **Lisa is**?

Compare:

Who **are those people**?
How old **is Nicole**?
What time **is it**?
Where **can I** go?
How much **is this camera**?
When **are you** leaving town?
How long **have they** been married?
What **was Anna** wearing?

but

Do you know **Can you tell me**	who **those people are** how old **Nicole is** what time **it is** where **I can** go	?
I know **I don't know** **I don't remember**	how much **this camera is** when **you're** leaving town how long **they have** been married what **Anna was** wearing	.

B

Questions with **do/does/did** (*simple present* and *simple past*)

Where **does he live** ?

but **Do you know** where **he lives** ? (*not* Do you know where does he live?)

Compare:

How **do airplanes** fly?
What **does Emily** want?
Why **did she** go home?
Where **did I** put the key?

but

Do you know	how **airplanes fly**	?
I don't know **I don't remember** **I know**	what **Emily wants** why **she went** home where **I put** the key	.

C

Questions beginning **Is . . . ? / Do . . . ? / Can . . . ?**, etc. (yes/no questions)

Compare:

Is Jack at home?
Have they got a car?
Can Kevin swim?
Do they live near here?
Did anybody see you?

but

Do you know	**if** *or* **whether**	**Jack is** at home **they've got** a car **Kevin can** swim **they live** near here **anybody saw** you	?
I don't know			.

You can use **if** *or* **whether** in these sentences:

- Do you know **if** they've got a car? *or*
  Do you know **whether** they've got a car?
- I don't know **if** anybody saw me. *or*
  I don't know **whether** anybody saw me.

Exercises

47.1 Answer these questions with **I don't know where/when/why . . .**, etc.

1	Did your friends go home?	(where) I don't know where they went.
2	Is Sue in her office?	(where) I don't know ....
3	Is the building very old?	(how old) ....
4	Will Matt be here soon?	(when) ....
5	Was he angry because I was late?	(why) ....
6	Has Emily lived here a long time?	(how long) ....

47.2 Complete the sentences.

1 (How do airplanes fly?) Do you know how airplanes fly ?
2 (Where does Susan work?) I don't know ....
3 (What did Michael say?) Do you remember .... ?
4 (Why did he go home early?) I don't know ....
5 (What time does the meeting begin?) Do you know .... ?
6 (How did the accident happen?) I don't remember ....

47.3 Which is right?

1 Do you know what time ~~is it~~ / it is? (*it is is right*)
2 Why are you / you are leaving?
3 I don't know where are they / they are going.
4 Can you tell me where is the museum / the museum is?
5 Where do you want / you want to go for vacation?
6 Do you know what do elephants eat / elephants eat?
7 I don't know how far is it / it is from the hotel to the station.

47.4 Write questions with **Do you know if . . . ?**

1 (Do they have a car?) Do you know if they have a car?
2 (Are they married?) Do you know ....
3 (Does Sue know Bill?) ....
4 (Will Josh be here tomorrow?) ....
5 (Did he pass his exam?) ....

47.5 Write questions beginning **Do you know . . . ?**

1 (What does Laura want?) Do you know what Laura wants?
2 (Where is Hannah?) Do ....
3 (Is she working today?) ....
4 (What time does she start work?) ....
5 (Are the banks open tomorrow?) ....
6 (Where do Sarah and Tom live?) ....
7 (Did they go to Megan's party?) ....

47.6 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

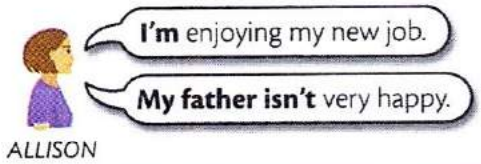
1 Do you know why the bus was late ?
2 Do you know what time .... ?
3 Excuse me, can you tell me where .... ?
4 I don't know what ....
5 Do you know if .... ?
6 Do you know how much .... ?

She said that . . . He told me that . . .

A

Last week you went to a party. A lot of your friends were there. Here are some things they said to you:

Today you see Dan. You tell him about the party. You tell Dan what your friends said:



am, **is** → **was**

- Allison said that **she was** enjoying her new job.
- She said that **her father wasn't** very happy.

are → **were**

- Sarah and Tom said that **they were** going to buy a house.

have, **has** → **had**

- Aaron said that **he had** to leave early.
- He said that **his sister had** been to Australia

can → **could**

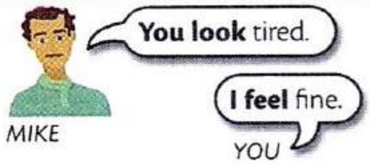
- Kate said that **she couldn't** find a job.

will → **would**

- Eric said that **he would** call me.

do, **does** → **did**

- Rachel said that **she didn't** like her job.
- She said that **her son didn't** like school.



look → **looked**
feel, → **felt**,
etc. etc.
(present) *(past)*

- Mike said that **I looked** tired.
- I said that **I felt** fine.

B

say and **tell**

say (→ **said**)

- He **said** that he was tired.
  (*not* He said me)
- What did she **say to** you?
  (*not* say you)

We say **he said to me**, **I said to Ann**, etc.
(*not* "he said me," "I said Ann.")

tell (→ **told**)

- He **told me** that he was tired.
  (*not* He told that)
- What did she **tell you**?
  (*not* tell to you)

We say **he told me**, **I told Ann**, etc.
(*not* "he told to me," "I told to Ann.")

C

You can say:

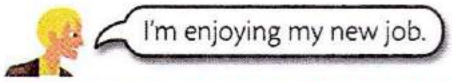
- He said **that** he was tired. *or* He said he was tired. (*without* that)
- Kate told me **that** she couldn't find a job. *or* Kate told me she couldn't find a job.

I told you to . . . → **Unit 51**

Exercises

irLanguage.com

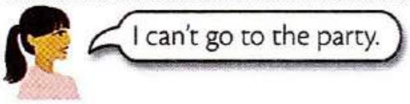
48.1 Read what these people say and write sentences with **He/She/They said (that)** . . . .

1 

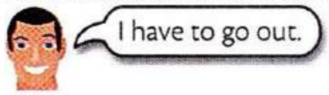
He said he was enjoying his new job.

2

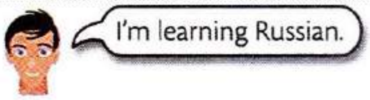
____

3 

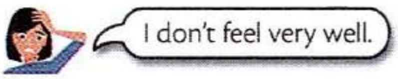
____

4 

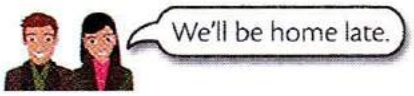
____

5 

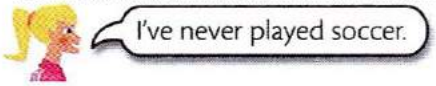
____

6 

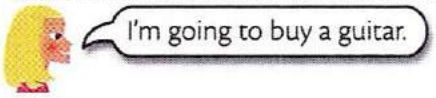
____

7 

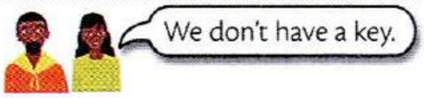
____

8 

____

9 

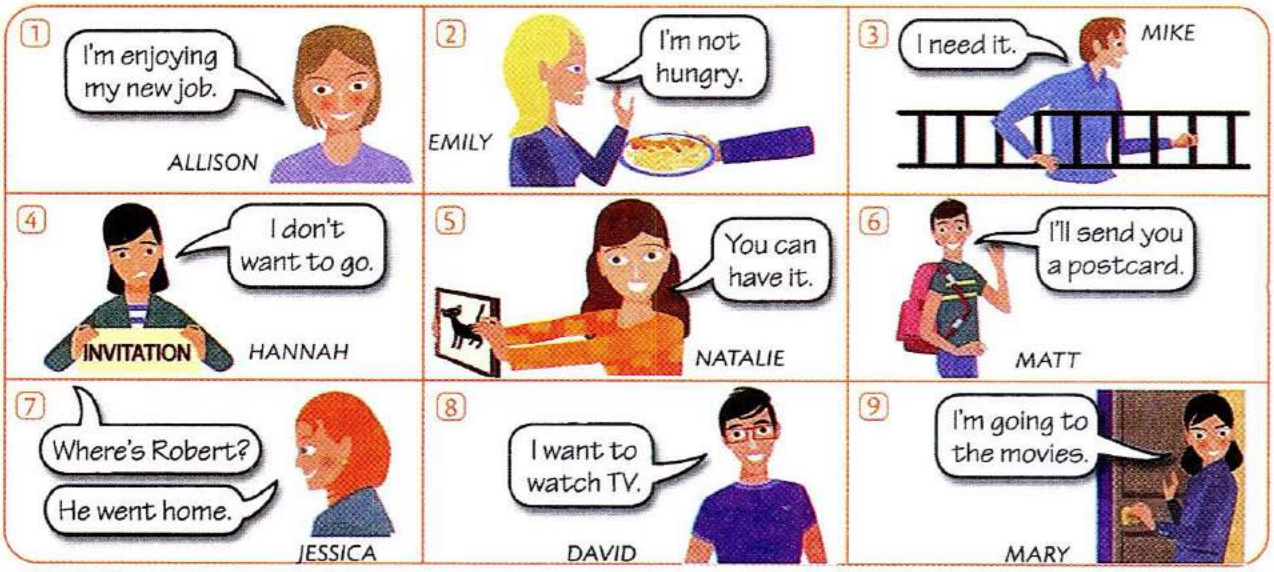
____

10 

____

48.2 Use the pictures to complete the sentences.

irLanguage.com



1 I met Allison last week. She said she was enjoying her new job.
2 Emily didn't want anything to eat. She said ________.
3 I wanted to borrow Mike's ladder, but he said ________.
4 Hannah was invited to the party, but she said ________.
5 Natalie told me she didn't want the picture. She said ________.
6 Matt just left on vacation. He said ________.
7 I was looking for Robert. Jessica said ________.
8 "Why did David stay home?" "He said ________."
9 "Did Mary go out?" "I think so. She said ________."

48.3 Write **say/said** or **tell/told**.

1 He said he was tired.
2 What did she tell you?
3 Anna ________ she didn't like Jake.
4 Jack ________ me that you were sick.
5 Please don't ________ Dan what happened.
6 Did Sarah ________ she would be late?
7 The woman ________ she was a reporter.
8 The woman ________ us she was a reporter.
9 They asked me a lot of questions, but I didn't ________ them anything.
10 They asked me a lot of questions, but I didn't ________ anything.

work/working go/going do/doing

A

work/go/be, etc. *(base form)*

will/can/must, etc. + *base form:*

will	Anna **will be** here soon.	→ Unit 26
might	I **might call** you later.	→ Unit 27
may	**May** I **sit** here?	
can	I **can't meet** you tomorrow.	→ Unit 28
could	**Could** you **pass** the salt, please?	
must	It's late. You **must be** tired.	→ Unit 29
should	You **shouldn't work** so hard.	→ Unit 30
would	**Would** you **like** some coffee?	→ Unit 32

do/does/did + *base form:*

do/does *(simple present)*	**Do** you **work**? They **don't work** very hard. Helen **doesn't know** many people. How much **does** it **cost**?	→ Units 6–7
did *(simple past)*	What time **did** the train **leave**? We **didn't sleep** well.	→ Unit 12

B

to work / to go / to be, etc. (**to** + *base form*)

(I'm) **going to** . . .	I'**m going to play** tennis tomorrow. What **are** you **going to do**?	→ Unit 25
(I) **have to** . . .	I **have to go** now. Everybody **has to eat**.	→ Unit 31
(I) **want to** . . .	Do you **want to go** out? They don't **want to come** with us.	→ Unit 50
(I) **would like to** . . .	I'**d like to talk** to you. **Would** you **like to go** out?	→ Unit 32
(I) **used to** . . .	Dave **used to work** in a factory.	→ Unit 15

C

working/going/playing, etc.

am/is/are + **-ing** *(present continuous)*	Please be quiet. I'**m working**. Tom **isn't working** today. What time **are** you **going** out?	→ Units 3–4, 8, 24
was/were + **-ing** *(past continuous)*	It **was raining**, so we didn't go out. What **were** you **doing** at 11:30 yesterday?	→ Units 13–14

مرجع آموزش زبان ایرانیان
www.irLanguage.com

verbs + **to** . . . and **-ing** (**I want to do / I enjoy doing**) → **Unit 50** go + **-ing** → **Unit 53**

Exercises

49.1 Complete the sentences. Write: **... call Dan** or **... to call Dan.**

1 I'll *call Dan* .
2 I'm going *to call Dan* .
3 Can you .... Dan?
4 Should I .... ?
5 I'd like ....
6 Do you have .... ?
7 You should ....
8 I want ....
9 I might ....
10 Could you .... ?

49.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the box. Sometimes you need the base form (**work**/**go**, etc.) and sometimes you need **-ing** (**working**/**going**, etc.).

do/doing	**get/getting**	~~**sleep/sleeping**~~	**watch/watching**
eat/eating	**go/going**	**stay/staying**	**wear/wearing**
fly/flying	**listen/listening**	**wait/waiting**	~~**work/working**~~

1 Please be quiet. I'm *working* .
2 I feel tired today. I didn't *sleep* very well last night.
3 What time do you usually .... up in the morning?
4 "Where are you .... ?" "To the office."
5 Did you .... TV last night?
6 Look at that plane! It's .... very low.
7 You can turn off the music. I'm not .... to it.
8 They didn't .... anything because they weren't hungry.
9 My friends were .... for me when I arrived.
10 "Does Susan always .... glasses?" "No, only for reading."
11 "What are you .... tonight?" "I'm .... home."

49.3 Put the verb in the correct form. Choose from:

base form (**work**/**go**, etc.) or
to + base form (**to work**/**to go**, etc.) or
-ing (**working**/**going**, etc.)

1 Should I *open* the window? (open)
2 It's late. I have *to go* now. (go)
3 Amanda isn't *working* this week. She's on vacation. (work)
4 I'm tired. I don't want .... out. (go)
5 It might ...., so take an umbrella with you. (rain)
6 What time do you have .... tomorrow morning? (leave)
7 I'm sorry I can't .... you. (help)
8 My brother is a student. He's .... physics. (study)
9 Would you like .... on a trip around the world? (go)
10 When you saw Maria, what was she .... ? (wear)
11 When you go to London, where are you going .... ? (stay)
12 "Where's Josh?" "He's .... a bath." (take)
13 I used .... a car, but I sold it last year. (have)
14 He spoke very quietly. I couldn't .... him. (hear)
15 You don't look well. I don't think you should .... to work today. (go)
16 I don't know what he said. I wasn't .... to him. (listen)
17 I missed the bus and had .... home. (walk)
18 I want .... what happened. Please tell me. (know)
19 May I .... this book? (borrow)
20 Medical students must .... courses in biology and chemistry. (take)

Unit 50

to . . . (I want to do) and -ing (I enjoy doing)

A

verbs + **to** . . . (**I want to do**)

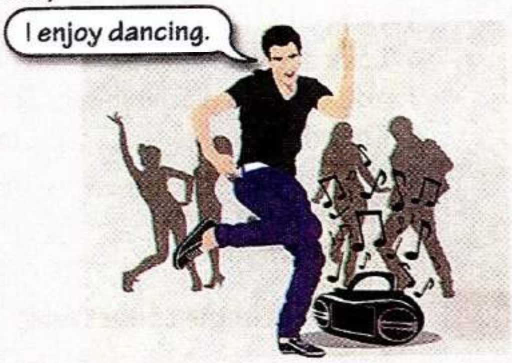
want	**plan**	**decide**	**try**	
hope	**expect**	**offer**	**forget**	+ **to** . . . (**to do** / **to work** / **to be**, etc.)
need	**promise**	**refuse**	**learn**	

- What do you **want to do** tonight?
- It's not very late. We don't **need to go** home yet.
- Rachel **decided to sell** her car.
- You **forgot to turn** off the light when you went out.
- My brother is **learning to drive**.
- I **tried to read** my book, but I was too tired.

B

verbs + **-ing** (**I enjoy doing**)

enjoy	**stop**	**suggest**	+ **-ing** (**doing/working/being**, etc.)
mind	**finish**		



- I **enjoy dancing**. (*not* enjoy to dance)
- I don't **mind getting** up early.
- Did it **stop raining**?
- Tara **suggested going** to the movies.

C

verbs + **-ing** *or* **to** . . .

like	**love**	**start**	**continue**	+ **-ing** (**doing**, etc.) *or* **to** . . . (**to do**, etc.)
prefer	**hate**	**begin**		

- Do you **like getting** up early? *or* Do you **like to get** up early?
- I **prefer traveling** by car. *or* I **prefer to travel** by car.
- Anna **loves dancing**. *or* Anna **loves to dance**.
- I **hate being** late. *or* I **hate to be** late.
- It **started raining**. *or* It **started to rain**.

D

would like to . . . , etc.

would like	**would** love	+ **to** . . . (**to do** / **to work** / **to be**, etc.)
would prefer	**would** hate	

- Julia **would like to meet** you.
- **I'd love to go** to Australia. (I**'d** = I **would**)
- "**Would** you **like to sit** down?" "No, I**'d prefer to stand,** thank you."
- I like this apartment. I **wouldn't like to move**.
- I live in a small town. **I'd hate to live** in a big city.

would like → **Unit 32** **I want you to** . . . → **Unit 51** **go** + **-ing** → **Unit 53** preposition + **-ing** → **Unit 110**

Exercises

50.1 Put the verb in the right form, **to . . .** or **-ing**.

1. I enjoy *dancing* . (dance)
2. What do you want *to do* tonight? (do)
3. Goodbye! I hope .... you again soon. (see)
4. I learned .... when I was five years old. (swim)
5. Did you finish .... the kitchen? (clean)
6. Where's Anna? I need .... her something. (ask)
7. Do you enjoy .... other countries? (visit)
8. The weather was nice, so I suggested .... for a walk by the river. (go)
9. Where's Bill? He promised .... here on time. (be)
10. I'm not in a hurry. I don't mind .... (wait)
11. What did you decide ....? (do)
12. Josh was very angry and refused .... to me. (speak)
13. I'm tired. I want .... to bed. (go)
14. I was very upset and started .... (cry)
15. I'm trying .... (work) Please stop .... (talk)

50.2 Complete the sentences using **to . . .** or **-ing**. Use these verbs:

~~go~~ **go** **help** **lose** **rain** **read** **see** **send** **wait** **watch**

1. "Have you ever been to Australia?" "No, but I'd love *to go* ."
2. Liz had a lot to do, so I offered .... her.
3. I'm surprised that you're here. I didn't expect .... you.
4. Nicole has a lot of books. She enjoys ....
5. This ring was my grandmother's. I'd hate .... it.
6. Don't forget .... us a postcard when you're on vacation.
7. I'm not going out until it stops ....
8. What should we do this afternoon? Would you like .... to the beach?
9. When I'm tired in the evening, I like .... TV.
10. "Do you want to go now?" "No, I'd prefer .... a few minutes."

50.3 Complete the answers to the questions.

1	Do you usually get up early?	Yes, I like *to get up early* .
2	Do you ever go to museums?	Yes, I love ....
3	Would you like to go to a museum now?	No, I'm hungry. I'd prefer .... to a restaurant.
4	Do you drive a lot?	No, I don't like ....
5	Have you ever been to Rome?	No, but I'd love .... one day.
6	Do you ever travel by train?	Yes, I enjoy ....
7	Do you want to walk home or take a taxi?	I don't mind ...., but a taxi would be quicker.

50.4 Complete these sentences. Write about yourself. Use **to . . .** or **-ing**.

1. I enjoy ....
2. I don't like ....
3. If it's a nice day tomorrow, I'd like ....
4. When I'm on vacation, I like ....
5. I don't mind ...., but ....
6. I wouldn't like ....

→ Additional exercise 32 (page 254)

I want you to . . . I told you to . . .

A

I want you to . . .

The woman **wants to leave**.

The man **doesn't want** the woman **to leave.** He **wants** her **to stay.**

We say:

I want	**you** **somebody** **Sarah**	**to do** something

- I **want you to be** happy. (*not* I want that you are happy)
- They didn't **want anybody to know** their secret.
- Do you **want me to lend** you some money.

We use **would like** in the same way:

- **Would** you **like me to lend** you some money?

B

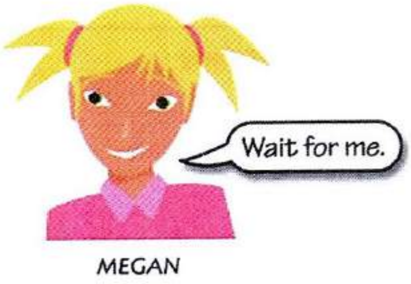
We also use this structure (*verb* + somebody + **to** . . .) with:

ask
tell
advise
expect
persuade
teach

	verb +	somebody + **to** . . .		
Sue	**asked**	a friend	**to lend**	her some money.
I	**told**	you	**to be**	careful.
What do you	**advise**	me	**to do**?	
I didn't	**expect**	them	**to be**	here.
We	**persuaded**	Chris	**to come**	with us.
I	**am teaching**	my brother	**to swim**.	

C

I told you **to** . . . / **I told** you **not to** . . .



Megan **told** me **to wait** for her.

Nick **told** Sue **not to wait** for him.

D

make and **let**

After **make** and **let**, we do *not* use **to**:

- He's very funny. He **makes** me **laugh**. (*not* makes me to laugh)
- At school our teacher **made** us **work** very hard.
- I didn't have my phone with me, so Sue **let** me **use** hers. (*not* let me to use)

You can say **Let's** . . . (= **Let us**) when you want people to do things with you:

- Come on! **Let's dance**.
- Do you want to go out tonight?" "No, I'm tired. **Let's stay** home."

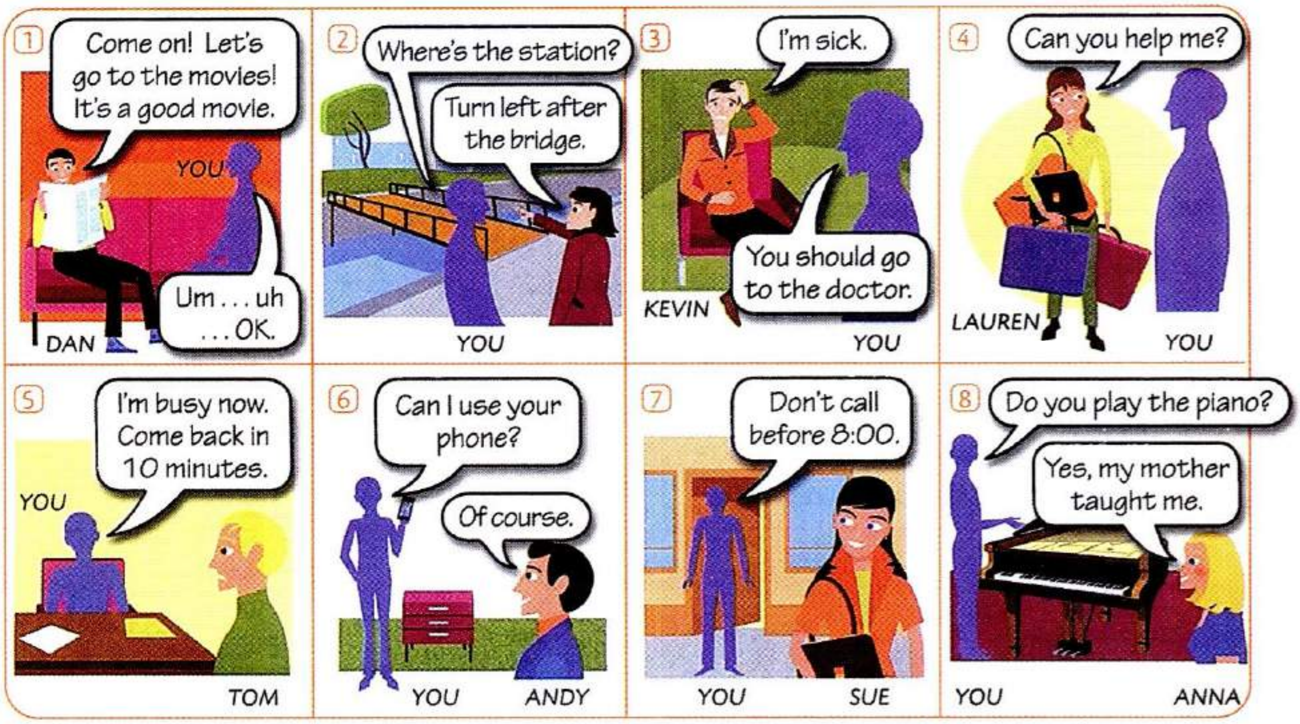
Let's . . . ➜ **Unit 34** **He told me that** . . . ➜ **Unit 48**

Exercises

51.1 Write sentences beginning **I want you . . . / I don't want you . . . / Do you want me . . . ?**

1 (come with me) — *I want you to come with me.*
2 (listen carefully) — I want ....
3 (please don't be angry) — I don't ....
4 (should I wait for you?) — Do you ....
5 (don't call me tonight) — ....
6 (you should meet Sarah) — ....

51.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



1 Dan persuaded *me to go to the movies.*
2 I wanted to get to the station. A woman told ....
3 Kevin was sick. I advised ....
4 Lauren had a lot of luggage. She asked ....
5 I was too busy to talk to Tom. I told ....
6 I wanted to make a phone call. Andy let ....
7 Sue is going to call me later. I told ....
8 Anna's mother taught ....

51.3 **Complete these sentences with the verbs in the list. Sometimes to is necessary (to go / to wait, etc.); sometimes to is not necessary (go/wait, etc.).**

arrive borrow get go ~~leave~~ make repeat tell think wait

1 Please stay here. I don't want you *to leave* yet.
2 I didn't hear what she said, so I asked her .... it.
3 "Should we begin?" "No, let's .... a few minutes."
4 Are they already here? I expected them .... much later.
5 Kevin's parents didn't want him .... married.
6 I want to stay here. You can't make me .... with you.
7 "Is that your bike?" "No, it's John's. He let me .... it."
8 Rachel can't come to the party. She told me .... you.
9 Would you like something to drink? Would you like me .... some coffee?
10 "Kate doesn't like me." "What makes you .... that?"

I went to the store to . . .

A

Sofia wanted some fruit, so she went to the store.

Why did she go to the store? **To get** some fruit.

She went to the store **to get** some fruit.

to . . . (**to get** / **to see**, etc.) tells us *why* a person does something:

- "Why are you going out?" "**To buy** some bread."
- Amy went to the station **to meet** her friend.
- Sue turned on the TV **to watch** the news.
- I'd like to go to Mexico **to learn** Spanish.

money/time to (do something):

- We need some **money to buy** food.
- I don't have **time to watch** TV.

B

to . . . and **for** . . .

to + *verb* (**to get** / **to see**, etc.)	**for** + *noun* (**for food** / **for a newspaper**, etc.)
I went to the store **to get** some fruit. (*not* for get)	I went to the store **for some fruit**.
They're going to Brazil **to see** their friends.	They're going to Brazil **for a vacation**.
We need some money **to buy** food.	We need some money **for food**.

C

wait for . . . :

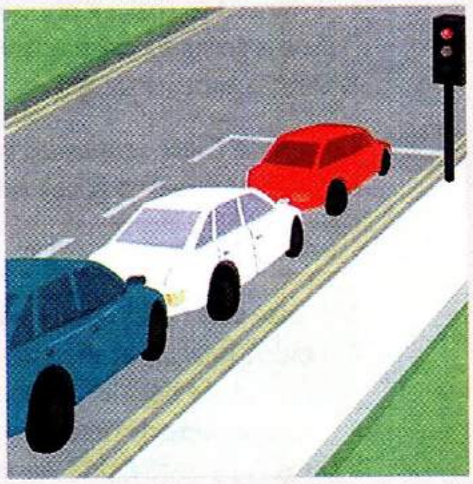
- Please **wait for** me.
- Are you **waiting for** the bus?

wait to (do something):

- I'm **waiting to talk** to the manager.
- Are you **waiting to see** the doctor?

wait for (somebody/something) **to** . . . :

- The light is red. You have to **wait for it to change**.
- Are you **waiting for the doctor to come**?



They're **waiting for the light to change**.

go to . . . and go for . . . → Unit 53 something to eat / nothing to do, etc. → Unit 77
enough + to/for . . . → Unit 89 too + to/for . . . → Unit 90

Exercises

25.1 Write sentences beginning **I went to . . . .** Choose from the boxes.

a coffee shop	~~**the post office**~~	+	**buy some food**	**get some medicine**
the drugstore	**the supermarket**		**meet a friend**	~~**mail a package**~~

1 I went to the post office to mail a package.
2 I went ....
3 ....
4 ....

25.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

to get some fresh air	**to read the newspaper**	**to wake him up**
to open this door	**to see who it was**	~~**to watch the news**~~

1 I turned on the TV to watch the news.
2 Rachel sat down in an armchair ....
3 Do I need a key ....?
4 I went for a walk by the river ....
5 I knocked on the door of David's room ....
6 The doorbell rang, so I looked out the window ....

25.3 Use your own ideas to finish these sentences. Use **to . . . .**

1 I went to the store to get some fruit.
2 I'm very busy. I don't have time ....
3 I called Anna ....
4 I'm going out ....
5 I borrowed some money ....

25.4 Write **to** or **for**.

1 I went to the store to get some bread.
2 We went to a restaurant .... have dinner.
3 Robert wants to go to college .... study economics.
4 I'm going to Boston .... an interview next week.
5 I'm going to Toronto .... visit some friends of mine.
6 Do you have time .... a cup of coffee?
7 I got up late this morning. I didn't have time .... comb my hair.
8 Everybody needs money .... live.
9 We didn't have any money .... a taxi, so we walked home.
10 The office is very small. There's only enough room .... a desk and chair.
11 A: Excuse me, are you waiting .... use the photocopier?
B: No, I'm finished, thanks.

25.5 Complete these sentences. Choose from:

it / to arrive **you / tell me** ~~**it / to change**~~ **the movie / begin**

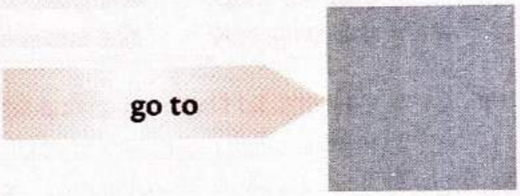
1 We stopped at the light and waited for it to change.
2 I sat down in the movie theater and waited ....
3 We called an ambulance and waited ....
4 "Do you know what to do?" "No, I'm waiting ...."

go to . . . go on . . . go for . . . go -ing

A

go to . . . (**go to work** / **go to San Francisco** / **go to a concert**, etc.)

- What time do you usually **go to work**?
- I'm **going to China** next week.
- Emma didn't want to **go to the concert**.
- What time did you **go to bed** last night?
- I **went to the dentist** yesterday.



go to sleep = start to sleep:

- I was very tired and **went to sleep** early.

go home (without **to**)

- I'm **going home** now. (*not* going to home)

B

go on . . .

go on	vacation a trip a tour a cruise strike

- We're **going on vacation** next week.
- Children often **go on school trips**.
- When we were in Egypt, we **went on a tour** of the Pyramids.
- Workers at the airport **went on strike**. (= they refused to work)

C

go for . . .

go (somewhere) **for**	a walk a run a swim lunch dinner, etc.

- "Where's Anna?" "She **went for a walk**."
- Do you **go for a run** every morning?
- The water looks nice. I'm **going for a swim**.
- Should we **go** out **for dinner**? I know a good restaurant.

D

go + -ing

We use **go + -ing** for many sports (**swimming**/**skiing**, etc.) and also **shopping**.

I **go** he is **going** we **went** they have **gone** she wants to **go**	**shopping** **swimming** **fishing** **sailing** **skiing** **jogging** **running**, etc.

- Are you **going shopping** this afternoon?
- It's a nice day. Let's **go swimming**. (*or* Let's **go for a** swim.)
- Richard has a small boat, and he often **goes sailing**.
- I **went running** before breakfast this morning.

مرجع آموزش زبان ایرانیان
irLanguage.com

Exercises

53.1 Write **to/on/for** where necessary.

1 I'm going ...to... China next week.
2 James often goes ...–... sailing. *(no preposition)*
3 Sue went .... Mexico last year.
4 Jack goes .... running every morning.
5 I'm going out .... a walk. Do you want to come?
6 I'm tired because I went .... bed very late last night.
7 Ryan is going .... a trip .... Turkey next week.
8 The weather was warm, and the river was clean, so we went .... a swim.
9 The taxi drivers went .... strike when I was in New York.
10 Let's go .... the movies tonight.
11 It's late. I have to go .... home now.
12 Would you like to go .... a tour of the city?
13 Do you want to go out .... dinner this evening?
14 My parents are going .... a cruise this summer.

53.2 Use the pictures to complete the sentences. Use **go/goes/going/went + -ing**.

1 James has a boat. He often ...goes sailing... .
2 Last Saturday Megan ....
3 Josh .... every day.
4 Nicole is going to Colorado next winter. She is ....
5 John is going out later. He has to ....
6 Sarah .... after work yesterday.

53.3 Complete the sentences. Use the words in the box. Use **to/on/for** if necessary.

~~a swim~~	vacation	Hawaii	shopping	bed
a walk	home	riding	skiing	college

1 The water looks nice. Let's go ...for a swim... .
2 After finishing high school, Emma went ...., where she studied psychology.
3 I'm going .... now. I have to buy a few things.
4 I was very tired last night. I went .... early.
5 I wasn't enjoying the party, so I went .... early.
6 We live near the mountains. In the winter we go .... almost every weekend.
7 Tony has a horse. He goes .... a lot.
8 It's a beautiful day! Would you like to go .... in the park?
9 A: Are you going .... soon?
B: Yes, next month. We're going .... We've never been there before.

Unit 54 get

www.irLanguage.com

A

get + *noun* = receive/buy/find, etc.

you **don't have** something → you **get** it → you **have** it

- I **got** an email from Sam this morning. (= receive)
- I like your sweater. Where did you **get** it? (= buy)
- Is it hard to **get** a job at the moment? (= find)
- "Is Liz here?" "Yes. I'll **get** her for you."

B

get hungry / get cold / get tired, etc. (**get** + *adjective*) = become:

you**'re not hungry** → you **get hungry** → you **are hungry**

- If you don't eat, you **get hungry**.
- Drink your coffee. It**'s getting cold**.
- I'm sorry your mother is sick. I hope she **gets better** soon.
- It was raining very hard. We didn't have an umbrella, so we **got** very **wet**.

also **get married**
get dressed (= put your clothes on)
get lost (= lose your way)

- Nicole and David are **getting married** soon.
- I got up and **got dressed** quickly.
- We didn't have a map, so we **got lost**.

C

get to a place = arrive:

- I usually **get to work** before 8:30. (= arrive at work)
- We left Boston at 10:15 and **got to Ottawa** at 11:45.

get here/there (without **to**):

- How did you **get here**? By bus?

get home (without **to**):

- What time did you **get home** last night?

D

get in/out/on/off

get in (a car)

get out (**of** a car)

get on

get off

(a bus / a train / a plane)

- Kate **got in the car** and drove away. (You can also say: Kate got **into** the car and . . .)
- A car stopped and a man **got out**. (*but* A man got out **of the car**.)
- We **got on the bus** outside the hotel and **got off** at Church Street.

get to → Unit 106 in/out/on/off → Units 108, 112 get up → Unit 112

Exercises

54.1 Complete these sentences. Use **get/gets** and choose from the box.

a doctor	a lot of rain	another one	~~my email~~	the job
a good salary	a new computer	a ticket	some milk	your boots

1 Did you *get my email* ? I sent it a week ago.
2 Where did you .... ? They're really nice.
3 Quick! This man is sick. We have to ....
4 I want to return this phone. It doesn't work. Can I .... , please?
5 Tom has an interview tomorrow. I hope he ....
6 When you go out, can you .... ?
7 "Are you going to the concert?" "Yes, if I can ...."
8 Hannah has a well-paid job. She ....
9 The weather is horrible here in the winter. We ....
10 I'm going to .... The one I have is too slow.

54.2 Complete these sentences. Use **getting** + these words:

~~cold~~	dark	late	married	ready

1 Drink your coffee. It's *getting cold* .
2 Turn on the light. It's ....
3 "I'm .... next week." "Really? Congratulations!"
4 "Where's Karen?" "She's .... to go out."
5 It's .... It's time to go home.

54.3 Complete the sentences. Use **get/gets/got** + these words:

angry	better	~~hungry~~	lost	married	old	wet

1 If you don't eat, you *get hungry* .
2 Don't go out in the rain. You'll ....
3 My brother .... last year. His wife's name is Sarah.
4 Dan is always very calm. He never ....
5 We tried to find the hotel, but we ....
6 Everybody wants to stay young, but we all ....
7 Yesterday the weather wasn't so good at first, but it .... during the day.

54.4 Write sentences with **I left . . .** and **got to . . . .**

1 home / 7:30 → work / 8:15
I left home at 7:30 and got to work at 8:15.
2 Toronto / 10:15 → New York / 12:00
I left Toronto at 10:15 and ....
3 the party / 11:15 → home / midnight
....
4 *Write a sentence about yourself.*
I left ....

54.5 Write **got in / got out of / got on / got off**.

1 Kate *got in* the car and drove away.
2 I .... the bus and walked to my house from the bus stop.
3 Olivia .... the car, locked the doors, and went into a store.
4 I made a stupid mistake. I .... the wrong train.

do and make

A

Do is a general word for actions:

- What are you **doing** tonight? (*not* What are you making?)
- "Should I open the window?" "No, it's OK. I'll **do** it."
- Emma's job is very boring. She **does** the same thing every day.
- I **did** a lot of things yesterday.

What do you do? = What's your job?:

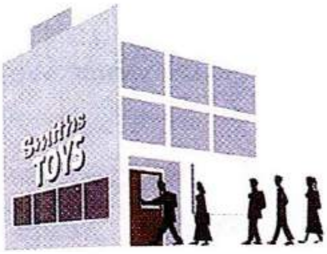
- "What do you **do**?" "I work in a bank."

B

make = produce/create. For example:

She's **making** coffee.

He **made** a cake.



They **make** toys.

It was **made** in China.

Compare **do** and **make**:

- I **did** a lot yesterday. I **cleaned** my room, I **wrote** some letters, and I **made** a cake.
- A: What do you **do** in your free time? Read? Play sports?
  B: I **make** clothes. I **make** dresses and jackets. I also **make** toys for my children.

C

Expressions with **do**

do	homework housework (somebody) a favor an exercise (your) best

- Did the children **do their homework**?
- I hate **doing housework**, especially cleaning.
- Nicole, could you **do me a favor**?
- I have to **do four exercises** for homework tonight.
- I **did my best**, but I didn't win the race.

also **do the laundry / do the dishes / do the grocery shopping**

- I **did the laundry**, but I didn't **do the grocery shopping**.
- I cooked, so you should **do the dishes**.

D

Expressions with **make**

make	a mistake an appointment a phone call a list (a) noise a bed

- I'm sorry. I **made a mistake**.
- I need to **make an appointment** to see the doctor.
- Excuse me, I have to **make a phone call**.
- Did you **make a shopping list**?
- It's late. Don't **make any noise**.
- Sometimes I forget to **make my bed** in the morning.

We say **make a movie** *but* **take a picture / take a photo**:

- When was **this movie made**?

but When was **this picture taken**?

do/does/did (negatives and questions) → **Units 43–44** **make** somebody **do** something → **Unit 51**

Exercises

55.1 Write **make/making/made** or **do/doing/did/done**.

1 "Should I open the window?" "No, that's OK. I'll ...do... it."
2 What did you .... last weekend? Did you leave town?
3 Do you know how to .... bread?
4 Paper is .... from wood.
5 Kyle didn't help me. He sat in an armchair and .... nothing.
6 "What do you .... ?" "I'm a doctor."
7 I asked you to clean the bathroom. Did you .... it?
8 "What do they .... in that factory?" "Shoes."
9 I'm .... some coffee. Would you like some?
10 Why are you angry with me? I didn't .... anything wrong.
11 "What are you .... tomorrow afternoon?" "I'm working."

55.2 What are these people doing?

1 ...He's making a cake.... 6 ....
2 They .... 7 ....
3 He .... 8 ....
4 .... 9 ....
5 .... 10 ....

55.3 Write **make** or **do** in the correct form.

1 I hate ...doing... housework, especially cleaning.
2 Why do you always .... the same mistake?
3 "Can you .... me a favor?" "It depends what it is."
4 "Did you .... your homework?" "Not yet."
5 I need to see the dentist, but I haven't .... an appointment.
6 Joe .... his best, but he didn't pass his driver's test.
7 I painted the door, but I didn't .... it very well.
8 How many phone calls did you .... yesterday?
9 When you finish Exercise 1, you can .... Exercise 2.
10 There's something wrong with the car. The engine is .... a strange noise.
11 It was a bad mistake. It was the worst mistake I've ever ....
12 Let's .... a list of all the things we have to .... today.

www.irLanguage.com

Unit 56 have

A have and have got

I have (something) or **I've got** (something) = it is mine:

- I **have** a new car. *or* **I've got** a new car.
- Sue **has** long hair. *or* Sue **has got** long hair.
- **Do** they **have** any children? *or* **Have** they **got** any children?
- Tom **doesn't have** a job. *or* Tom **hasn't got** a job.
- How much time **do** you **have**? *or* How much time **have** you **got**?

also

I **have** / I**'ve got**	a headache / a toothache / a pain (in my leg, etc.) a cold / a cough / a sore throat / a fever / the flu, etc.

- I **have** a headache. *or* I**'ve got** a headache.
- **Do** you **have** a cold? *or* **Have** you **got** a cold?

The past is **I had** (without **got**) / **I didn't have** / **Did you have**?, etc. :

- When I first met Sue, she **had** short hair.
- He **didn't have** any money because he **didn't have** a job.
- **Did** you **have** enough time to do everything you wanted to do?

B have breakfast / have a good time, etc.

In these expressions **have** = eat or drink. You can't use "have got."

have	breakfast / lunch / dinner a meal / a sandwich / (a) pizza, etc. a cup of coffee / a glass of milk, etc. something to eat/drink

- Where's Liz?" "She**'s having** lunch."
- I **don't** usually **have** breakfast.
- I **had** three cups of coffee this morning.
- "**Have** a cookie." "Oh, thank you."

We also use **have** (*not* have got) in these expressions:

have	a party / a meeting a nice time / a good trip / fun, etc. a (nice) day / a (nice) weekend a (great) vacation a (good) flight / a safe trip a dream / an accident an argument / a discussion a baby

- We**'re having** a party next week. Please come.
- Enjoy your vacation. **Have** a good trip!
- **I'm having** a bad day. Everything is going wrong. I hope I **have** a better day tomorrow.
- Did you **have** a good flight?
- Alex **had** an accident on his first day in Rome.
- Can we **have** a discussion about my pay?
- Nicole just **had** a baby. It's a boy.

C

Compare:

have got *or* **have**

- **I've got** / I **have** three cups of coffee for this office.

have (*not* **have got**)

- I **have** coffee with my breakfast every morning. (*not* I**'ve got** coffee every morning)
- A: Where's Sam?
  B: He's on break. He**'s having** a cup of coffee. (= he's drinking it now)

I have / I've got → Unit 9 **I've (done)** (present perfect) **→ Units 16–19** **I have to . . . → Unit 31**

Exercises

56.1 Write the correct form of **have** or **have got**.

1 ...I didn't have... time to do the shopping yesterday. (I / not / have)
2 "...Does Anna have... **or** ...Has Anna got... a car?" "No, she can't drive." (Anna / have?)
3 He can't open the door. .... a key. (he / not / have)
4 .... a cold last week. He's better now. (Ben / have)
5 What's wrong? .... a headache? (you / have?)
6 We wanted to go by taxi, but .... enough money. (we / not / have)
7 Liz is very busy. .... much free time. (she / not / have)
8 .... any problems when you were on vacation? (you / have?)

56.2 What are these people doing? Choose from the list:

an argument	**breakfast**	**a cup of tea**	**dinner**	**fun**	~~**a party**~~

1 ...They're having a party....
2 She ....
3 He ....
4 They ....
5 ....
6 ....

56.3 What do you say in these situations? Use **have**.

1 Julia is going on vacation. What do you say to her before she goes?
...Have a nice vacation!...
2 You meet Kate at the airport. She has just gotten off her plane. Ask her about the flight.
...Did you have a good flight?...
3 Tom is going on a long trip. What do you say to him before he leaves?
....
4 It's Monday morning. You are at work. Ask Mariana about her weekend.
....
5 Nate just came back from vacation. Ask him about his vacation.
....
6 Rachel is going out tonight. What do you say to her before she goes?
....
7 It's Sue's birthday soon. You like parties. What do you ask Sue?
.... party?

56.4 Complete the sentences. Use **have/had** and choose from the list.

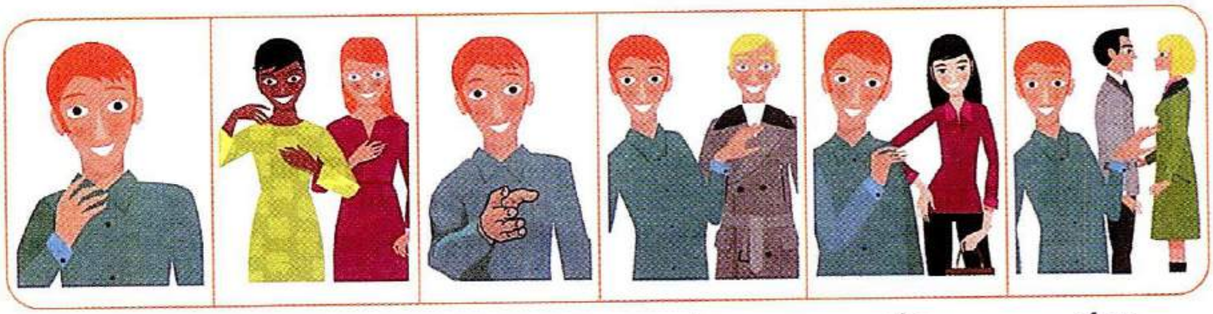
an accident	**a glass of water**	**a baby**	**a bad dream**	~~**a party**~~	**something to eat**

1 We ...had a party... a few weeks ago. We invited 50 people.
2 "Should we ....?" "No, I'm not hungry."
3 I was thirsty, so I ....
4 I .... last night. It woke me up.
5 Emily is a very good driver. She has never ....
6 Rachel is going to .... It will be her first child.

I/me he/him they/them, etc.

A

People



subject	**I**	**we**	**you**	**he**	**she**	**they**
object	**me**	**us**	**you**	**him**	**her**	**them**

subject			*object*
I	**I** know Tom.	Tom knows **me**.	**me**
we	**We** know Tom.	Tom knows **us**.	**us**
you	**You** know Tom.	Tom knows **you**.	**you**
he	**He** knows Tom.	Tom knows **him**.	**him**
she	**She** knows Tom.	Tom knows **her**.	**her**
they	**They** know Tom.	Tom knows **them**.	**them**

B

Things

subject	**it**	**they**
object	**it**	**them**

- I don't want **this book**. You can have **it**.
- I don't want **these books**. You can have **them**.
- Hannah never drinks **milk**. She doesn't like **it**.
- I never go to **parties**. I don't like **them**.

C

We use **me/her/them**, etc. (object) after a *preposition* (**for/to/with**, etc.):

- This letter isn't **for me**. It's **for you**.
- Who is that woman? Why are you looking **at her**?
- We're going to the movies. Do you want to come **with us**?
- Sue and Kevin are going to the movies. Do you want to go **with them**?
- "Where's the newspaper?" "You're sitting **on it**."

give it/them to . . . :

- I want that book. Please give **it to me**.
- Robert needs these books. Can you give **them to him**, please?

مرجع آموزش زبان ایرانیان
irLanguage.com

my/his/their, etc. → **Unit 58** **Give me that book / Give it to me** → **Unit 94**

Exercises

57.1 Complete the sentences with **him/her/them.**

1 I don't know those girls. Do you know *them* ?
2 I don't know that man. Do you know .... ?
3 I don't know those people. Do you know .... ?
4 I don't know David's wife. Do you know .... ?
5 I don't know Mr. Stevens. Do you know .... ?
6 I don't know Sarah's parents. Do you know .... ?
7 I don't know the woman in the black coat. Do you know .... ?

57.2 Complete the sentences. Use **I/me/you/she/her,** etc.

1 **I** want to see **her**, but *she* doesn't want to see *me* .
2 **They** want to see **me**, but .... don't want to see ....
3 **She** wants to see **him**, but .... doesn't want to see ....
4 **We** want to see **them**, but .... don't want to see ....
5 **He** wants to see **us**, but .... don't want to see ....
6 **They** want to see **her**, but .... doesn't want to see ....
7 **I** want to see **them**, but .... don't want to see ....
8 **You** want to see **her**, but .... doesn't want to see ....

57.3 Write sentences beginning **I like . . . , I don't like . . . ,** or **Do you like . . . ?**

1 I don't eat tomatoes. *I don't like them* .
2 George is a very nice man. I like ....
3 This jacket isn't very nice. I don't ....
4 This is my new car. Do .... ?
5 Mrs. Clark is not very friendly. I ....
6 These are my new shoes. .... ?

57.4 Complete the sentences. Use **I/me/he/him,** etc.

1 Who is that woman? Why are you looking at *her* ?
2 "Do you know that man?" "Yes, I work with ...."
3 Where are the tickets? I can't find ....
4 I can't find my keys. Where are .... ?
5 We're going out. You can come with ....
6 I have a new motorcycle. Do you want to see .... ?
7 Maria likes music. .... plays the piano.
8 I don't like dogs. I'm scared of ....
9 I'm talking to you. Please listen to ....
10 Where is Anna? I want to talk to ....
11 You can have these DVDs. I don't want ....
12 My brother has a new job, but .... doesn't like .... very much.

57.5 Complete the sentences.

1 I need that book. Can you *give it to me* ?
2 He wants the key. Can you give .... ?
3 She wants the keys. Can you .... ?
4 I need my bag. Can you .... ?
5 They want the money. Can you .... ?
6 We want the photos. Can you .... ?

my/his/their, etc.

A

I	→	**my**
we	→	**our**
you	→	**your**
he	→	**his**
she	→	**her**
they	→	**their**

I	like	**my**	house.
We	like	**our**	house.
You	like	**your**	house.
He	likes	**his**	house.
She	likes	**her**	house.
They	like	**their**	house.

it	→	**its**

Hawaii (= **it**) is famous for **its** beaches.

We use **my**/**your**/**his**, etc. + *noun*:

my hands	**his** new **car**	**her parents**
our clothes	**your** best **friend**	**their room**

B

his/her/their

AMY

her car (= Amy's car)

her husband (= Amy's husband)

her children (= Amy's children)

ANDY

his bike

his sister

his parents

MR. AND MRS. LEE

their son

their daughter

their children

C

its and **it's**

its	Hawaii is famous for **its** beaches.
it's (= it **is**)	I like Hawaii. **It's** a beautiful place. (= It **is** a beautiful place.)

mine/yours, etc. → **Unit 59** **I/me/my/mine** → **Unit 60**

Exercises

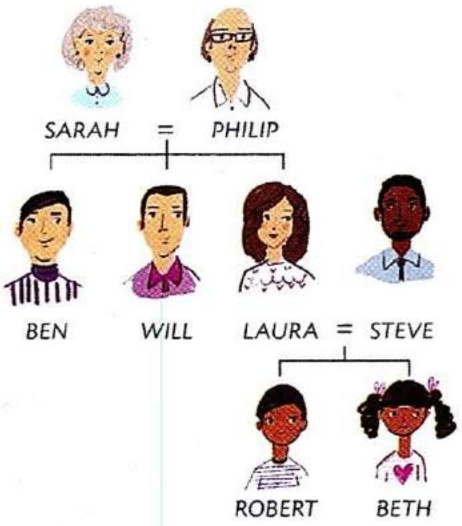
58.1 Complete the sentences in the same way.

1 I'm going to wash ...*my hands*... .
2 She's going to wash .... hands.
3 We're going to wash ....
4 He's going to wash ....
5 They're going to wash ....
6 Are you going to wash .... ?

58.2 Complete the sentences in the same way.

1 He ...*lives with his parents*... .
2 They live with .... parents.
3 We .... parents.
4 Sarah lives ....
5 I .... parents.
6 John ....
7 Do you live .... ?
8 Most children ....

58.3 Look at the family tree, and complete the sentences with **his**/**her**/**their**.



1 I saw Sarah with ...*her*... husband, Philip.
2 I saw Laura and Steve with .... children.
3 I saw Steve with .... wife, Laura.
4 I saw Ben with .... brother, Will.
5 I saw Laura with .... brother, Will.
6 I saw Sarah and Philip with .... son, Will.
7 I saw Laura with .... parents.
8 I saw Beth and Robert with .... parents.

58.4 Write **my**/**our**/**your**/**his**/**her**/**their**/**its**.

1 Do you like ...*your*... job?
2 I know Mr. Watson, but I don't know .... wife.
3 Alice and Tom live in San Francisco. .... son lives in Mexico.
4 We're going to have a party. We're going to invite all .... friends.
5 Anna is going out with .... friends tonight.
6 I like tennis. It's .... favorite sport.
7 "Is that .... car?" "No, I don't have a car."
8 I want to call Maria. Do you know .... number?
9 Do you think most people are happy with .... jobs?
10 I'm going to wash .... hair before I go out.
11 This is a beautiful tree. .... leaves are a beautiful color.
12 John has a brother and a sister. .... brother is 25, and .... sister is 21.

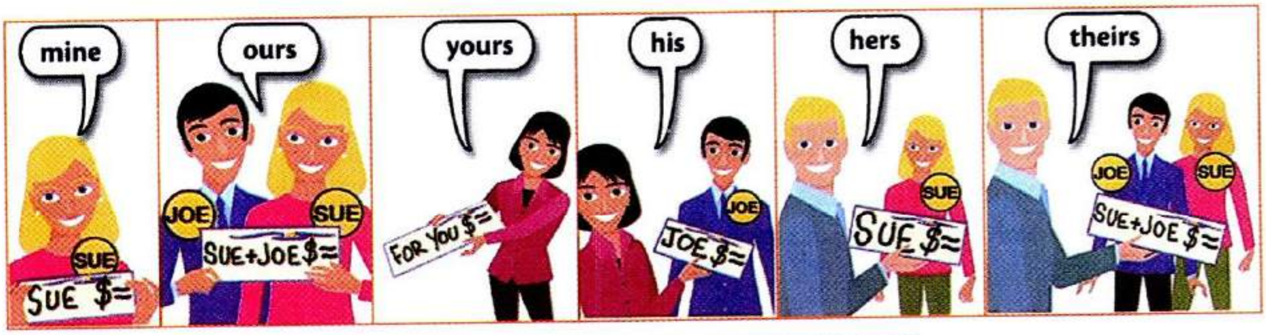
58.5 Complete the sentences. Use **my**/**his**/**their**, etc. with these words:

coat **homework** **house** **husband** ~~**job**~~ **key** **name**

1 Jim doesn't like ...*his job*... . It's not very interesting.
2 I can't get in. I don't have ....
3 Sally is married. .... works in a bank.
4 Please take off .... and sit down.
5 "What are the children doing?" "They're doing ...."
6 "Do you know that man?" "Yes, but I don't know ...."
7 We live on Main Street. .... is on the corner of Main and First.

Unit 59 Whose is this? It's mine/yours/hers, etc.

A



I	→	**my**	→	**mine**
we	→	**our**	→	**ours**
you	→	**your**	→	**yours**
he	→	**his**	→	**his**
she	→	**her**	→	**hers**
they	→	**their**	→	**theirs**

It's **my** money.	It's **mine**.
It's **our** money.	It's **ours**.
It's **your** money.	It's **yours**.
It's **his** money.	It's **his**.
It's **her** money.	It's **hers**.
It's **their** money.	It's **theirs**.

B

We use **my/your**, etc., + *noun* (**my hands** / **your book**, etc.):

- **My hands** are cold.
- Is this **your book**?
- Emily gave me **her umbrella**.
- It's **their problem**, not **our problem**.

We use **mine/yours**, etc., without a noun:

- Is this book **mine** or **yours**? (= my book or your book)
- I didn't have an umbrella, so Emily gave me **hers**. (= her umbrella)
- It's their problem, not **ours**. (= not our problem)
- We went in our car, and they went in **theirs**. (= their car)

You can use **his** with or without a noun:

- "Is this **his camera** or **hers**?" "It's **his**."

C

A friend **of mine** / a friend **of his** / some friends **of yours**, etc.

- I went to the movies with a friend **of mine**. (*not* a friend of me)
- Tom was in the restaurant with a friend **of his**. (*not* a friend of him)
- Are those people friends **of yours**? (*not* friends of you)

D

Whose . . . ?

- **Whose phone** is this? (= Is it your phone? his phone? my phone?, etc.)

You can use **whose** with or without a noun:

- **Whose money** is this? / **Whose** is this? } It's mine.
- **Whose shoes** are these? / **Whose** are these? } They're John's.

my/his/their, etc. → **Unit 58** **I/me/my/mine** → **Unit 60** **Kate's** camera / **my brother's** car → **Unit 62**

Exercises

59.1 **Complete the sentences with mine/yours, etc.**

1 It's your money. It's ....yours.... .
2 It's my bag. It's ....
3 It's our car. It's ....
4 They're her shoes. They're ....
5 It's their house. It's ....
6 They're your books. They're ....
7 They're my glasses. They're ....
8 It's his coat. It's ....

59.2 **Choose the right word.**

1 It's their/~~theirs~~ problem, not ~~our~~ / ours. (their, ours *are right*)
2 This is a nice camera. Is it your/yours?
3 That's not my/mine umbrella. My/Mine is black.
4 Whose books are these? Your/Yours or my/mine?
5 Catherine is going out with her/hers friends tonight.
6 My/Mine room is bigger than her/hers.
7 They have two children, but I don't know their/theirs names.
8 Can we use your washing machine? Our/Ours isn't working.

59.3 **Complete these sentences. Use friend(s) of mine/yours, etc.**

1 I went to the movies with a ....friend of mine.... .
2 They went on vacation with some ....friends of theirs.... .
3 She's going out with a friend ....
4 We had dinner with some ....
5 I played tennis with a ....
6 Tom is going to meet a ....
7 Do you know those people? Are they .... ?

59.4 **Look at the pictures. What are the people saying?**

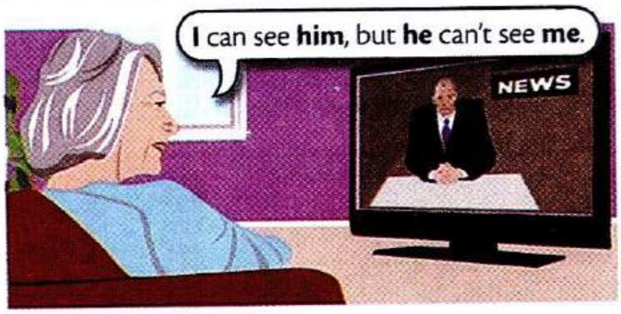
مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Unit 60

I/me/my/mine

www.irLanguage.com

A



	I, etc. (→ Unit 57)	**me**, etc. (→ Unit 57)	**my**, etc. (→ Unit 58)	**mine**, etc. (→ Unit 59)
	I know Tom.	Tom knows **me**.	It's **my** car.	It's **mine**.
	We know Tom.	Tom knows **us**.	It's **our** car.	It's **ours**.
	You know Tom.	Tom knows **you**.	It's **your** car.	It's **yours**.
	He knows Tom.	Tom knows **him**.	It's **his** car.	It's **his**.
	She knows Tom.	Tom knows **her**.	It's **her** car.	It's **hers**.
	They know Tom.	Tom knows **them**.	It's **their** car.	It's **theirs**.

B

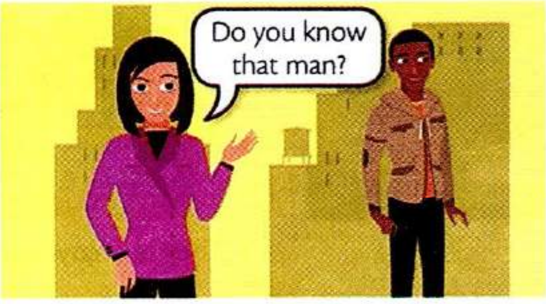
Study these examples:

- "Do **you** know that man?" "Yes, **I** know **him**, but **I** can't remember **his name**."
- **She** was very happy because **we** invited **her** to stay with **us** at **our house**.
- A: Where are the children? Have **you** seen them?
  B: Yes, **they** are playing with **their friends** in the park.
- That's **my pen**. Can **you** give it to **me**, please?
- "Is this **your hat**?" "No, it's **yours**."
- **He** didn't have an umbrella, so **she** gave **him hers**. (= she gave her umbrella to him)
- **I**'m going out with a friend of **mine** tonight. (*not* a friend of me)

myself/yourself, etc. → **Unit 61** **Give me that book / Give it to me** → **Unit 94**

Exercises

60.1 Answer the questions in the same way.

1


Yes, I know him, but I can't remember his name .

2

Yes, I know ...., but I can't remember ....

3

Yes, I ...., but I .... names.

4

Yes, I ...., but ....

60.2 Complete the sentences in the same way.

1 We invited her to stay with us at our house .
2 He invited us to stay with .... at his house.
3 They invited me to stay with .... house.
4 I invited them to stay .... house.
5 She invited us to stay .... house.
6 Did you invite him .... house?

60.3 Complete the sentences in the same way.

1 I gave him my phone number, and he gave me his .
2 I gave her my phone number, and she gave me ....
3 He gave me his phone number, and I gave ....
4 We gave them .... phone number, and they gave ....
5 She gave him .... phone number, and he gave ....
6 You gave us .... phone number, and we gave ....
7 They gave you .... phone number, and you gave ....

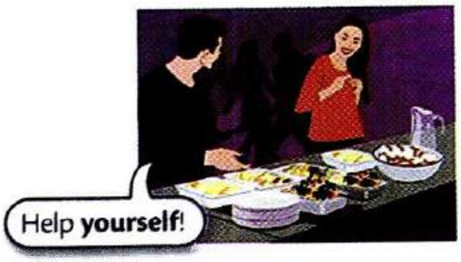
60.4 Write **him**/**her**/**yours**, etc.

1 Where's Amanda? Did you see her ?
2 Where are my keys? Where did I put .... ?
3 This book belongs to Ben. Can you give it to .... ?
4 We don't see .... neighbors much. They're not home very often.
5 "I can't find my phone. Can I use ....?" "Sure."
6 We're going to the movies. Why don't you come with .... ?
7 Did your sister pass .... driver's test?
8 Some people talk about .... work all the time.
9 Last night I went out for dinner with a friend of ....

myself/yourself/themselves, etc.

A

He's looking at **himself**.



They're enjoying **themselves**.

I	→	**me**	→	**myself**
he	→	**him**	→	**himself**
she	→	**her**	→	**herself**
you	→	**you**	→	{ **yourself** / **yourselves**
we	→	**us**	→	**ourselves**
they	→	**them**	→	**themselves**

- **I** looked at **myself** in the mirror.
- **He** cut **himself** with a knife.
- **She** fell off her bike, but she didn't hurt **herself**.
- Please help **yourself**. *(one person)*
- Please help **yourselves**. *(two or more people)*
- We had a good vacation. **We** enjoyed **ourselves**.
- They had a nice time. **They** enjoyed **themselves**.

B

Compare:

me/him/them, etc.

She is looking at **him**.
different people

- You never talk to **me**.
- I didn't pay for **them**.
- I'm sorry. Did I hurt **you**?

myself/himself/themselves, etc.

He is looking at **himself**.
the same person

- Sometimes I talk to **myself**.
- They paid for **themselves**.
- Be careful. Don't hurt **yourself**.

C

by myself / **by yourself**, etc. = alone:

- I went on vacation **by myself**. (= I went alone)
- "Was she with friends?" "No, she was **by herself**."

D

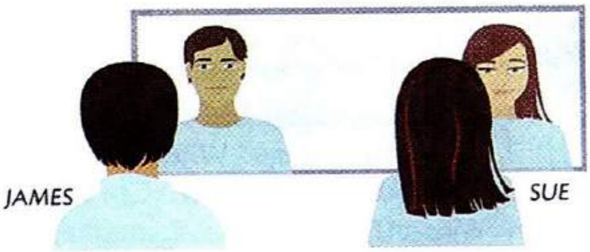
each other

- Kate and Nicole are good friends. They know **each other** well. (= Kate knows Nicole / Nicole knows Kate)
- Paul and I live near **each other**. (= he lives near me / I live near him)

مرجع آموزش زبان ایرانیان
www.irLanguage.com

Compare **each other** and **-selves**:

- James and Sue looked at **each other**. (= he looked at her, she looked at him)



- James and Sue looked at **themselves**. (= he looked at himself, she looked at herself)

me/him/them, etc. → **Unit 57**

Exercises

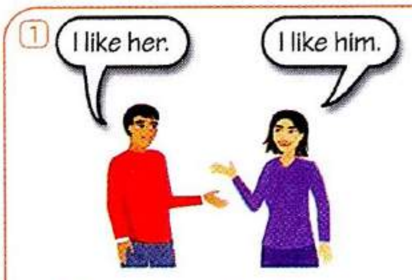
61.1 Complete the sentences with **myself/yourself**, etc.

1 He looked at ....*himself*.... in the mirror.
2 I'm not angry at you. I'm angry at ....
3 Karen had a good time in Brazil. She enjoyed ....
4 My friends had a good time in Brazil. They enjoyed ....
5 I picked up a very hot plate and burned ....
6 He never thinks about other people. He only thinks about ....
7 I want to know more about you. Tell me about .... (*one person*)
8 Goodbye! Have a good trip and take care of ....! (*two people*)

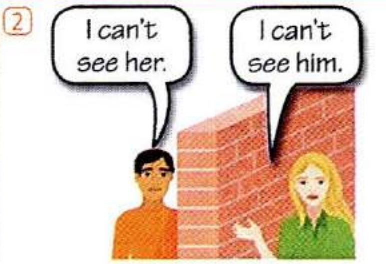
61.2 Write sentences with **by myself** / **by yourself**, etc.

1 I went on vacation alone.	*I went on vacation by myself.*
2 When I saw him, he was alone.	When I saw him, he ....
3 Don't go out alone.	Don't ....
4 I went to the movies alone.	I ....
5 My sister lives alone.	My sister ....
6 Many people live alone.	Many people ....

61.3 Write sentences with **each other**.

1


They like each other.

2


They can't ....
....

3

They ....
....

4

....
....

5

....
....

6

....
....

61.4 Complete the sentences. Use:

each other or **ourselves/yourselves/themselves** or **us/you/them**

1 Josh and I live near ....*each other*.... .
2 Who are those people? Do you know ....*them*.... ?
3 You can help Tom, and Tom can help you. So you and Tom can help ....
4 There's food in the kitchen. If you and Chris are hungry, you can help ....
5 We didn't go to Sarah's party. She didn't invite ....
6 When we go on vacation, we always enjoy ....
7 Jessica and Megan went to school together, but they never see .... now.
8 Lauren and I are very good friends. We've known .... for a long time.
9 "Did you see Sam and Rachel at the party?" "Yes, but I didn't speak to ...."
10 Many people talk to .... when they're alone.

-'s (Kate's camera / my brother's car, etc.)

www.irLanguage.com

A

Kate**'s** camera
(**her** camera)

my brother**'s** car
(**his** car)

the manager**'s** office
(**his** *or* **her** office)

We normally use **-'s** for people:

- I stayed at **my sister's** house. (*not* the house of my sister)
- Have you met **Mr. Black's** wife? (*not* the wife of Mr. Black)
- Are you going to **James's** party?
- Paul is **a man's** name. Paula is **a woman's** name.

You can use **-'s** without a noun after it:

- Amanda's hair is longer than **Kate's**. (= Kate's hair)
- "Whose umbrella is this?" "It's **my mother's**." (= my mother's umbrella)
- "Where were you last night?" "I was at **Eric's**." (= Eric's house)

B

friend's and **friends'**

my **friend's** house = *one friend*
(= **his** house or **her** house)

We write **'s** after
friend/**student**/**mother**, etc., (*singular*):
my mother**'s** car (*one mother*)
my father**'s** car (*one father*)

my **friends'** house = *two or more friends*
(= **their** house)

We write **'** after
friend**s**/student**s**/parent**s**, etc., (*plural*):
my parents**'** car (*two parents*)

C

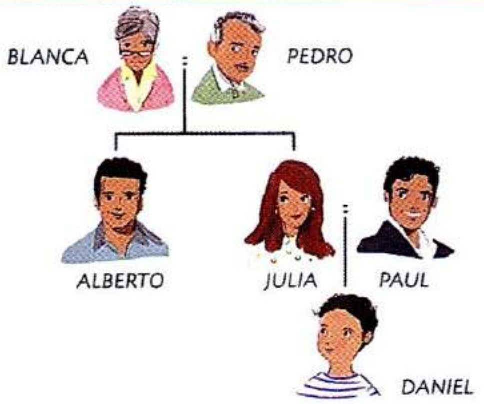
We use **of** . . . for things, places, etc. :

- Look at the roof **of that building**. (*not* that building's roof)
- We didn't see the beginning **of the movie**. (*not* the movie's beginning)
- What's the name **of this town**?
- Do you know the cause **of the problem**?
- You can sit in the back **of the car**.
- Madrid is the capital **of Spain**.

mine/yours, etc. → **Unit 59** **whose** . . . ? → **Unit 59** **-'s** (**he's** / **Kate's**, etc.) → **Appendix 4.5**

Exercises

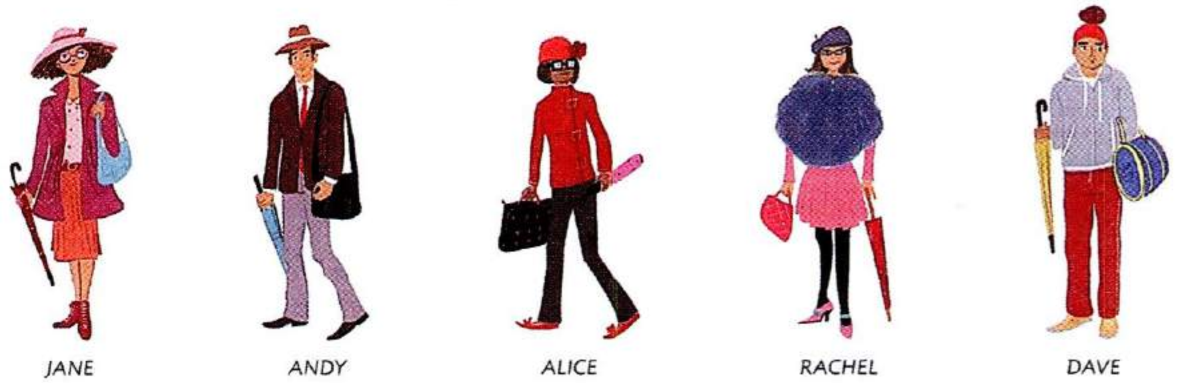
62.1 Look at the family tree. Complete the sentences about the people in the family.



Blanca and Pedro are married.
They have a son, Alberto, and a daughter, Julia.
Julia is married to Paul.
Julia and Paul have a son, Daniel.

1. Pedro is ...Blanca's... husband.
2. Julia is Daniel's ...mother... .
3. Blanca is .... wife.
4. Alberto is Julia's ....
5. Alberto is .... uncle.
6. Julia is .... wife.
7. Blanca is Daniel's ....
8. Julia is Alberto's ....
9. Paul is .... husband.
10. Paul is Daniel's ....
11. Daniel is .... nephew.

62.2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use one word only.



1 Whose is this? ...Alice's...

2 Whose is this? ....

3 And this? ....

4 And these? ....

5 And this? ....

6 And these? ....

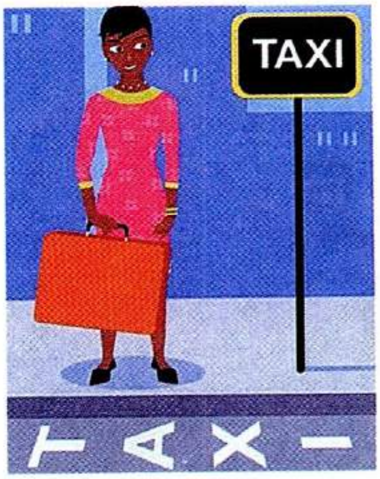
62.3 Are these sentences OK? Change them where necessary.

1. I stayed at the house of my sister. ...my sister's house...
2. What is the name of this town? ...OK...
3. Do you like the color of this coat? ....
4. Do you have the phone number of Simon? ....
5. The job of my brother is very interesting. ....
6. Write your name at the top of the page. ....
7. For me, morning is the best part of the day. ....
8. The favorite color of Paula is blue. ....
9. When is the birthday of your mother? ....
10. The house of my parents isn't very big. ....
11. The walls of this house are very thin. ....
12. The car stopped at the end of the street. ....
13. Are you going to the party of Lauren next week? ....
14. The manager of the hotel is not here right now. ....

a/an . . .

A

He has **a** camera.



She's waiting for **a** taxi.

It's **a** beautiful day.

a . . . = one thing or person:

- Rachel works in **a bank**. (*not* in bank)
- Can I ask **a question**? (*not* ask question)
- I don't have **a job** right now.
- There's **a woman** at the bus stop.

B

an (*not* a) before **a/e/i/o/u**:

- Do you want **an a**pple or **a b**anana?
- I'm going to buy **a h**at and **an u**mbrella.
- There was **an i**nteresting program on TV last night.

also **an hour** (**h** is not pronounced: an ~~h~~our)
but **a university** (pronounced *yuniversity*)
a European country (pronounced *yuropean*)

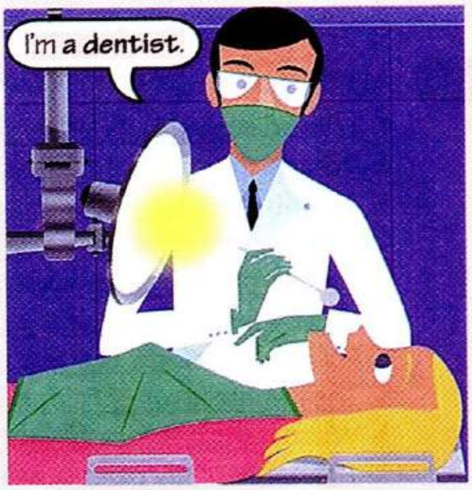
another (= **an** + **other**) is one word:

- Can I have **another** cup of coffee?

C

We use **a/an** . . . when we say what a thing or a person is. For example:

- The sun is **a star**.
- Football is **a game**.
- Dallas is **a city in Texas**.
- A mouse is **an animal**. It's **a small animal**.
- Joe is **a very nice person**.



We use **a/an** . . . for jobs, etc. :

- A: What do you do?
  B: I'm **a dentist**. (*not* I'm dentist)
- "What does Mark do?" "He's **an engineer**."
- Would you like to be **a teacher**?
- Beethoven was **a composer**.
- Picasso was **a famous painter**.
- Are you **a student**?

a bottle / **some water** (count/noncount) ➔ **Units 65–66** **a/an** and **the** ➔ **Unit 67**

Exercises

63.1 Write **a** or **an**.

1 ...an... old book
2 .... window
3 .... horse
4 .... airport
5 .... new airport
6 .... organization
7 .... university
8 .... hour
9 .... economic problem

63.2 What are these things? Choose from the box.

~~bird~~	fruit	mountain	river	musical instrument
flower	game	planet	tool	vegetable

1 A duck is ...a bird... .
2 A carrot is ....
3 Tennis is ....
4 A hammer is ....
5 Everest is ....
6 Saturn is ....
7 A banana is ....
8 The Amazon is ....
9 A rose is ....
10 A trumpet is ....

63.3 What are their jobs? Choose from the box and complete the sentences.

architect	~~dentist~~	sales clerk	photographer
electrician	nurse	taxi driver	

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

1 ...She's a dentist...
2 He's ....
3 She ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 And you? I'm ....

63.4 Write sentences. Choose from the two boxes. Use **a**/**an** where necessary.

~~I want to ask you~~	Rebecca works in	+	old house	artist
Tom never wears	Jane wants to learn		party	~~question~~
I can't ride	Mike lives in		office	foreign language
My brother is	Tonight I'm going to		hat	bike

1 ...I want to ask you a question...
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....

train(s) bus(es) (singular and plural)

A

The plural of a noun is usually **-s**:

singular (= one)	→	*plural* (= two or more)
a flower	→	some **flowers**
a train	→	two **trains**
one week	→	a few **weeks**
a nice place	→	some nice **places**
this student	→	these **students**

a flower

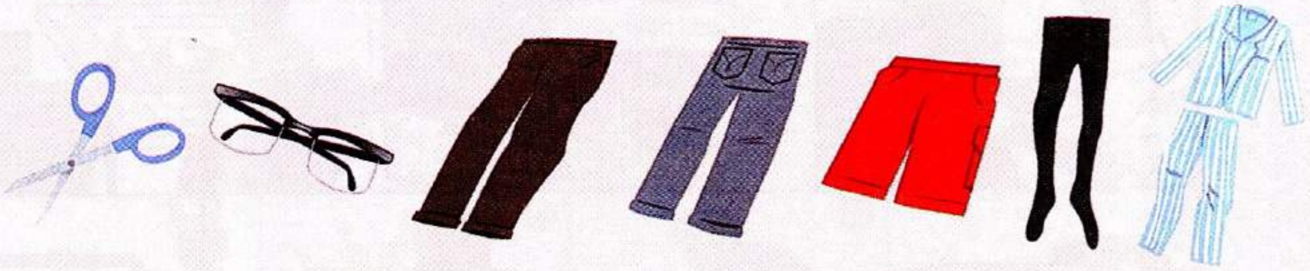
some **flowers**

Spelling (see Appendix 5):

-s / **-sh** / **-ch** / **-x** →	**-es**	bus → bus**es**	dish → dish**es**		
		church → church**es**	box → box**es**		
	also	potato → potato**es**	tomato → tomato**es**		
-y →	**-ies**	bab**y** → bab**ies**	dictionar**y** → dictionar**ies**	part**y** → part**ies**	
but **-ay** / **-ey** / **-oy** →	**-ys**	d**ay** → d**ays**	monk**ey** → monk**eys**	b**oy** → b**oys**	
-f / **-fe** →	**-ves**	shel**f** → shel**ves**	kni**fe** → kni**ves**	wi**fe** → wi**ves**	

B

These things are plural in English:



scissors **glasses** **pants** **jeans** **shorts** **tights** **pajamas**

- Do you wear **glasses**?
- Where **are** the **scissors**? I need **them**.

You can also say **a pair of scissors** / **a pair of pants** / **a pair of pajamas**, etc.:

- I need **a** new **pair of jeans**. *or* I need **some** new **jeans**. (*not* a new jeans)

C

Some plurals do *not* end in **-s**:

this **man** → these **men**	one **foot** → two **feet**	that **sheep** → those **sheep**
a **woman** → some **women**	a **tooth** → all my **teeth**	a **fish** → a lot of **fish**
a **child** → many **children**	a **mouse** → some **mice**	

also a **person** → **two people** / **some people** / **a lot of people**, etc.:

- **She's** a nice **person**.

but
- **They** are nice **people**. (*not* nice persons)

D

People is plural (= they), so we say **people are** / **people have**, etc.:

- **A lot of people speak** English. (*not* speaks)
- I like **the people** here. **They are** very friendly.

Police is plural:

- **The police want** to talk to anybody who saw the accident. (*not* The police wants)

Exercises

64.1 Write the plural.

1 flower *flowers*
2 boat ....
3 woman ....
4 city ....
5 umbrella ....
6 address ....
7 knife ....
8 sandwich ....
9 family ....
10 foot ....
11 holiday ....
12 potato ....

64.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1 There are a lot of *sheep* in the field.
2 Gary is brushing his ....
3 There are three .... at the bus stop.
4 Lucy has two ....
5 There are a lot of .... in the river.
6 The .... are falling from the tree.

64.3 Are these sentences OK? Change the sentences where necessary.

1 I'm going to buy some flowers. *OK*
2 I need a new jeans. *I need a new pair of jeans.* or *I need some new jeans.*
3 It's a lovely park with a lot of beautiful tree. ....
4 There was a woman in the car with two mens. ....
5 Sheep eat grass. ....
6 David is married and has three childs. ....
7 Most of my friend are student. ....
8 He put on his pajama and went to bed. ....
9 We went fishing, but we didn't catch many fish. ....
10 Do you know many persons in this town? ....
11 I like your pants. Where did you get it? ....
12 Montreal is usually full of tourist. ....
13 I don't like mice. I'm scared of them. ....
14 This scissor isn't very sharp. ....

64.4 Which is right? Complete the sentences.

1 It's a nice place. Many people *go* there on vacation. — **go** *or* **goes**?
2 Some people .... always late. — **is** *or* **are**?
3 The new city hall is not a beautiful building. Most people .... like it. — **don't** *or* **doesn't**?
4 A lot of people .... TV every day. — **watch** *or* **watches**?
5 Three people .... injured in the accident. — **was** *or* **were**?
6 How many people .... in that house? — **live** *or* **lives**?
7 .... the police know the cause of the explosion? — **Do** *or* **Does**?
8 The police .... looking for the stolen car. — **is** *or* **are**?
9 I need my glasses, but I can't find .... — **it** *or* **them**?
10 I'm going to buy .... new jeans today. — **a** *or* **some**?

Unit 65

a bottle / some water (count/noncount 1)

A

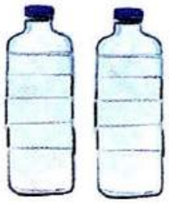
A noun can be *count* or *noncount.*

Count nouns

For example: (a) **car** (a) **man** (a) **bottle** (a) **house** (a) **key** (an) **idea** (an) **accident**

You can use **one/two/three**, etc. + *count nouns* (you can count them):

one **bottle**



two **bottles**

three **men**

four **houses**

Count nouns can be *singular* (= one) or *plural* (= two or more):

Singular	**a car**	**the car**	**my car**, etc.		
Plural	**cars**	**two cars**	**the cars**	**some cars**	**many cars**, etc.

- I have **a car**.
- New **cars** are very expensive.
- There aren't **many cars** in the parking lot.

You can't use the singular (**car/bottle/key**, etc.) alone. You need **a/an**:

- We can't get into the house without **a key**. (*not* without key)

B

Noncount nouns

For example: **water** **air** **rice** **salt** **plastic** **money** **music** **tennis**

water

salt

money

music

You can't say **one/two/three**, etc. + these things: ~~one water~~ ~~two musics~~

Noncount nouns have only *one* form:

money the **money** my **money** some **money** much **money**, etc.

- I have **some money**.
- There isn't **much money** in the box.
- **Money** isn't everything.

You can't use **a/an** + *noncount nouns*: ~~a~~ **money** ~~a~~ **music** ~~a~~ **water**

But you can say **a piece of** . . . / **a bottle of** . . . , etc. + *noncount noun*:

a bottle of water	**a carton of** milk	**a bar of** soap
a piece of cheese	**a bottle of** perfume	**a piece of** music
a bowl of rice	**a cup of** coffee	**a game of** tennis

a/an ➜ Unit 63 count/noncount 2 ➜ Unit 66

Exercises

65.1 What are these things? Some are count and some are noncount. Write **a/an** if necessary.
The names of these things are:

bucket	**envelope**	**money**	**sand**	**toothbrush**	**wallet**
egg	**jug**	~~**salt**~~	~~**spoon**~~	**toothpaste**	**water**

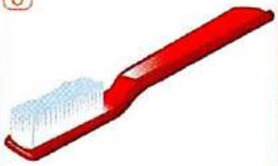
1
It's ....salt.... .

2
It's ....a spoon.... .

3
It's ....

4
It's ....

5
It's ....

6 
It's ....

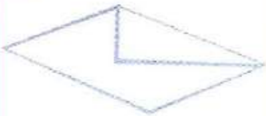
7
It's ....

8
It's ....

9
It's ....

10
It's ....

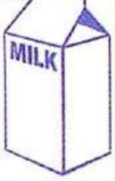
11
It's ....

12 
It's ....

65.2 **Some of these sentences are OK, but some need a/an. Write a/an where necessary.**

1 I don't have watch. ....a watch....
2 Do you like cheese? ....OK....
3 I never wear hat. ....
4 Are you looking for job? ....
5 Kate doesn't eat meat. ....
6 Kate eats apple every day. ....
7 I'm going to party tonight. ....
8 Music is wonderful thing. ....
9 Jamaica is island. ....
10 I don't need key. ....
11 Everybody needs food. ....
12 I've got good idea. ....
13 Can you drive car? ....
14 Do you want cup of coffee? ....
15 I don't like coffee without milk. ....
16 Don't go out without umbrella. ....

65.3 **What are these things? Write a . . . of . . . for each picture. Use the words in the boxes.**

1 

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

bar	**cup**	**loaf**
bowl	**glass**	**piece**
~~**carton**~~	**jar**	**piece**

\+

bread	**paper**	**tea**
honey	**soap**	**water**
~~**milk**~~	**soup**	**wood**

1 ....a carton of milk....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....
9 ....

Unit 66

a cake / some cake / some cakes (count/noncount 2)

A a/an and some

a/an + *singular count nouns* (**car**/**apple**/**shoe**, etc.):
- I need **a** new **car**.
- Would you like **an apple**?

an apple

some + *plural count nouns* (**cars**/**apples**/**shoes**, etc.):
- I need **some** new **shoes**.
- Would you like **some apples**?

some apples

some + *noncount nouns* (**water**/**money**/**music**, etc.):
- I need **some water**.
- Would you like **some cheese**?
  (*or* Would you like **a piece of** cheese?)

some cheese *or* **a piece of** cheese

Compare **a** and **some**:
- Nicole bought **a hat**, **some shoes**, and **some perfume**.
- I read **a newspaper**, made **some phone calls**, and listened to **some music**.

B

Many nouns are sometimes count and sometimes noncount. For example:

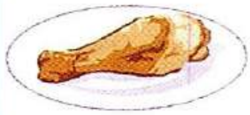
a cake

some cakes

some cake *or* **a piece of cake**

a chicken

some chickens



some chicken *or* **a piece of chicken**

Compare **a paper** (= a newspaper) and **some paper**:
- I want something to read. I'm going to buy **a paper**.

but I want to make a shopping list. I need **some paper** / **a piece of paper**. (*not* a paper)

C

Be careful with:

advice **bread** **furniture** **hair** **information** **news** **weather** **work**

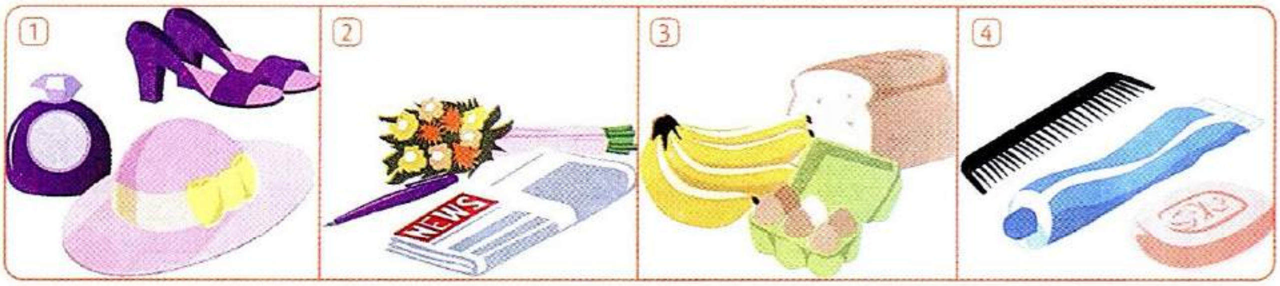
These nouns are usually noncount. So you can't say **a/an** . . . (~~a bread~~, ~~an advice~~), and they can't be plural (~~advices~~, ~~furnitures~~, etc.).
- Can I talk to you? I need **some advice**. (*not* an advice)
- I'm going to buy **some bread**. (*not* a bread)
- They've got **some** nice **furniture** in their house. (*not* furnitures)
- Lauren has very long **hair**. (*not* hairs)
- Where can I get **some information** about hotels in Mexico City? (*not* informations)
- Listen! I've got **some** good **news**. (*not* a good news)
- It's nice **weather** today. (*not* a nice weather)
- "Do you like your job?" "Yes, but it's hard **work**." (*not* a hard work)

We say **a job** (*but not* a work):
- I've got **a** new **job**. (*not* a new work)

count/noncount 1 ➜ **Unit 65**   **some** and **any** ➜ **Unit 74**

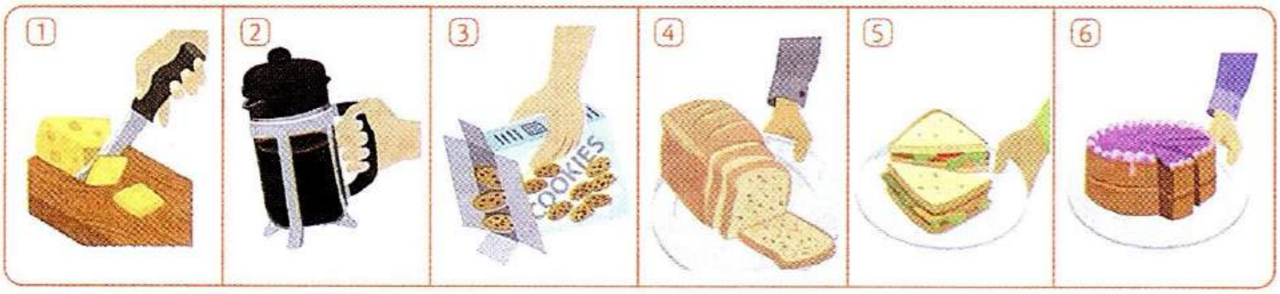
Exercises

66.1 What can you see in these pictures? Use **a** or **some**.



1 some perfume, a hat, and some shoes
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....

66.2 Write sentences with **Would you like a . . . ?** or **Would you like some . . . ?**



1 Would you like some cheese ?
2 Would you like .... ?
3 Would .... ?
4 .... ?
5 .... ?
6 .... ?

66.3 Write **a**/**an** or **some**.

1 I read a book and listened to some music.
2 I need .... money. I want to buy .... food.
3 We met .... interesting people at the party.
4 I'm going to open .... window to get .... fresh air.
5 Rachel didn't eat much for lunch – only .... apple and .... bread.
6 We live in .... big house. There's .... nice yard with .... beautiful trees.
7 I'm going to make a table. First I need .... wood.
8 Listen to me carefully. I'm going to give you .... advice.
9 I want to make a list of things to do. I need .... paper and .... pen.

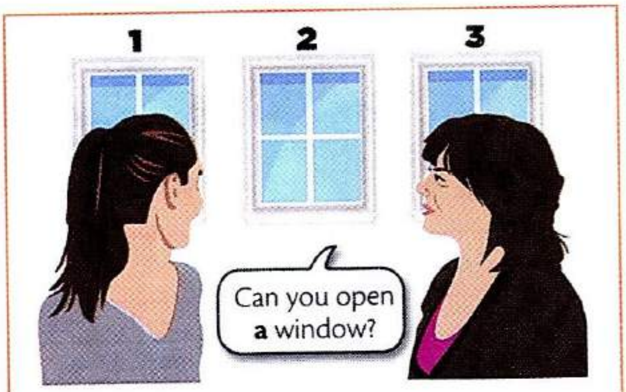
66.4 Which is right?

1 I'm going to buy some new ~~shoe~~/shoes. (shoes *is right*)
2 Dan has brown eye/eyes.
3 Sofia has short black hair/hairs.
4 The tour guide gave us some information/informations about the city.
5 We're going to buy some new chair/chairs.
6 We're going to buy some new furniture/furnitures.
7 It's hard to find a work/job these days.
8 We had wonderful weather / a wonderful weather when we were on vacation.

Unit 67 a/an and the

A

a/an



There are *three* windows here.
a window = window 1 or 2 or 3

- I have **a car**.
  (there are many cars and I have one)
- Can I ask **a question**?
  (there are many questions – can I ask one?)
- Is there **a hotel** near here? (there are many hotels – is there one near here?)
- Paris is **an interesting city**. (there are many interesting cities and Paris is one)
- Sarah is **a student**.
  (there are many students and Lisa is one)

the

There is only *one* window here – **the** window.

- I'm going to wash **the car** tomorrow.
  (= my car)
- Can you repeat **the question**, please?
  (= the question that you asked)
- We enjoyed our vacation. **The hotel** was very nice. (= our hotel)
- Paris is **the capital of France**.
  (there is only one capital of France)
- Sarah is **the youngest student** in her class. (there is only one youngest student in her class)

Compare **a** and **the**:

- I bought **a jacket** and **a shirt**. **The jacket** was cheap, but **the shirt** was expensive.
  (= **the** jacket and **the** shirt **that I bought**)

B

We say **the** . . . when it is clear which thing or person we mean. For example:

the door / the ceiling / the floor / the carpet / the light, etc. *(of a room)*
the roof / the backyard / the kitchen / the bathroom, etc. *(of a house)*
the airport / the police station / the bus station / the mayor's office, etc. *(of a city)*

- "Where's Tom?" "In **the kitchen**."
  (= the kitchen of this house or apartment)
- Turn off **the light** and close **the door**.
  (= the light and the door of the room)
- Do you live far from **the airport**?
  (= the airport of your town)
- I'd like to speak to **the manager**, please.
  (= the manager of this store, etc.)

a/an ➜ Unit 63 the ➜ Units 68–71

Exercises

67.1 Write **a**/**an** or **the**.

1 We enjoyed our trip. ....The.... hotel was very nice.
2 "Can I ask ....a.... question?" "Sure. What do you want to know?"
3 You look very tired. You need .... vacation.
4 "Where's Joe?" "He's in .... bathroom."
5 Jessica is .... interesting person. You should meet her.
6 A: Excuse me, can you tell me how to get to .... post office?
B: Yes, go straight and then take .... next left.
7 A: Let's go and see .... movie tonight.
B: OK, that's .... good idea.
8 It's .... nice morning. Let's go for .... walk.
9 Amanda is .... student. When she finishes school, she wants to be .... journalist. She lives with two friends in .... apartment near .... college where she is studying. .... apartment is small, but she likes it.
10 Peter and Mary have two children, ... boy and .... girl. .... boy is seven years old, and .... girl is three. Peter works in .... factory. Mary doesn't have .... job outside the home right now.

67.2 Complete the sentences. Use **a** or **the** + these words:

airport **cup** **dictionary** ~~**door**~~ **floor** **picture**

67.3 These sentences are not correct. Put in **a**/**an** or **the** where necessary.

1 Don't forget to turn off light when you go out. ....turn off the light....
2 Enjoy your trip, and don't forget to send me postcard. ....
3 What is name of this town? ....
4 Canada is very big country. ....
5 What is largest city in Canada? ....
6 I like this room, but I don't like color of carpet. ....
7 "Are you OK?" "No, I've got headache." ....
8 We live in old house near station. ....
9 What is name of director of movie we saw last night? ....

Unit 68 the . . .

A

We use **the** when it is clear which thing or person we mean:

- What is **the name** of this street? (there is only one name)
- Who is **the best player** on your team? (there is only one best player)
- Can you tell me **the time**, please? (= the time *now*)
- My office is on **the first floor**. (= the first floor of the building)

Don't forget **the**:

- Do you live near **the airport**? (*not* near airport)
- Excuse me, where is **the nearest bank**? (*not* where is nearest . . .)

B

the same . . .

- We live on **the same street**. (*not* on same street)
- "Are these two books different?" "No, they're **the same**." (*not* they're same)

C

We say:

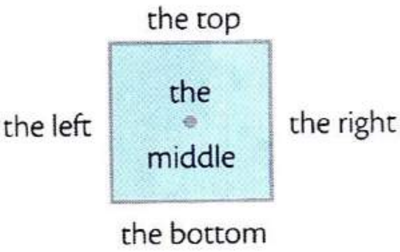
the sun / **the moon** / **the world** / **the sky** / **the ocean** / **the country**

- **The sky** is blue, and **the sun** is shining.
- Do you live in a city or in **the country**?

the police / **the fire department** / **the army** (of a city, country, etc.)

- My brother is a soldier. He's in **the army**.
- What do you think of **the police**? Do they do a good job?

the top / **the end** / **the middle** / **the left**, etc.



- Write your name at **the top of** the page.
- My house is at **the end of** this block.
- The table is in **the middle of** the room.
- Do you drive on **the right** or on **the left** in your country?

(play) **the piano** / **the guitar** / **the trumpet**, etc. (musical instruments)

- Anna is learning to play **the piano**.

the radio

- I listen to **the radio** a lot.

the Internet

- What do you use **the Internet** for?

D

We do *not* use **the** with:

television/TV

- I watch **TV** a lot.
- What's on **television** tonight?

but Can you turn off **the TV**? (= the TV set)

breakfast/lunch/dinner

- What did you have for **breakfast**? (*not* the breakfast)
- **Dinner** is ready!

next/last + **week/month/year/summer/Monday**, etc.

- I'm not working **next week**. (*not* the next week)
- Did you take a vacation **last summer**? (*not* the last summer)

a/an and **the** → **Unit 67** **the** → **Units 69–71** **the oldest** / **the most expensive**, etc. → **Unit 88**

Exercises

68.1 Put in **the** where necessary. Write *OK* if the sentence is already correct.

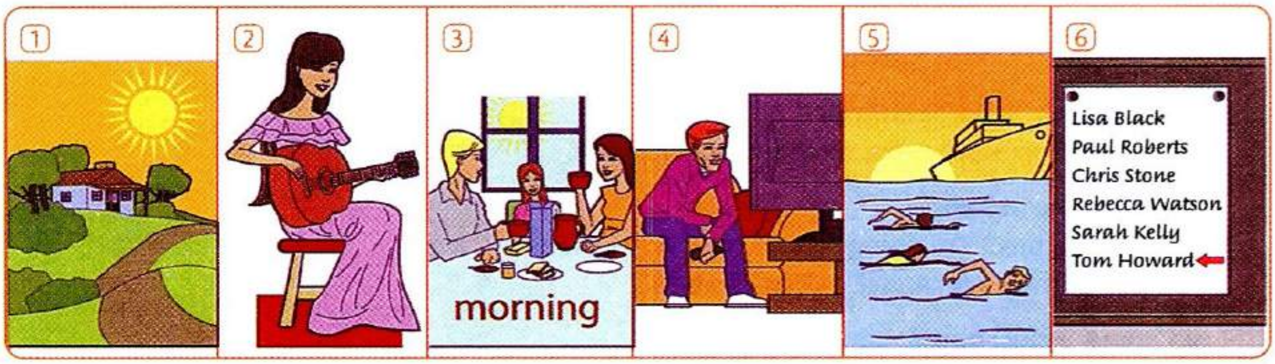
1 What is name of this street? *the name*
2 What's on TV tonight? *OK*
3 Our apartment is on second floor. ....
4 Would you like to go to moon? ....
5 What is best hotel in this town? ....
6 What time is lunch? ....
7 How far is it to football stadium? ....
8 We're taking a trip at end of May. ....
9 What are you doing next weekend? ....
10 I didn't like her first time I met her. ....
11 I'm going out after dinner. ....
12 It's easy to get information from Internet. ....
13 My sister got married last month. ....
14 My dictionary is on top shelf on right. ....
15 We live in country about 10 miles from nearest town. ....

68.2 Complete the sentences. Use **the same** + these words:

age color problem ~~street~~ time

1 I live on North Street, and you live on North Street. We live on *the same street* .
2 I arrived at 8:30, and you arrived at 8:30. We arrived at ....
3 Jim is 25, and Sue is 25. Jim and Sue are ....
4 My shirt is dark blue, and so is my jacket. My shirt and jacket are ....
5 I have no money, and you have no money. We have ....

68.3 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use **the** if necessary.



1 *The sun* is shining.
2 She's playing ....
3 They're having ....
4 He's watching ....
5 They're swimming in ....
6 Tom's name is at .... of the list.

68.4 Complete these sentences. Choose from the list. Use **the** if necessary.

capital ~~dinner~~ lunch middle name police sky TV

1 We had *dinner* at a restaurant last night.
2 We stayed at a very nice hotel, but I don't remember ....
3 .... is very clear tonight. You can see all the stars.
4 Sometimes there are some good programs on .... late at night.
5 .... stopped me because I was driving too fast.
6 Tokyo is .... of Japan.
7 "What did you have for ....?" "A salad."
8 I woke up in .... of the night.

go to work   go home   go to the hospital

A

She's **at work**.

They're going **to school**.

He's **in bed**.

We say:

go **to work**, be **at work**, start **work**, finish **work**
- Bye! I'm **going to work** now. (*not* to the work)
- I **finish work** at 5:00 every day.

go **to school**, be **at school**, start **school**, finish **school**, etc.
- What did you learn **at school** today? (*not* at the school)
- Some children don't like **school**.

go **to college**, be **in college**
- Rachel wants to **go to college** when she **finishes high school**.
- What did you study **in college**?

go **to class**, be **in class**
- I can't talk now. I have to **go to class**.
- I'll **be in class** until 5:00 today. I'll call you when I get out.

go **to prison/jail**, be **in prison/jail**
- Why is he **in prison**? What did he do?

go **to church**, be **in/at church**
- David usually goes **to church** on Sundays.

go **to bed**, be **in bed**
- I'm tired. I'm **going to bed**. (*not* to the bed)
- "Where's Amanda?" "She's **in bed**."

go **home**, be (at) **home**, stay (at) **home**, etc.
- I'm tired. I'm **going home**. (*not* to home)
- Are you going out tonight, or are you **staying home**? *or* ... are you **staying at home**?

B

We say:

go to **the bank / the post office / the hospital / the train station / the bus station / the airport / the theater / the movies**
- "Are you going to **the bank**?" "No, to **the post office**."
- The number 5 bus goes to **the airport**; the number 8 goes to **the train station**.
- I never go to **the theater**, but I go to **the movies** a lot.

go to **the doctor**, **the dentist**
- You're not well. Why don't you go to **the doctor**?
- I have to go to **the dentist** tomorrow.

the ➜ Units 67–68, 70–71   in/at ➜ Units 104–105   to/in/at ➜ Unit 106   (at) home ➜ Unit 106

Exercises

69.1 Where are these people? Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need **the**.

1 He's in ...bed...........
2 They're at ....
3 He's in ....
4 She's at ....
5 They're at ....
6 She's in ....

69.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the list. Use **the** if necessary.

~~bank~~ bed ~~church~~ home post office school station

1 I need to get some money. I have to go to ...the bank.... .
2 David usually goes to ...church... on Sundays.
3 In the United States, children start .... at the age of five.
4 There were a lot of people at .... waiting for the train.
5 We went to their house, but they weren't ....
6 I'm going to .... now. Good night!
7 I'm going to .... to get some stamps.

69.3 Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need **the**.

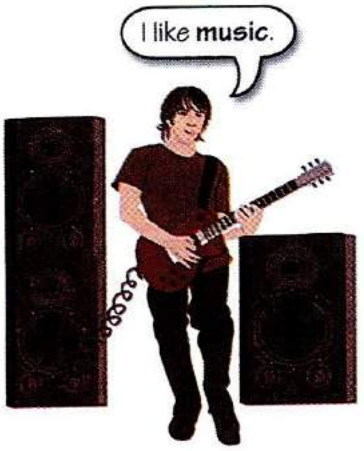
1 If you want to catch a plane, you ...go to the airport.... .
2 If you want to see a movie, you go to ....
3 If you are tired and you want to sleep, you ....
4 If you rob a bank and the police catch you, you ....
5 If you have a problem with your teeth, you ....
6 If you want to study after you finish high school, you ....
7 If you are badly injured in an accident, you ....

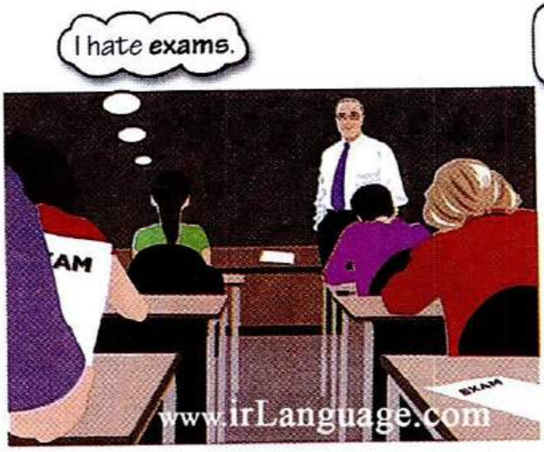
69.4 Are these sentences OK? Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 We went to movies last night. ...to the movies...
2 I finish work at 5:00 every day. ...OK...
3 Megan wasn't feeling well yesterday, so she went to doctor. ....
4 I wasn't feeling well this morning, so I stayed in bed. ....
5 Why is Lauren always late for work? ....
6 "Where are your children?" "They're at school." ....
7 We have no money in bank. ....
8 When I was younger, I went to church every Sunday.
9 What time do you usually get home from work? ....
10 Sorry I couldn't call you back earlier. I was in class.
11 "Where should we meet?" "At station." ....
12 Kate takes her children to school every day. ....
13 Jim is sick. He's in hospital. ....
14 Would you like to go to college? ....
15 Would you like to go to theater tonight? ....

I like music I hate exams

A





We do not use **the** for general ideas:

- I like **music**, especially **classical music**.
  (*not* the music . . . the classical music)
- We don't eat **meat** very often. (*not* the meat)
- **Life** is not possible without **water**.
  (*not* The life . . . the water)
- I hate **exams**. (*not* the exams)
- Is there a store near here that sells **newspapers**?

We do not use **the** for games and sports:

- My favorite sports are **tennis** and **skiing**. (*not* the tennis . . . the skiing)

We do not use **the** for languages or school subjects (**history/geography/physics/biology**, etc.):

- Do you think **English** is difficult? (*not* the English)
- Tom's brother is studying **physics** and **chemistry**.

B

flowers or **the flowers**?

Compare:

Flowers are beautiful. (= flowers in general)	I love your garden. **The flowers** are beautiful. (= the flowers in your garden)
I don't like **cold weather**. (= cold weather in general)	**The weather** isn't very good today. (= the weather today)
We don't eat **fish** very often. (= fish in general)	We had a great meal last night. **The fish** was excellent. (= the fish we ate last night)
Are you interested in **history**? (= history in general)	Do you know much about **the history** of your country?

the → Units 67–69, 71

Exercises

70.1 What do you think about these things?

big cities	**computer games**	**exams**	**jazz**	**parties**
chocolate	**dogs**	**housework**	**museums**	**tennis**

Choose seven of these things and write sentences with:

I like . . . **I don't like . . .** **I love . . .** **I hate . . .**

1 *I hate exams.* or *I like exams.*
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....

70.2 Are you interested in these things? Write sentences with:

I'm (very) interested in . . .	**I know a lot about . . .**	**I don't know much about . . .**
I'm not interested in . . .	**I know a little about . . .**	**I don't know anything about . . .**

1 (history) *I'm very interested in history.*
2 (politics) I ....
3 (sports) ....
4 (art) ....
5 (astronomy) ....
6 (economics) ....

70.3 Which is right?

1 My favorite sport is football / ~~the football~~. (football *is right*)
2 I like this hotel. ~~Rooms~~ / The rooms are very nice. (The rooms *is right*)
3 Everybody needs friends / the friends.
4 Rachel doesn't go to parties / the parties very often.
5 I went shopping at the mall this morning. Stores / The stores were very crowded.
6 "Where's milk / the milk?" "It's in the fridge."
7 I don't like milk / the milk. I never drink it.
8 "Do you play any sports?" "Yes, I play basketball / the basketball."
9 An architect is a person who designs buildings / the buildings.
10 We went for a swim in the river. Water / The water was very cold.
11 I don't like swimming in cold water / the cold water.
12 Excuse me, can you pass salt / the salt, please?
13 I like this town. I like people / the people here.
14 Vegetables / The vegetables are good for you.
15 Houses / The houses on this street are all the same.
16 I can't sing this song. I don't know words / the words.
17 I enjoy taking pictures / the pictures. It's my hobby.
18 Do you want to see pictures / the pictures that I took when I was on vacation?
19 English / The English is used a lot in international business / the international business.
20 Money / The money doesn't always bring happiness / the happiness.

Unit 71 the . . . (names of places)

A

Places (continents, countries, states, islands, towns, etc.)

In general we do *not* use **the** with names of places:

- **Quebec** is a province of **Canada**.
- **Cairo** is the capital of **Egypt**.
- **Hawaii** is an island in the Pacific.
- **Peru** is in **South America**.

But we use **the** in names with 'republic'/'states'/'kingdom':

the Dominican **Republic**
the United **States** of America (**the** USA)
the United **Kingdom** (**the** UK)

B

the -s (plural names)

We use **the** with *plural* names of countries/islands/mountains:

the Netherlands
the Philippines
the Hawaiian Islands
the Andes

C

Seas, rivers, etc.

We use **the** with names of oceans/seas/rivers/canals:

the Atlantic (Ocean)
the Nile (River)
the Mediterranean (Sea)
the Panama Canal
the Amazon
the Black Sea

D

Places in towns (streets, buildings, etc.)

In general, we do *not* use **the** with names of streets, squares, etc.:

- Kevin lives on **Central Avenue**.
- Where is **Main Street**, please?
- **Times Square** is in New York.

We do not use **the** with names of airports, train stations, parks, and many important buildings:

O'Hare International Airport
Pennsylvania Station
Yosemite (National Park)
Carnegie Hall

also

Harvard University, **Pomona College**, etc.

But we use **the** with names of most hotels, museums, theaters, and monuments:

the Regent Hotel
the Metropolitan (Museum)
the Taj Mahal
the National Theater
the Cineplex (movie theater)
the Lincoln Memorial

E

the . . . of . . .

We use **the** + names with . . . **of** . . . :

the Museum **of** Modern Art
the Great Wall **of** China
the University **of** California
the Statue **of** Liberty

We say **the north / the south / the east / the west** (of . . .):

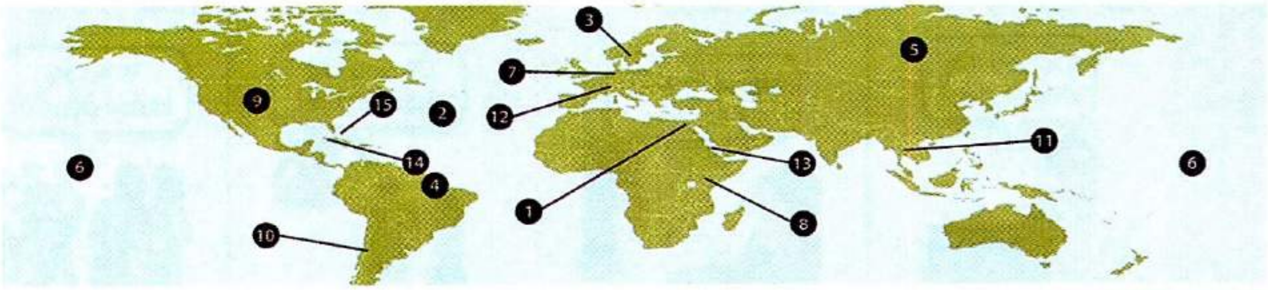
- I've been to **the north of Italy**, but not to **the south**.

مرجع آموزش زبان ایرانیان
irLanguage.com

the → Units 67–70

Exercises

71.1 Answer these geography questions. Choose from the box. Use **The** if necessary.



1. *Cairo* .... is the capital of Egypt.
2. *The Atlantic* .... is between Africa and America.
3. .... is a country in northern Europe.
4. .... is a river in South America.
5. .... is the largest continent in the world.
6. .... is the largest ocean.
7. .... is a river in Europe.
8. .... is a country in East Africa.
9. .... is between Canada and Mexico.
10. .... are mountains in South America.
11. .... is the capital of Thailand.
12. .... are mountains in central Europe.
13. .... is between Saudi Arabia and Africa.
14. .... is an island in the Caribbean.
15. .... are a group of islands near Florida.

Alps
Amazon
Andes
Asia
~~Atlantic~~
Bahamas
Bangkok
~~Cairo~~
Jamaica
Kenya
Pacific
Red Sea
Rhine
Sweden
United States

71.2 Write **the** where necessary. If the sentence is already correct, write *OK*.

1. Kevin lives on Central Avenue. .... *OK*
2. We went to see a play at National Theater. .... *at the National Theater*
3. Have you ever been to China? ....
4. Have you ever been to Philippines? ....
5. Have you ever been to south of France? ....
6. Can you tell me where Washington Monument is? ....
7. Can you tell me where Hollywood Boulevard is? ....
8. Can you tell me where Museum of Art is? ....
9. Europe is bigger than Australia. ....
10. Belgium is smaller than Netherlands. ....
11. Which river is longer – Mississippi or Nile? ....
12. Did you go to National Gallery when you were in Washington? ....
13. We stayed at Park Hotel near Central Park. ....
14. How far is it from Times Square to JFK Airport? ....
15. Rocky Mountains are in North America. ....
16. Texas is famous for oil and cowboys. ....
17. I hope to go to United Kingdom next year. ....
18. Mary comes from west of Ireland. ....
19. John is a student at University of Michigan. ....
20. Panama Canal joins Atlantic Ocean and Pacific Ocean. ....

→ **Additional exercises 33–34 (pages 253–254)**

this/that/these/those

A

this (*singular*)	these (*plural*)	that (*singular*)	those (*plural*)

this
these

this picture
(= this picture *here*)
these flowers
(= these flowers *here*)

that
those

that picture
(= that picture *there*)
those people
(= those people *there*)

B

We use **this/that/these/those** with a noun (**this picture / those girls**, etc.) or without a noun:

- **This hotel** is expensive, but it's very nice.
- "Who's **that girl**?" "I don't know."
- Do you like **these shoes**? I bought them last week.
- **Those apples** look nice. Can I have one?

} *with a noun*

- **This** is a nice hotel, but it's very expensive.
- "Excuse me, is **this** your bag?" "Oh yes, thank you."
- Who's **that**? (= Who is that person?)
- Which shoes do you like better – **these** or **those**?

} *without a noun*

C

that = something that *has happened*:

- "I'm sorry I forgot to call you." "**That**'s all right."
- **That** was a really nice meal. Thank you very much.

that = what somebody *has just said*:

- "You're a teacher, aren't you?" "Yes, **that**'s right."
- "Mark has a new job." "He does? I didn't know **that**."
- "I'm going on vacation next week." "Oh, **that**'s nice."

D

We use **this is** ... and **is this** ... **?** on the telephone:

- Hi Sarah, **this is** David.
  (**this** = the speaker)
- **Is this** Sarah?
  (**this** = the other person)

We use **this is** ... to introduce people:

- A: Bill, **this is** Chris.
  B: Hello, Chris. Nice to meet you.
  C: Hi.

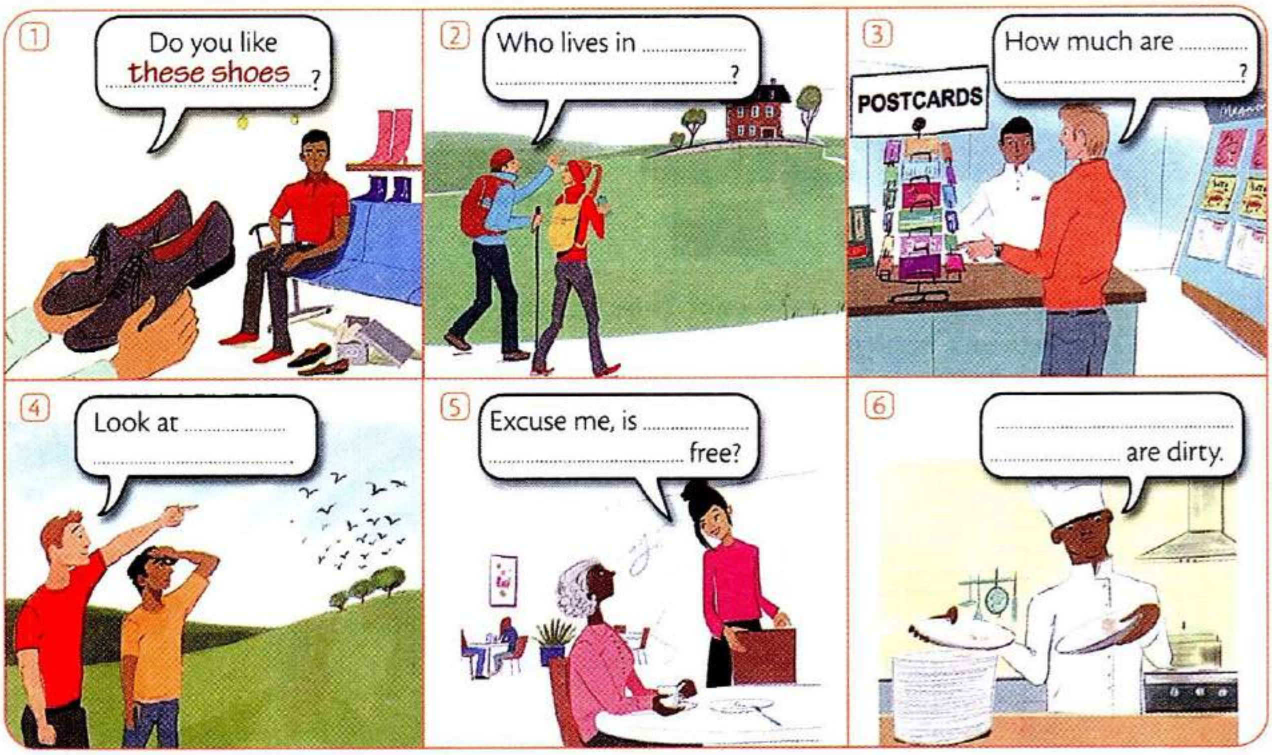
AMANDA BILL CHRIS

this one / that one ➜ **Unit 73**

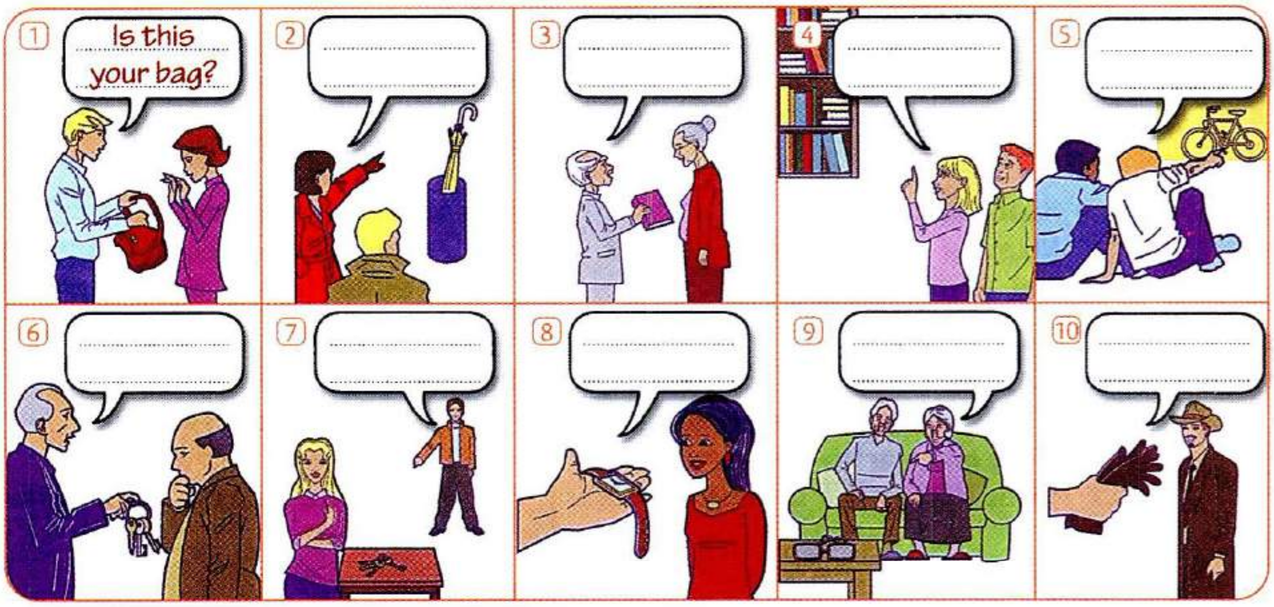
Exercises

72.1 Complete the sentences. Use **this/that/these/those** + these words:

birds **dishes** **house** **postcards** **seat** ~~**shoes**~~



72.2 Write questions: **Is this/that your . . . ?** or **Are these/those your . . . ?**



72.3 Complete the sentences with **this is** or **that's** or **that**.

1 A: I'm sorry I'm late.
B: ~~That's~~ That's ...... all right.

2 A: I can't come to the party tomorrow.
B: Oh, ... too bad. Why not?

3 *(on the phone)*
SUE: Hello, Jane. ...... Sue.
JANE: Oh, hi Sue. How are you?

4 A: You're lazy.
B: ...... not true!

5 A: Beth plays the piano very well.
B: Does she? I didn't know ....

6 *Mark meets Paul's sister, Helen.*
PAUL: Mark, ... my sister, Helen.
MARK: Hi, Helen.

7 A: I'm sorry I was angry yesterday.
B: ...... OK. Forget it!

8 A: You're a friend of Tom's, aren't you?
B: Yes, ... right.

one/ones

A one (= a . . .)

Would you like **one** ?

= Would you like **a chocolate** ?

one = **a/an** . . . (a chocolate / an apple, etc.)

- I need **a pen**. Do you have **one**? (**one** = **a pen**)
- A: Is there **a bank** near here?
  B: Yes, there's **one** on the corner. (**one** = **a bank**)

B one and ones

one (*singular*)

Which **one**? = Which **hat**?

one = **hat/car/girl**, etc.

this one / that one

- Which **car** is yours? **This one** or **that one**? (= this car or that car)

the one . . .

- A: Which **hotel** did you stay at?
  B: **The one** near the airport.
- I found this **key**. Is it **the one** you lost?

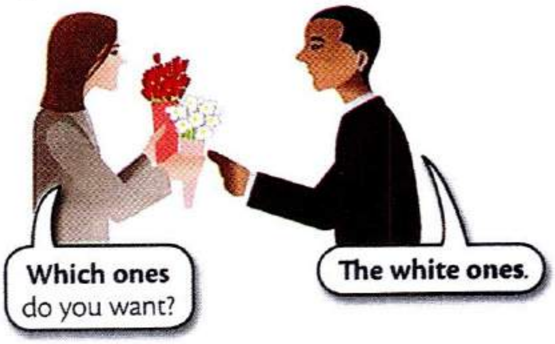
the . . . **one**

- I don't like the black **coat**, but I like **the brown one**.
- Don't buy that **camera**. Buy **the other one**.

a/an . . . **one**

- This **cup** is dirty. Can I have **a clean one**?
- That **cookie** was good. I'm going to have **another one**.

ones (*plural*)



Which **ones**? = Which **flowers**?

ones = **flowers/cars/girls**, etc.

these/those (*without* ones)

- Which **flowers** do you want? **These** or **those**? (*usually not* these ones or those ones)

the ones . . .

- A: Which **books** are yours?
  B: **The ones** on the table.
- I found these **keys**. Are they **the ones** you lost?

the . . . **ones**

- I don't like the red **shoes**, but I like **the green ones**.
- Don't buy those **apples**. Buy **the other ones**.

some . . . **ones**

- These **cups** are dirty. Can we have **some clean ones**?
- My **shoes** are very old. I'm going to buy **some new ones**.

which . . . ? → Unit 45 another → Unit 63 this/that, etc. → Unit 72

Exercises

73.1 A asks B some questions. Use the information in the box to write B's answers. Use **one** (not **a/an . . .**) in the answers.

B doesn't need a car	B just had a cup of coffee
there's a drugstore on First Avenue	B is going to get a bike
~~B doesn't have a pen~~	B doesn't have an umbrella

1 A: Can you lend me a pen? B: I'm sorry, *I don't have one*.
2 A: Would you like to have a car? B: No, I don't ....
3 A: Do you have a bike? B: No, but ....
4 A: Can you lend me an umbrella? B: I'm sorry, but ....
5 A: Would you like a cup of coffee? B: No, thank you. ....
6 A: Is there a drugstore near here? B: Yes, ...

73.2 Complete the sentences. Use **a/an . . . one**. Use the words in the list.

better big ~~clean~~ different new old

1 This cup is dirty. Can I have *a clean one*?
2 I'm going to sell my car and buy ....
3 That's not a very good picture. This is ....
4 I want today's newspaper. This is ....
5 This box is too small. I need ....
6 Why do we always go to the same restaurant? Let's go to ....

73.3 A is talking to B. Use the information to complete the conversations. Use **one/ones**.

1 *A stayed at a hotel. It was near the airport.*
A: We stayed at a hotel.
B: *Which one*?
A: *The one near the airport.*

2 *A sees some shoes in a store window. They're green.*
A: I like those shoes.
B: Which ....?
A: The ....

3 *A is looking at a house. It has a red door.*
A: That's a nice house.
B: ....?
A: .... with ....

4 *A is looking at some CDs. They're on the top shelf.*
A: Are those your CDs?
B: ....?
A: ....

5 *A is looking at a jacket in a store. It's black.*
A: Do you like that jacket?
B: ....?
A: ....

6 *A is looking at a picture. It's on the wall.*
A: That's an interesting picture.
B: ....?
A: ....

7 *A sees a girl in a group of people. She's tall with long hair.*
A: Do you know that girl?
B: ....?
A: ....

8 *A is looking at some flowers in the garden. They're yellow.*
A: Those flowers are beautiful.
B: ....?
A: ....

9 *A is looking at a man in a restaurant. He has a mustache and glasses.*
A: Who's that man?
B: ....?
A: ....

10 *A took some pictures at the party last week.*
A: Did I show you my pictures?
B: ....?
A: ....

some and any

www.irLanguage.com

A

some

Use **some** in *affirmative* sentences:

- I'm going to buy **some** clothes.
- There's **some** milk in the fridge.
- We made **some** mistakes.

any

Use **any** in *negative* sentences:

- I'm **not** going to buy **any** clothes.
- There **isn't any** milk in the fridge.
- We **didn't** make **any** mistakes.

B

any and **some** in questions

In most questions (but not all) we use **any** (*not* **some**):

- Is there **any** milk in the fridge?
- Does he have **any** friends?
- Do you need **any** help?

We normally use **some** (*not* **any**) when we *offer* things (**Would you like . . . ?**):

- A: Would you like **some** coffee?
  B: Yes, please.

or when we *ask* for things (**Can I have . . . ?**, etc.):

- A: Can I have **some** soup, please?
  B: Yes. Help yourself.
- A: Can you lend me **some** money?
  B: Sure. How much do you need?

C

some and **any** without a noun

- I didn't take any pictures, but Hannah took **some**. (= some pictures)
- You can have some coffee, but I don't want **any**. (= any coffee)
- I just made some coffee. Would you like **some**? (= some coffee)
- "Where's your luggage?" "I don't have **any**." (= any luggage)
- "Are there any cookies?" "Yes, there are **some** in the kitchen." (= some cookies)

D

something / **somebody** (*or* **someone**)

- She said **something**.
- I saw **somebody** (*or* **someone**).
- Would you like **something** to eat?
- **Somebody**'s at the door.

anything / **anybody** (*or* **anyone**)

- She **didn't** say **anything**.
- I **didn't** see **anybody** (*or* **anyone**).
- Are you doing **anything** tonight?
- Where's Sue? Has **anybody** seen her?

a and **some** ➜ **Unit 66** **somebody/anything**, etc. ➜ **Unit 77**

Exercises

74.1 Write **some** or **any**.

1 I bought ...*some*... cheese, but I didn't buy ...*any*... bread.
2 In the middle of the room, there was a table and .... chairs.
3 There aren't .... gas stations in this part of town.
4 Michael and Emily don't have .... children.
5 Do you have .... brothers or sisters?
6 There are .... beautiful flowers in the garden.
7 Do you know .... good hotels in Miami?
8 "Would you like .... tea?" "Yes, please."
9 When we were on vacation, we visited .... interesting places.
10 Don't buy .... rice. We don't need ....
11 I went out to buy .... bananas, but they didn't have .... at the store.
12 I'm thirsty. Can I have .... water, please?

74.2 Complete the sentences. Use **some** or **any** + the words in the box.

air	**friends**	**help**	**milk**	**questions**
batteries	**fruit**	**languages**	**pictures**	~~**shampoo**~~

1 I want to wash my hair. Is there ...*any shampoo*... ?
2 The police want to talk to you. They want to ask you ....
3 I had my camera, but I didn't take ....
4 Do you speak .... foreign .... ?
5 Last night I went to a restaurant with .... of mine.
6 Can I have .... in my coffee, please?
7 This camera isn't working. There aren't .... in it.
8 It's hot in this office. I'm going out for .... fresh ....
9 A: Would you like .... ?
B: No, thank you. I've had enough to eat.
10 I can do this job alone. I don't need ....

74.3 Complete the sentences. Use **some** or **any**.

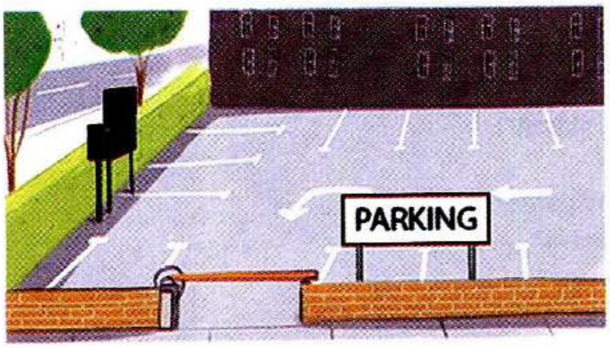
1 Samantha didn't take any pictures, but ...*I took some*... . (I/take)
2 "Where's your luggage?" "...*I don't have any*... ." (I/not/have)
3 "Do you need any money?" "No, thank you. ...." (I/have)
4 "Can you lend me some money?" "I'm sorry, but ...." (I/not/have)
5 The tomatoes at the store didn't look very good, so .... (I/not/buy)
6 There were some nice oranges at the store, so .... (I/buy)
7 "How much coffee did you drink yesterday?" ".................... ." (I/not/drink)

74.4 Write **something/somebody** or **anything/anybody**.

1 A woman stopped me and said ...*something*..., but I didn't understand.
2 "What's wrong?" "There's .... in my eye."
3 Do you know .... about politics?
4 I went to the store, but I didn't buy ....
5 .... broke the window. I don't know who.
6 There isn't .... in the bag. It's empty.
7 I'm looking for my keys. Did .... see them?
8 Would you like .... to drink?
9 I didn't eat .... because I wasn't hungry.
10 This is a secret. Please don't tell ....

not + any no none

A



The parking lot is empty.

There are**n't any** cars / There are **no** cars } in the parking lot.

How many cars are there in the parking lot?
None.

not (-n't) + any

- There are**n't any** cars in the parking lot.
- Tracey and Jeff do**n't** have **any** children.
- You can have some coffee, but I do**n't** want **any**.

no + *noun* (**no cars / no garage**, etc.) = **not any** . . . *or* **not a** . . .

- There are **no cars** in the parking lot. (= there are**n't any** cars)
- We have **no coffee**. (= we do**n't** have **any** coffee)
- It's a nice house, but there's **no garage**. (= there is**n't a** garage)

We use **no** . . . especially after **have/has** and **there is/are**.

negative verb + **any** = *affirmative verb* + **no**

- They **don't** have **any** children. *or* They **have no** children.
  (*not* They don't have no children)
- There **isn't any** sugar in your coffee. *or* There**'s no** sugar in your coffee.

B

no and **none**

Use **no** + *noun* (**no money / no children**, etc.):

- We have **no money**.
- Everything was OK. There were **no problems**.

Use **none** alone (*without* a noun):

- "How much money do you have?" "**None.**" (= no money)
- "Were there any problems?" "No, **none.**" (= no problems)

C

none and **no one**

none = 0 (zero)
no one = nobody

None is an answer for **How much**? / **How many**? (things or people):

- A: **How much** money do you have?
  B: **None**. (= no money)
- A: **How many** people did you meet?
  B: **None**. (= no people)

No one is an answer for **Who**?:

- A: **Who** did you meet?
  B: **No one**. (*or* **Nobody**.)

مرجع آموزش زبان ایرانیان
www.IR.com
irLanguage.com

negatives ➜ Unit 41 some and any ➜ Unit 74 anybody/nobody/nothing, etc. ➜ Units 76–77

Exercises

75.1 Write these sentences again with **no**.

1 We don't have any money. — *We have no money.*
2 There aren't any stores near here. — There are ....
3 Sofia doesn't have any free time. — ....
4 There isn't a light in this room. — ....

Write these sentences again with **any**.

5 We have no money. — *We don't have any money.*
6 There's no milk in the fridge. — ....
7 There are no buses today. — ....
8 Tom has no brothers or sisters. — ....

75.2 Write **no** or **any**.

1 There's *no* sugar in your coffee.
2 My brother is married, but he doesn't have .... children.
3 Sue doesn't speak .... foreign languages.
4 I'm afraid there's .... coffee. Would you like some tea?
5 "Look at those birds!" "Birds? Where? I can't see .... birds."
6 "Do you know where Jessica is?" "No, I have .... idea."

Write **no**, **any**, or **none**.

7 There aren't .... pictures on the wall.
8 The weather was cold, but there was .... wind.
9 I wanted to buy some oranges, but they didn't have .... at the store.
10 Everything was correct. There were .... mistakes.
11 "How much luggage do you have?" ".........."
12 "How much luggage do you have?" "I don't have ...."

75.3 Complete the sentences. Use **any** or **no** + the words in the box.

difference	**furniture**	**idea**	**money**	**questions**
friends	**heating**	**line**	~~**problems**~~	

1 Everything was OK. There were *no problems*.
2 Jack and Emily would like to take a vacation, but they have ....
3 I'm not going to answer ....
4 He's always alone. He has ....
5 There is .... between these two machines. They're exactly the same.
6 There wasn't .... in the room. It was completely empty.
7 "Do you know how the accident happened?" "No. I have ...."
8 The house is cold because there isn't ....
9 We didn't have to wait to get our train tickets. There was ....

75.4 Write short answers (one or two words) to these questions. Use **none** where necessary.

1 How many letters did you write yesterday? — *Two.* or *A lot.* or *None.*
2 How many sisters do you have? — ....
3 How much coffee did you drink yesterday? — ....
4 How many pictures have you taken today? — ....
5 How many legs does a snake have? — ....

Unit 76 not + anybody/anyone/anything nobody/no one/nothing

A

not + anybody/anyone
nobody / no one
(for *people*)

- There **isn't** {**anybody** / **anyone**} in the room.
- There **is** {**nobody** / **no one**} in the room.
- A: **Who** is in the room?
  B: **Nobody**. / **No one**.

-body and **-one** are the same:
any**body** = any**one**   no**body** = no **one**

not + anything
nothing
(for *things*)

- There **isn't anything** in the bag.
- There **is nothing** in the bag.
- A: **What's** in the bag?
  B: **Nothing**.

B

not + anybody/anyone
- I do**n't** know **anybody** (*or* **anyone**) here.

nobody = **not** + **anybody**
no one = **not** + **anyone**
- I'm lonely. I have **nobody** to talk to. (= I do**n't** have **anybody**)
- The house is empty. There is **no one** in it. (= There is**n't anyone** in it.)

not + anything
- I ca**n't** remember **anything**.

nothing = **not** + **anything**
- She said **nothing**. (= She did**n't** say **anything**.)
- There's **nothing** to eat. (= There is**n't anything** to eat.)

C

You can use **nobody/no one/nothing** at the beginning of a sentence or alone (to answer a question):

- The house is empty. **Nobody** lives there.
- "Who did you speak to?" "**No one**."
- **Nothing** happened.
- "What did you say?" "**Nothing**."

D

Remember: *negative verb* + **anybody/anyone/anything**
affirmative verb + **nobody/no one/nothing**

- He does**n't** know **anything**. (*not* He doesn't know nothing)
- Do**n't** tell **anybody**. (*not* Don't tell nobody)
- There **is nothing** to do in this town. (*not* There isn't nothing)

some and **any** → **Unit 74** **any** and **no** → **Unit 75** **somebody/anything/nowhere**, etc. → **Unit 77**

Exercises

76.1 Write these sentences again with **nobody/no one** or **nothing.**

1 There isn't anything in the bag. *There's nothing in the bag.*
2 There isn't anybody in the office. There's ……
3 I don't have anything to do. I ……
4 There isn't anything on TV. ……
5 There wasn't anyone at home. ……
6 We didn't find anything. ……

76.2 Write these sentences again with **anybody/anyone** or **anything.**

1 There's nothing in the bag. *There isn't anything in the bag.*
2 There was nobody on the bus. There wasn't ……
3 I have nothing to read. ……
4 I have no one to help me. ……
5 She heard nothing. ……
6 We have nothing for dinner. ……

76.3 Answer these questions with **nobody/no one** or **nothing.**

1a What did you say? *Nothing.*
2a Who saw you? *Nobody.*
3a What do you want? ……
4a Who did you meet? ……
5a Who knows the answer? ……
6a What did you buy? ……
7a What happened? ……
8a Who was late? ……

Now answer the same questions with complete sentences.
Use nobody/no one/nothing or anybody/anyone/anything:

1b *I didn't say anything.*
2b *Nobody saw me.*
3b I don't ……
4b I ……
5b …… the answer.
6b ……
7b ……
8b ……

76.4 Complete the sentences. Use:

nobody/no one/nothing or **anybody/anyone/anything**

1 That house is empty. *Nobody* lives there.
2 Jack has a bad memory. He can't remember *anything* .
3 Be quiet! Don't say …… .
4 I didn't know about the meeting. …… told me.
5 "What did you have to eat?" " …… . I wasn't hungry."
6 I didn't eat …… . I wasn't hungry.
7 Emily was sitting alone. She wasn't with …… .
8 I'm sorry, I can't help you. There's …… I can do.
9 I don't know …… about car engines.
10 The museum is free. It doesn't cost …… to go in.
11 I heard a knock at the door, but when I opened it, there was …… there.
12 Antonio spoke very fast. I didn't understand …… .
13 "What are you doing tonight?" " …… . Why?"
14 Olivia is out of town. …… knows where she is. She didn't tell …… where she was going.

somebody/anything/nowhere, etc.

A

Somebody (or **Someone**) broke the window.

somebody/someone = a person, but we don't know who

She has **something** in her mouth.

something = a thing, but we don't know what

Tom lives **somewhere** near Chicago.

somewhere = in/to a place, but we don't know where

B

People (**-body** *or* **-one**)

somebody *or* **someone**	There is **somebody** (*or* **someone**) at the door.
anybody *or* **anyone**	Is there **anybody** (*or* **anyone**) at the door?
	There isn't **anybody** (*or* **anyone**) at the door.
nobody *or* **no one**	There is **nobody** (*or* **no one**) at the door.

-body and **-one** are the same: **somebody** = **someone**, **nobody** = **no one**, etc.

Things (**-thing**)

something	Sarah said **something**, but I didn't understand what she said.
anything	Are you doing **anything** this weekend?
	I was angry, but I did**n't** say **anything**.
nothing	"What did you say?" "**Nothing**."

Places (**-where**)

somewhere	Megan's parents live **somewhere** in Southern California.
anywhere	Did you go **anywhere** last weekend?
	I'm staying here. I'm **not** going **anywhere**.
nowhere	I don't like this town. There is **nowhere** to go.

C

something/anybody, etc. + *adjective* (**big/cheap/interesting**, etc.)

- Did you meet **anybody interesting** at the party?
- We always go to the same place. Let's go **somewhere different**.
- "What's in that letter?" "It's **nothing important**."

D

something/anybody, etc. + **to** . . .

- I'm hungry. I want **something to eat**. (= something that I can eat)
- Tony doesn't have **anybody to talk** to. (= anybody that he can talk to)
- There is **nowhere to go** in this town. (= nowhere where people can go)

some and **any** → **Unit 74** **any** and **no** → **Unit 75** **anybody/nothing**, etc. → **Unit 76**
everything/-body/-where → **Unit 78**

Exercises

77.1 Write **somebody** (or **someone**) / **something** / **somewhere**.

1	Michelle said *something*.	What did she say?
2	I lost	What did you lose?
3	Sue and Tom went	Where did they go?
4	I'm going to call	Who are you going to call?

77.2 Write **nobody** (or **no one**) / **nothing** / **nowhere**.

1a	What did you say?	*Nothing.*
2a	Where are you going?	....
3a	What do you want?	....
4a	Who are you looking for?	....

Now answer the same questions with complete sentences.
Use **not** + **anybody**/**anything**/**anywhere**.

1b *I didn't say anything.*
2b I'm not ....
3b ....
4b ....

77.3 Write **somebody**/**anything**/**nowhere**, etc.

1 It's dark. I can't see *anything*.
2 Tom lives *somewhere* near Chicago.
3 Do you know .... about computers?
4 "Listen!" "What? I can't hear ...."
5 "What are you doing here?" "I'm waiting for ...."
6 We need to talk. There's .... I want to tell you.
7 "Did .... see the accident?" "No, ..."
8 We weren't hungry, so we didn't eat ....
9 "What's going to happen?" "I don't know. .... knows."
10 "Do you know .... in Tokyo?" "Yes, a few people."
11 "What's in that suitcase?" ".......... . It's empty."
12 I'm looking for my glasses. I can't find them ....
13 I don't like cold weather. I want to live .... warm.
14 Is there .... interesting on TV tonight?
15 Have you ever met .... famous?

77.4 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

something	**anything**	**nothing**
something	**anywhere**	~~**nowhere**~~
somewhere		**nowhere**

do	**eat**	**park**	**sit**
drink	~~**go**~~	**read**	**stay**

1 We don't go out very much because there's *nowhere to go*.
2 There isn't any food in the house. We don't have ....
3 I'm bored. I have ....
4 "Why are you standing?" "Because there isn't ...."
5 "Would you like ....?" "Yes, please – a glass of water."
6 If you're going downtown, take the bus. Don't drive because there's
....
7 I want .... I'm going to buy a magazine.
8 I need .... in Seoul. Can you recommend a hotel?

Unit 78 every and all

A every

Every house on the street is the same.

every house on the street = **all the houses** on the street

We use **every** + *singular noun* (**every house / every country**, etc.):

- Sarah has been to **every country** in Europe.
- **Every summer** we take a vacation at the beach.
- She looks different **every time** I see her.

Use a *singular verb* after **every** . . . :

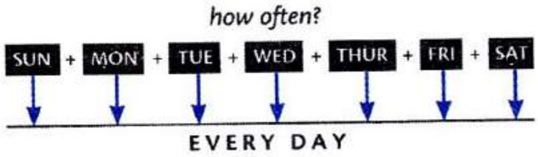
- **Every house** on the street **is** the same. (*not* are the same)
- **Every country has** a national flag. (*not* have)

Compare **every** and **all**:

Every student in the class passed the exam.	**All the students** in the class passed the exam.
Every country has a national flag.	**All countries have** a national flag.

B every day and all day

every day = on all days:



- It rained **every day** last week.
- Bill watches TV for about two hours **every night**. (= on all nights)

also **every morning/week/summer**, etc.

all day = the complete day:

- It rained **all day** yesterday.
- On Monday, I watched TV **all night**. (= the whole night)

also all **morning/week/summer**, etc.

C everybody (*or* everyone) / everything / everywhere

everybody or **everyone** *(people)*	**Everybody** (*or* **Everyone**) needs friends. (= all people need friends)
everything *(things)*	Do you have **everything** you need? (= all the things you need)
everywhere *(places)*	I lost my watch. I've looked **everywhere** for it. (= I've looked in all places)

Use a *singular verb* after **everybody/everyone/everything**:

- **Everybody has** problems. (*not* Everybody have)

all → Unit 79

Exercises

78.1 Complete the sentences. Use **every** + these words:

day room ~~student~~ time word

1. *Every student* in the class passed the exam.
2. My job is very boring. .... is the same.
3. Kate is a very good chess player. When we play, she wins ....
4. .... in the hotel has free Wi-Fi.
5. "Did you understand what she said?" "Most of it, but not ...."

78.2 Complete the sentences with **every day** or **all day**.

1. Yesterday it rained *all day* .
2. I buy a newspaper ...., but sometimes I don't read it.
3. I'm not going out tomorrow. I'll be home ....
4. I usually drink about four cups of coffee ....
5. Paula was sick yesterday, so she stayed in bed ....
6. I'm tired now because I've been working hard ....
7. Last year we went to the beach for a week, and it rained ....

78.3 Write **every** or **all**.

1. Bill watches TV for about two hours *every* night.
2. Julia gets up at 6:30 .... morning.
3. The weather was nice yesterday, so we sat outside .... afternoon.
4. I'm leaving town on Monday. I'll be away .... week.
5. A: How often do you go skiing?
   B: .... year. Usually in March.
6. A: Were you home at 10:00 yesterday?
   B: Yes, I was home .... morning. I went out after lunch.
7. My sister loves new cars. She buys one .... year.
8. I saw Sam at the party, but he didn't speak to me .... night.
9. We take a vacation for two or three weeks .... summer.

78.4 Write **everybody/everything/everywhere**.

1. *Everybody* needs friends.
2. Chris knows .... about computers.
3. I like the people here. .... is very friendly.
4. This is a nice hotel. It's comfortable, and .... is very clean.
5. Kevin never uses his car. He goes .... on his motorcycle.
6. Let's have dinner. .... is hungry.
7. Sue's house is full of books. There are books ....
8. You are right. .... you say is true.

78.5 Complete the sentences. Use only one word each time.

1. Everybody *has* problems.
2. Are you ready yet? Everybody .... waiting for you.
3. The house is empty. Everyone .... moved out.
4. Josh is very popular. Everybody .... him.
5. This town is completely different now. Everything .... changed.
6. I got home very late last night. I came in quietly because everyone .... asleep.
7. Everybody .... mistakes!
8. A: .... everything clear? .... everybody know what to do?
   B: Yes, we all understand.

all most some any no/none

A

Compare:

children/money/books, etc. (in general)

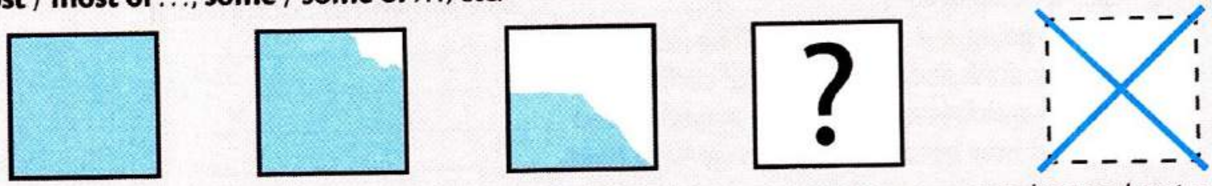
- **Children** like to play. (= children in general)
- **Money** isn't everything. (= money in general)
- I enjoy reading **books**.
- Everybody needs **friends**.

the children / **the** money / **these** books, etc.

- Where are **the children**? (= our children)
- I want to buy a car, but I don't have **the money**. (= the money for a car)
- Have you read **these books**?
- I often go out with **my friends**.

B

most / most of . . ., some / some of . . ., etc.



all **most** **some** **any** **no / none / not + any**

most/some, etc. + noun

all **most** **some** **any** **no**	~~**of**~~	**cities** **children** **books** **money**

- **Most children** like to play. (= children in general)
- I don't want **any money**.
- **Some books** are better than others.
- He has **no friends**.
- **All cities** have the same problems. (= cities in general)

Do not use **of** in these sentences:

- **Most people** drive too fast. (*not* Most of people)
- **Some birds** can't fly. (*not* Some of birds)

most of / some of, etc. + **the/this/my** . . ., etc.

all	**(of)**	**the** . . . **this/that** . . . **these/those** . . . **my/your** . . ., etc.
most **some** **any** **none**	**of**	

- **Most of the children at this school** are under 11 years old.
- I don't want **any of this money**.
- **Some of these books** are very old.
- **None of my friends** live near me.

You can say **all the** . . . or **all of the** (with or without **of**):

- **All the students in our class** passed the exam. (*or* **All of the students** . . .)
- Ana has lived in Miami **all her life**. (*or* . . . **all of her life**.)

C

all of it / most of them / none of us, etc.

all **most** **some** **any** **none**	**of**	**it** **them** **us** **you**

- You can have **some of this cake**, but not **all of it**.
- A: Do you know those people?
  B: **Most of them**, but not **all of them**.
- **Some of us** are going out tonight. Why don't you come with us?
- I have a lot of books, but I haven't read **any of them**.
- "How many of these books have you read?" **"None of them."**

the . . . (**children** / **the children**, etc.) ➜ **Unit 70** **some** and **any** ➜ **Unit 74** **no/none/any** ➜ **Unit 75**
all and **every** ➜ **Unit 78**

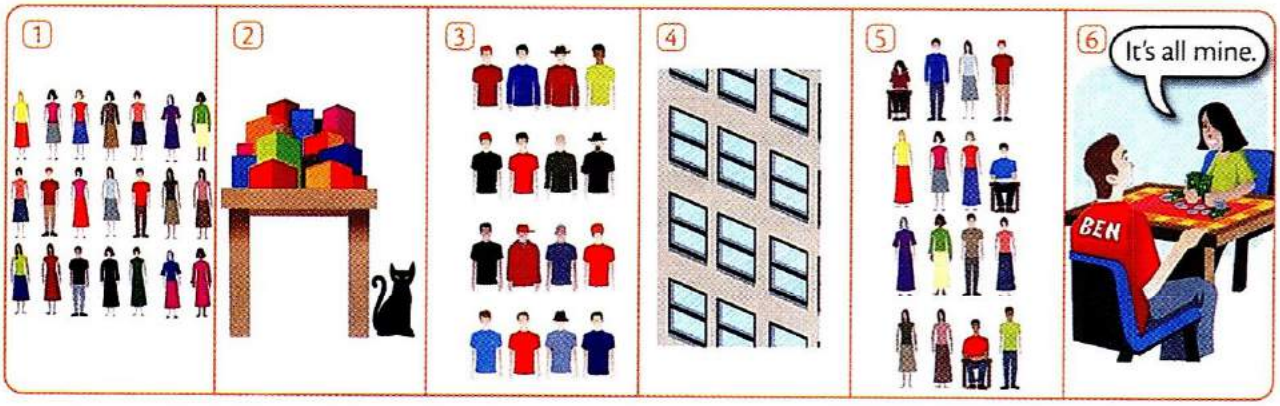
Exercises

79.1 Complete the sentences. Use the word in parentheses (**some/most**, etc.). Sometimes you need **of** (**some of / most of**, etc.).

1 ....Most.... children like to play. (most)
2 ....Some of.... this money is yours. (some)
3 .... people never stop talking. (some)
4 .... the stores downtown close at 6:00. (most)
5 .... people have cell phones these days. (most)
6 I don't like .... the pictures in the living room. (any)
7 He lost .... his money. (all)
8 .... my friends are married. (none)
9 Do you know .... the people in this picture? (any)
10 .... birds can fly. (most)
11 I enjoyed .... the movie, but I didn't like the ending. (most)
12 .... sports are very dangerous. (some)
13 We can't find anywhere to stay. .... the hotels are full. (all)
14 Try .... this cheese. It's delicious. (some)
15 The weather was bad when we were on vacation. It rained .... the time. (most)

79.2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use:

all/most/some/none + **of them / of it**



1 How many of the people are women? ....Most of them....
2 How many of the boxes are on the table? ....
3 How many of the men are wearing hats? ....
4 How many of the windows are open? ....
5 How many of the people are standing? ....
6 How much of the money is Ben's? ....

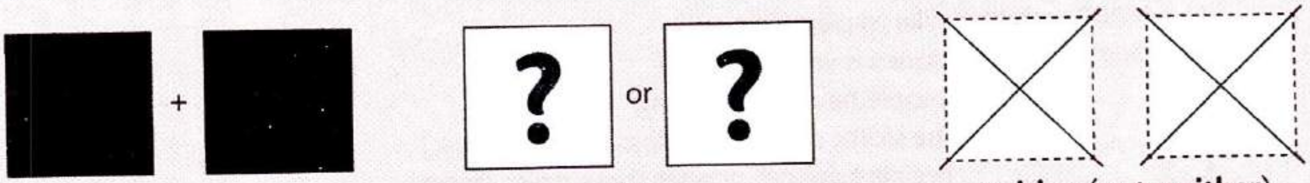
79.3 Are these sentences OK? Correct the sentences that are wrong.

1 Most of children like to play. ....Most children....
2 All the students failed the test. ....OK....
3 Some of people work too hard. ....
4 Some of questions on the exam were very easy. ....
5 I haven't seen any of those people before. ....
6 All of insects have six legs. ....
7 Have you read all these books? ....
8 Most of students in our class are very nice. ....
9 Most of my friends are going to the party. ....
10 I'm very tired this morning – I was awake most of night. ....

both either neither

A

We use **both/either/neither** to talk about two things or people:



both **either** **neither (not + either)**

- Rebecca has two children. **Both** are married. (**both** = the two children)
- Would you like tea or coffee? You can have **either**. (**either** = tea or coffee)
- A: Do you want to go to the movies or the theater?
  B: **Neither**. I want to stay home. (**neither** = not the movies or the theater)

Compare **either** and **neither**:

- "Would you like **tea** or **coffee**?"
  - "**Either**. It doesn't matter." (= tea or coffee)
  - "I **don't** want **either**." (*not* I don't want neither)
  - "**Neither**." (= not tea or coffee)

B

both/either/neither + *noun*

both + *plural*
either / **neither** + *singular*

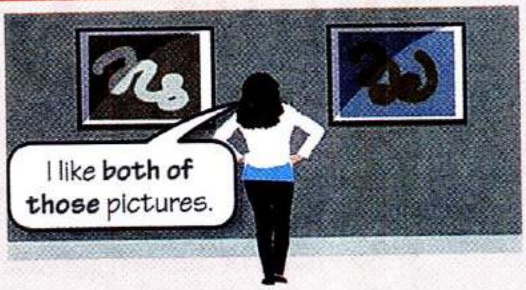
both	**windows/books/children**, etc.
either **neither**	**window/book/child**, etc.

- Last year I went to Miami and Seattle. I liked **both cities** very much.
- First I worked in an office, and later in a store. **Neither job** was very interesting.
- There are two ways to get to the airport. You can go **either way**.

C

both of . . . / either of . . . / neither of . . .

both	(**of**)	**the** . . .
either **neither**	**of**	**these/those** . . . **my/your/Paul's** . . ., etc.



- **Neither of my parents** is Canadian.
- I **haven't** read **either of these books**.

You can say **both of the/those/my** . . . or **both the/those/my** . . . (with or without **of**):

- I like **both of** those pictures. *or*
  I like **both** those pictures.
- **Both of** Paul's sisters are married. *or*
  Both Paul's sisters are married.

but **Neither of** Paul's sisters is married. (*not* Neither Paul's sisters)

D

both of them / neither of us

both **either** **neither**	**of**	**them** **us** **you**

- Paul has two sisters. **Both of them** are married.
- Sue and I didn't eat anything. **Neither of us** was hungry.
- Who are those two people? I **don't** know **either of them**.

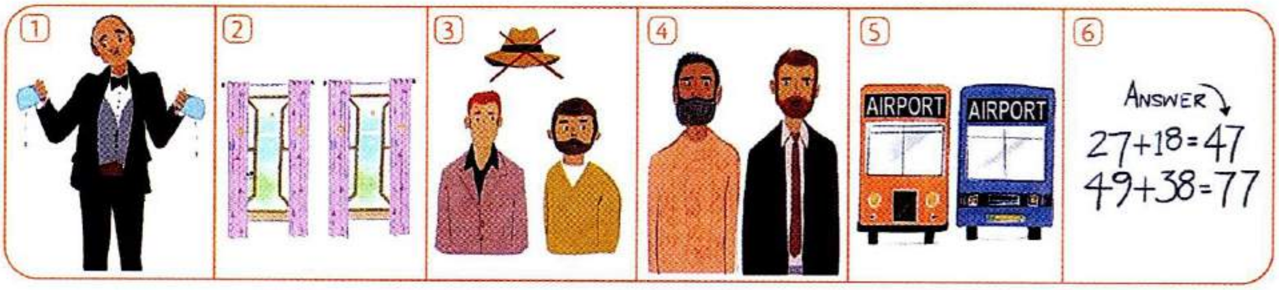
I can't either / neither can I → Unit 40

Exercises

80.1 Write **both**/**either**/**neither**. Use **of** where necessary.

1 Last year I went to Miami and Seattle. I liked ...*both*... cities very much.
2 There were two pictures on the wall. I didn't like ...*either of*... them.
3 It was a good football game. .... teams played well.
4 It wasn't a good football game. .... team played well.
5 "Is your friend Canadian or American?" " .... She's Australian."
6 We went away for two days, but the weather was bad. It rained .... days.
7 A: I bought two newspapers. Which one do you want?
B: .... It doesn't matter which one.
8 I invited Jessica and Mike to the party, but .... them came.
9 "Do you go to work by car or by bus?" " .... I always walk."
10 "Which jacket do you prefer, this one or that one?" "I don't like .... them."
11 "Do you work, or are you a student?" " .... I work, and I'm a student, too."
12 My friend and I went to see a movie, but .... us liked it. It was really bad.
13 Emily has two sisters and a brother. .... sisters are married.
14 Emily has two sisters and a brother. I know her brother, but I haven't met .... her sisters.

80.2 Complete the sentences for the pictures. Use **Both . . .** and **Neither . . . .**



1 ...*Both cups are*... empty.
2 .... are open.
3 .... wearing a hat.
4 .... beards.
5 .... to the airport.
6 .... right.

80.3 A man and a woman answered some questions. Their answers were the same. Write sentences with **Both**/**Neither of them . . . .**

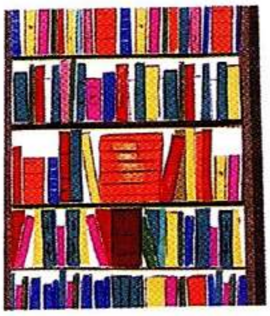
1 Are you married?	No	No	1 *Neither of them is married.*
2 How old are you?	21	21	2 *Both of them are 21.*
3 Are you a student?	Yes	Yes	3 .... students.
4 Do you have a car?	No	No	4 .... a car.
5 Where do you live?	Boston	Boston	5 ....
6 Do you like to cook?	Yes	Yes	6 ....
7 Can you play the piano?	No	No	7 ....
8 Do you eat seafood?	Yes	Yes	8 ....
9 Are you interested in sports?	No	No	9 ....

a lot much many

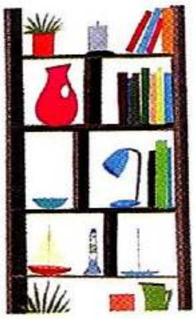
A

a lot of money

not much money



a lot of books



not many books

We use **much** + *noncount noun* (**much food** / **much money**, etc.):

- Did you buy **much food**?
- We don't have **much luggage**.
- How **much money** do you want?
- A: Do you have any **money**?
  B: I have some, but **not much**.

We use **many** + *plural noun* (**many books** / **many people**, etc.):

- Did you buy **many books**?
- We don't know **many people**.
- How **many photos** did you take?
- A: Did you take any **photos**?
  B: I took some, but **not many**.

We use **a lot of** + *both types of noun*:

- We bought **a lot of food**.
- Paula doesn't have **a lot of** free **time**.
- We bought **a lot of books**.
- Did they ask **a lot of questions**?

We say:

- There **is** a lot of **food/money/water** . . . (*singular verb*)
- There **are** a lot of **trees/stores/people** . . . (*plural verb*)
- A lot of **people speak** English. (*not* speaks)

B

Much and **many** are more usual in *questions* and *negative sentences*:

- Do you drink **much coffee**?
- I don't drink **much coffee**.
- Do you have **many friends**?
- We don't have **many friends**.

We use **a lot of** in all types of sentences (*affirmative, negative, questions*):

- I drink **a lot of coffee**.
- We don't have **a lot of friends**.
- Do you know **a lot of people**?

Much is especially unusual in *affirmative sentences*:

- I eat **a lot of** fruit. (*not* much fruit)
- "Do you eat much fruit?" "Yes, **a lot**."

C

You can use **much** and **a lot** without a noun:

- Rachel spoke to me, but she didn't say **much**.
- "Do you watch TV **much**?" "No, **not much**." (= not often)
- We like movies, so we go to the movies **a lot**. (*not* go to the movies much)
- I don't like him very **much**.

count/noncount ➜ **Units 65–66**

Exercises

81.1 Write **much** or **many**.

1 Did you buy ......much...... food?
2 There aren't .... hotels in this town.
3 We don't have .... gas. We need to stop and get some.
4 Were there .... people on the train?
5 Did .... students fail the exam?
6 Samantha doesn't have .... money.
7 I wasn't hungry, so I didn't eat ....
8 I don't know where Eric lives these days. I haven't seen him for .... years.

Write **How much** or **How many**.

9 .... people are coming to the party?
10 .... milk should I get at the store?
11 .... bread did you buy?
12 .... players are there on a football team?

81.2 Complete the sentences. Use **much** or **many** with these words:

~~books~~	countries	luggage	people	time	times

1 I don't read very much. I don't have ......many books...... .
2 Hurry up! We don't have ....
3 Do you travel a lot? Have you been to .... ?
4 Hannah hasn't lived here very long, so she doesn't know ....
5 "Do you have ....?" "No, only this bag."
6 I don't know New York very well. I haven't been there ....

81.3 Complete the sentences. Use **a lot of** + these words:

accidents	~~books~~	fun	interesting things	traffic

1 I like reading. I have ......a lot of books...... .
2 We enjoyed our visit to the museum. We saw ....
3 This road is very dangerous. There are ....
4 We enjoyed our vacation. We had ....
5 It took me a long time to drive here. There was ....

81.4 In some of these sentences **much** is not natural. Change the sentences or write *OK*.

1 Do you drink much coffee? ......OK......
2 I drink much tea. ......a lot of tea......
3 It was a cold winter. We had much snow. ....
4 There wasn't much snow last winter. ....
5 It costs much money to travel around the world. ....
6 This pen was cheap. It didn't cost much. ....
7 Do you know much about computers? ....
8 "Do you have any luggage?" "Yes, much." ....

81.5 Write sentences about these people. Use **much** and **a lot**.

1 Jake loves movies. (go to the movies) ......He goes to the movies a lot......
2 Nicole thinks TV is boring. (watch TV) ......She doesn't watch TV much......
3 Lauren is a good tennis player. (play tennis) She ....
4 Nick doesn't like to drive. (use his car) He ....
5 Matt spends most of the time at home. (go out) ....
6 Sue has been all over the world. (travel) ....

Unit 82 (a) little (a) few

A

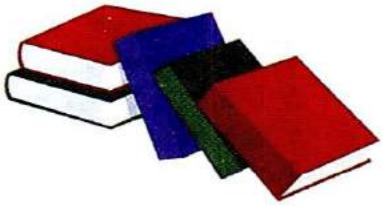
(**a**) **little** + *uncountable noun*:

(**a**) **little water**
(**a**) **little time**
(**a**) **little money**
(**a**) **little soup**

a little water

(**a**) **few** + *plural noun*:

(**a**) **few books**
(**a**) **few questions**
(**a**) **few people**
(**a**) **few days**



a few books

B

a little = some but not much

- She didn't eat anything, but she drank **a little water**.
- I speak **a little Spanish**. (= some Spanish but not much)
- A: Can you speak Spanish?
  B: **A little**.

a few = some but not many

- Excuse me, I have to make **a few phone calls**.
- We're going away for **a few days**.
- I speak **a few words** of Spanish.
- A: Do you have any stamps?
  B: Yes, **a few**. Do you want one?

C

~~a~~ **little** (without **a**) = almost no *or* almost nothing

- There was **little food** in the fridge. It was almost empty.

You can say **very little**:

- Dan is very thin because he eats **very little**. (= almost nothing)

~~a~~ **few** (without **a**) = almost no

- There were **few people** in the theater. It was almost empty.

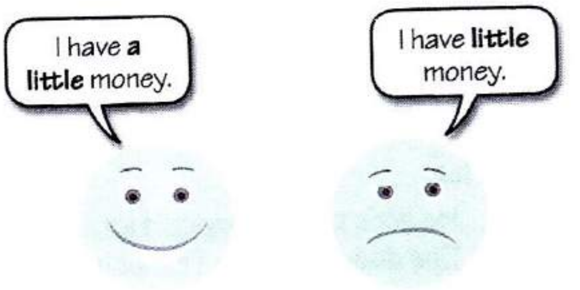
You can say **very few**:

- Your English is very good. You make **very few** mistakes.

D

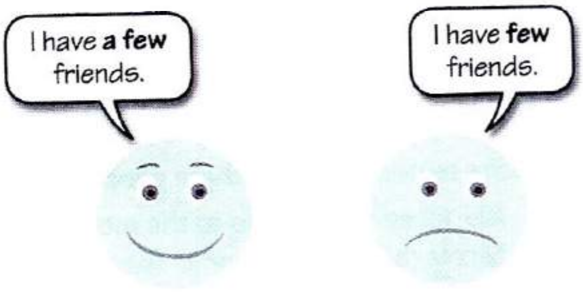
Compare **little** and **a little**:

- They have **a little** money, so they're not poor. (= they have some money)
- They have **little** money. They are very poor. (= almost no money)



Compare **few** and **a few**:

- I have **a few** friends, so I'm not lonely. (= I have some friends)
- I'm sad and I'm lonely. I have **few** friends. (= almost no friends)



count/noncount ➜ **Units 65–66**

Exercises

82.1 Answer the questions with **a little** or **a few**.

1 "Do you have any money?" "Yes, ...a little... ."
2 "Do you have any envelopes?" "Yes, ..."
3 "Do you want sugar in your coffee?" "Yes, ..., please."
4 "Did you take any pictures when you were on vacation?" "Yes, ..."
5 "Does your friend speak English?" "Yes, ..."
6 "Are there any good restaurants in this town?" "Yes, ..."

82.2 Write **a little** or **a few** + these words:

chairs **days** **fresh air** **friends** **milk** **Russian** **times** ~~**years**~~

1 Mike speaks Italian well. He lived in Italy for ...a few years... .
2 Can I have .... in my coffee, please?
3 "When did Julia leave?" ".................... ago."
4 "Do you speak any foreign languages?" "I can speak ...."
5 "Are you going out alone?" "No, I'm going with ...."
6 "Have you ever been to Mexico?" "Yes, ..."
7 There wasn't much furniture in the room – just a table and ....
8 I'm going out for a walk. I need ....

82.3 Complete the sentences. Use **very little** or **very few** + these words:

coffee **hotels** ~~**mistakes**~~ **people** **rain** **time** **work**

1 Your English is very good. You make ...very few mistakes... .
2 I drink .... I prefer tea.
3 The weather here is very dry in the summer. There is ....
4 It's difficult to find a place to stay in this town. There are ....
5 Hurry up! We've got ....
6 The town is very quiet at night. .... go out.
7 Some people in the office are very lazy. They do ....

82.4 Write **little** / **a little** or **few** / **a few**.

1 There was ...little... food in the fridge. It was almost empty.
2 "When did Sarah go out?" ".................... minutes ago."
3 I can't decide now. I need .... time to think about it.
4 There was .... traffic, so we arrived earlier than we expected.
5 The bus service isn't very good at night – there are .... buses after 9:00.
6 "Would you like some soup?" "Yes, ..., please."
7 I'd like to practice my English more, but I have .... opportunities.

82.5 Right or wrong? Change the sentences where necessary. Write *OK* if the sentence is correct.

1 We're going away for few days next week. ...for a few days...
2 Everybody needs little luck. ....
3 I can't talk to you now – I have few things to do. ....
4 I eat very little meat – I don't like it very much. ....
5 Excuse me, can I ask you few questions? ....
6 There were little people on the bus – it was almost empty. ....
7 Daniel is a very private person. Few people know him well. ....

Unit 83 old/nice/interesting, etc. (adjectives)

A

Adjective + *noun* (**nice day** / **blue eyes**, etc.)

	adjective + *noun*
It's a **nice**	**day** today.
Jessica has **brown**	**eyes**.
There's a very **old**	**church** in this town.
Do you like **Italian**	**food**?
I don't speak any **foreign**	**languages**.
There are some **beautiful yellow**	**flowers** in the yard.

The adjective is *before* the noun:

- They live in a **modern house**. (*not* a house modern)
- Have you met any **famous people**? (*not* people famous)

The ending of an adjective is always the same:

a **different** place   **different** places (*not* differents)

B

be (am/is/was, etc.) + *adjective*

- The weather **is nice** today.
- These flowers **are** very **beautiful**.
- **Are** you **cold**? Should I close the window?
- **I'm hungry**. Can I have something to eat?
- The movie **wasn't** very **good**. It **was boring**.
- Please **be quiet**. I'm reading.

C

look/feel/smell/taste/sound + *adjective*

- "You **look tired**." "I **feel tired**."
- Eric told me about his new job. It **sounds** really **interesting**.
- I'm not going to eat this fish. It doesn't **smell good**.

Compare:

He	**is** **feels** **looks**	**tired**.

They	**are** **look** **sound**	**happy**.

It	**is** **smells** **tastes**	**good**.

get + adjective (**get hungry/tired**, etc.) → **Unit 54**   **something/anybody** + adjective → **Unit 77**

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Exercises

83.1 Put the words in the right order.

1 (new / live in / house / they / a) ... *They live in a new house.*
2 (like / jacket / I / that / green) ... I ...
3 (music / like / do / classical / you?) ... Do ...
4 (had / wonderful / a / I / trip) ...
5 (went to / restaurant / a / Japanese / we) ...

83.2 The words below are adjectives (**dark**/**foreign**, etc.) or nouns (**air**/**job**, etc.). Use an adjective and a noun to complete each sentence.

air	**dangerous**	~~**foreign**~~	**hot**	**knife**	**long**	**vacation**
clouds	**dark**	**fresh**	**job**	~~**languages**~~	**sharp**	**water**

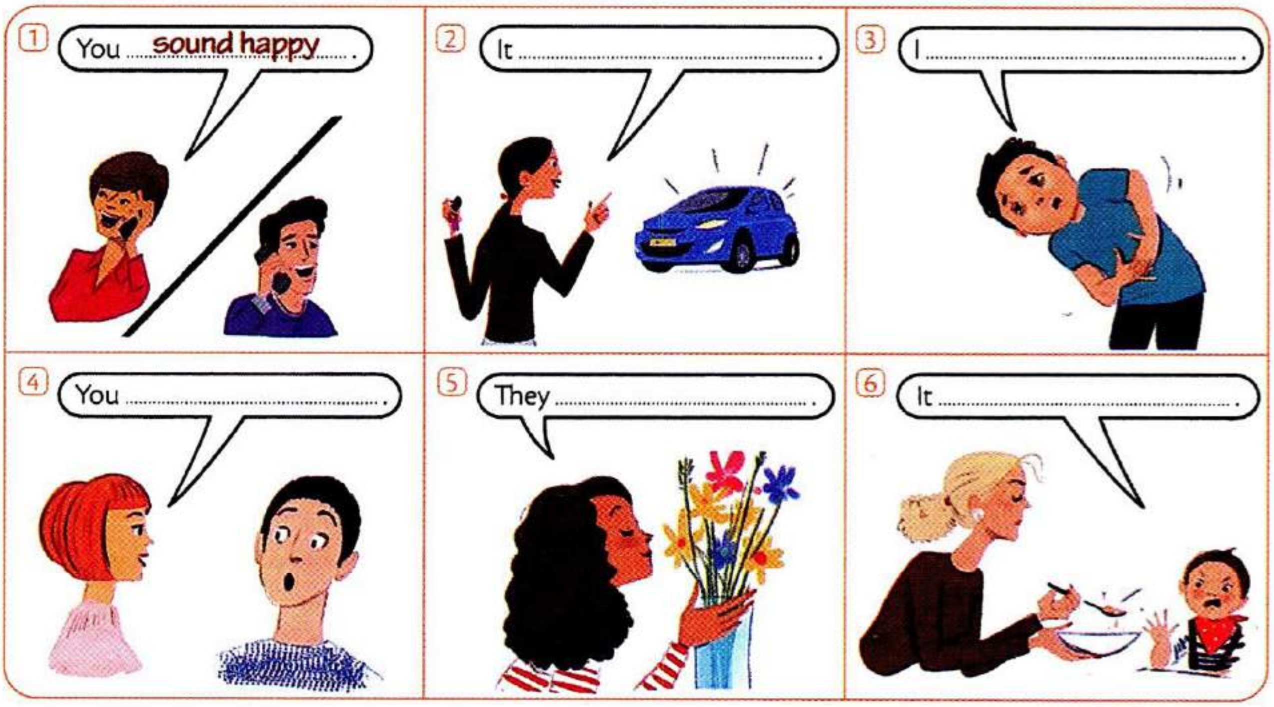
1 Do you speak any ... *foreign languages* ... ?
2 Look at those ... . It's going to rain.
3 Sue works very hard, and she's very tired. She needs a ... .
4 You need ... to make tea.
5 Can you open the window? We need some ... .
6 I need a ... to cut these onions.
7 Firefighting is a ... .

83.3 Write sentences for the pictures. Choose from the boxes.

feel(s)	**look(s)**	~~**sound(s)**~~
look(s)	**smell(s)**	**taste(s)**

+

~~**happy**~~	**nice**	**surprised**
new	**sick**	**terrible**



83.4 A and B don't agree. Complete B's sentences. Use **feel**/**look**, etc.

	A	B	
1	You look tired.	I do? I ... *don't feel tired*	(feel)
2	This is a new coat.	It is? It doesn't	(look)
3	I'm American.	You are? You	(sound)
4	You look cold.	Really? I	(feel)
5	These bags are heavy.	They are? They	(look)
6	That soup looks good.	Maybe, but it	(taste)

Unit 84 quickly/badly/suddenly, etc. (adverbs)

www.irLanguage.com

A

He ate his dinner very **quickly**.

Suddenly, the shelf fell down.

Quickly and **suddenly** are adverbs.

adjective + **-ly** → adverb:

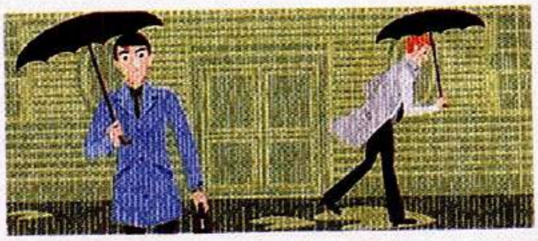
adjective	**quick**	**bad**	**sudden**	**careful**	**heavy**	
adverb	**quickly**	**badly**	**suddenly**	**carefully**	**heavily**,	etc.

For spelling, see Appendix 5: easy → eas**ily** heavy → heav**ily**

B

Adverbs tell you *how* something happens or *how* somebody does something:

- The train **stopped suddenly**.
- I **opened** the door **slowly**.
- Please **listen carefully**.
- I **understand** you **perfectly**.



It's **raining heavily**.

Compare:

adjective	*adverb*
Sue is very **quiet**.	Sue **speaks** very **quietly**. (*not* speaks very quiet)
Be careful!	**Listen carefully**! (*not* listen careful)
It was a **bad game**.	Our team **played badly**. (*not* played bad)
I **felt nervous**. (= I was nervous)	I **waited nervously**.

C

hard **fast** **late** **early**

These words are adjectives *and* adverbs:

Sue's job **is** very **hard**.	Sue **works** very **hard**. (*not* hardly)
Ben is **a fast runner**.	Ben can **run fast**.
The bus **was late**/**early**.	I **went** to bed **late**/**early**.

D

good (*adjective*) → **well** (*adverb*)

Your English **is** very **good**.	You **speak** English very **well**. (*not* very good)
It was **a good game**.	Our team **played well**.

But **well** is also an *adjective* (= not sick, in good health):

- "How are you?" "**I'm** very **well**, thank you. And you?"

adjectives → **Unit 83**

Exercises

84.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with these adverbs:

angrily badly dangerously fast ~~heavily~~ quietly

1 It's raining ...heavily....................
2 He sings very ....
3 They came in ....
4 She shouted at me ....
5 She can run very ....
6 He was driving ....

84.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

come	**know**	**sleep**	**win**
explain	**~~listen~~**	**think**	**work**

\+

~~carefully~~	**clearly**	**hard**	**well**
carefully	**easily**	**quickly**	**well**

1 I'm going to tell you something very important, so please ...listen carefully.....
2 They .... At the end of the day they're always tired.
3 I'm tired this morning. I didn't .... last night.
4 You play chess much better than me. When we play, you always ....
5 .... before you answer the question.
6 I've met Nicole a few times, but I don't .... her very ....
7 Our teacher doesn't .... things very .... We never understand him.
8 Anna! I need your help. ....!

84.3 Which is right?

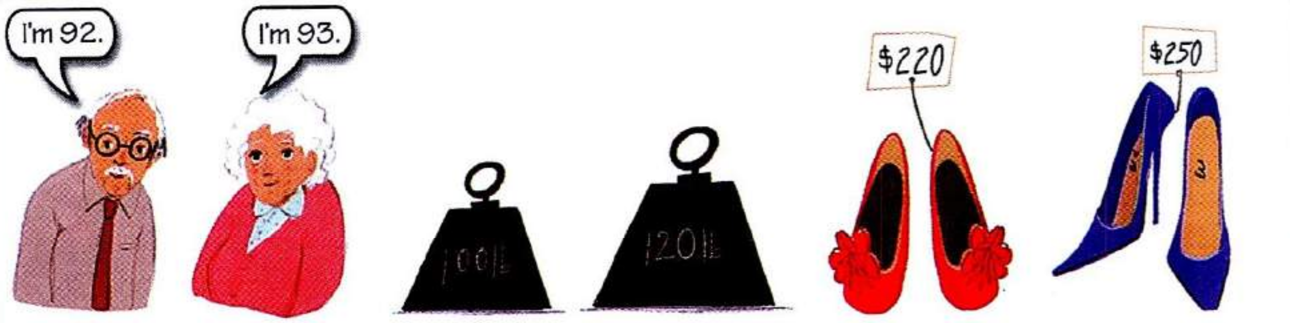
1 Don't eat so ~~quick~~/quickly. It's not good for you. (quickly *is right*)
2 Why are you angry/angrily? I didn't do anything.
3 Can you speak slow/slowly, please?
4 Come on, Dave! Why are you always so slow/slowly?
5 Bill is a very careful/carefully driver.
6 Jennifer is studying hard/hardly for her exams.
7 "Where's Emma?" "She was here, but she left sudden/suddenly."
8 Please be quiet/quietly. I'm studying.
9 Some companies pay their workers very bad/badly.
10 Those oranges look nice/nicely. Can I have one?
11 I don't remember much about the accident. Everything happened quick/quickly.

84.4 Write **good** or **well**.

1 Your English is very ...good..... You speak it very ...well.....
2 Olivia did very .... on the quiz today.
3 The party was very .... I enjoyed it a lot.
4 James has a difficult job, but he does it ....
5 How are your parents? Are they ....?
6 Did you have a .... vacation? Was the weather ....?

old/older expensive / more expensive

A



old — **older** — heavy — **heavier** — expensive — **more expensive**

Older / heavier / more expensive are *comparative* forms.
The comparative is **-er** (**older**) or **more . . .** (**more expensive**).

B

older / heavier, etc.

Short words (1 syllable) → **-er**:

old → **older** | slow → **slower** | cheap → **cheaper**
nice → **nicer** | late → **later** | big → **bigger**

For spelling, see Appendix 5: big → bi**gg**er hot → ho**tt**er thin → thi**nn**er

Words ending in **-y** → **-ier**:

easy → **easier** | heavy → **heavier** | early → **earlier**

- Rome is **old**, but Athens is **older**. (*not* more old)
- Is it **cheaper** to go by car or by train? (*not* more cheap)
- Helen wants a **bigger** car.
- This coat is OK, but I think the other one is **nicer**.
- Don't take the bus. It's **easier** to take a taxi. (*not* more easy)

far → **farther**:

- A: How far is it to the station? A mile?
  B: No, it's **farther**. About two miles.

C

more . . .

Long words (2/3/4 syllables) → **more . . .**:

careful → **more careful** | polite → **more polite**
expensive → **more expensive** | interesting → **more interesting**

- You should be **more careful**.
- I don't like my job. I want to do something **more interesting**.
- Is it **more expensive** to go by car or by train?

D

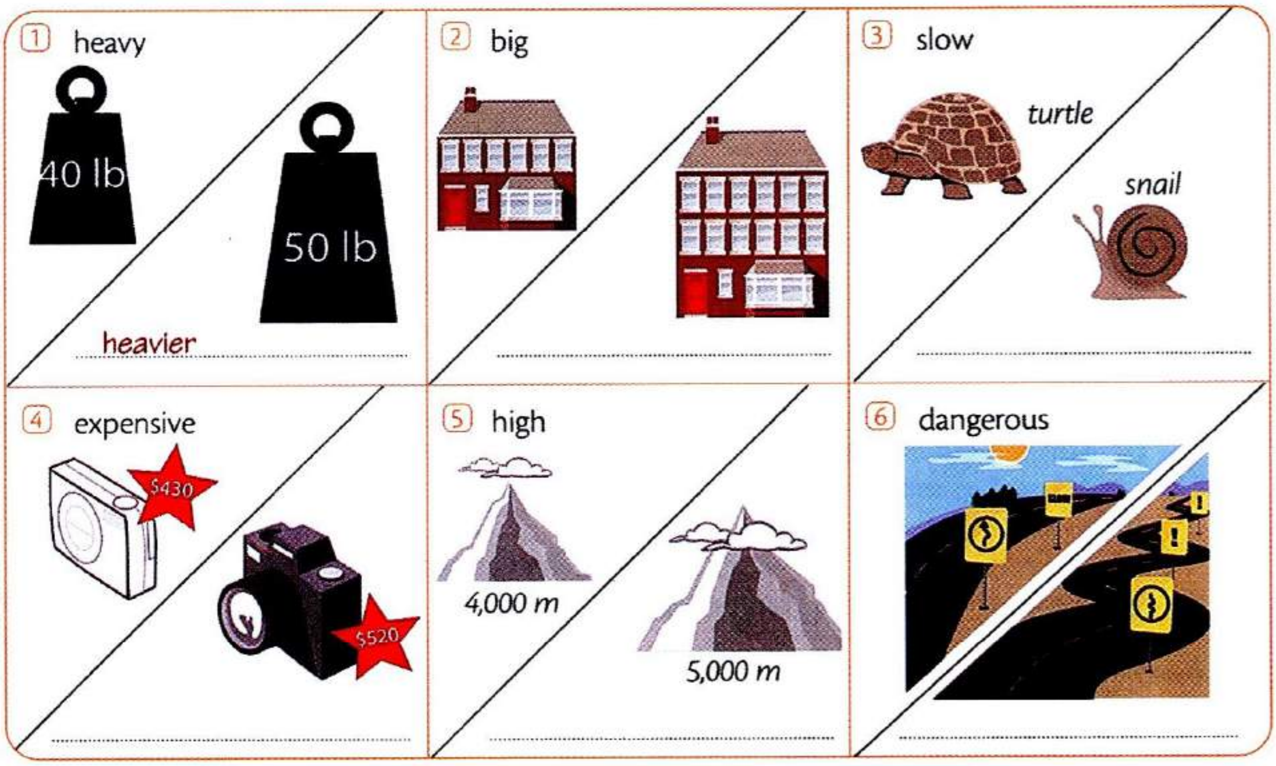
good / well → **better** **bad** → **worse**

- The weather wasn't very **good** yesterday, but it's **better** today.
- "Do you feel **better** today?" "No, I feel **worse**."
- Which is **worse** – a headache or a toothache?

older than . . . / more expensive than → **Unit 86** **the oldest / the most expensive** → **Unit 88**

Exercises

85.1 Look at the pictures and write the comparative (**older** / **more interesting**, etc.).



85.2 Write the comparative.

1 old *older*
2 strong ....
3 happy ....
4 modern ....
5 important ....
6 good ....
7 large ....
8 serious ....
9 pretty ....
10 crowded ....

85.3 Write the opposite.

1 younger *older*
2 colder ....
3 cheaper ....
4 better ....
5 nearer ....
6 easier ....

85.4 Complete the sentences. Use a comparative.

1 Allison's car isn't very big. She wants a *bigger* one.
2 My job isn't very interesting. I want to do something *more interesting*.
3 You're not very tall. Your brother is ....
4 David doesn't work very hard. I work ....
5 My chair isn't very comfortable. Yours is ....
6 Your idea isn't very good. My idea is ....
7 These flowers aren't very nice. The blue ones are ....
8 My suitcase isn't very heavy. Your suitcase is ....
9 I'm not very interested in art. I'm .... in history.
10 It isn't very warm today. It was .... yesterday.
11 These tomatoes don't taste very good. The other ones tasted ....
12 Peru isn't very big. Brazil is ....
13 Los Angeles isn't very beautiful. San Francisco is ....
14 This knife isn't very sharp. Do you have a .... one?
15 People today aren't very polite. In the past they were ....
16 The weather isn't too bad today. Often it is much ....

older than . . . more expensive than . . .

A

She's **taller than** him.

The Capitol Hotel is **more expensive than** the Grand Hotel.

We use **than** after comparatives (**older than** . . . / **more expensive than** . . . , etc.):

- Athens is **older than** Rome.
- Are oranges **more expensive than** bananas?
- It's easier to take a taxi **than** to take the bus.
- "How are you today?" "Not bad. **Better than** yesterday."
- The restaurant is **more crowded than** usual.

B

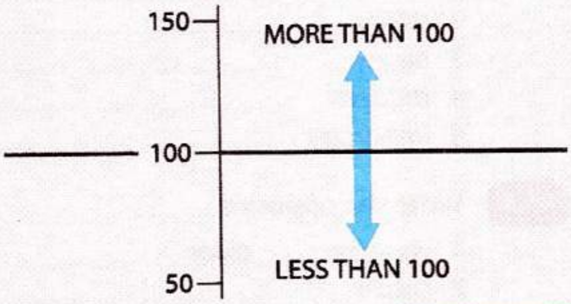
We usually say: than **me** / than **him** / than **her** / than **us** / than **them**.
You can say:

- I can run faster **than him.** *or* I can run faster **than he can.**
- You are a better singer **than me.** *or* You are a better singer **than I am.**
- I got up earlier **than her.** *or* I got up earlier **than she did.**

C

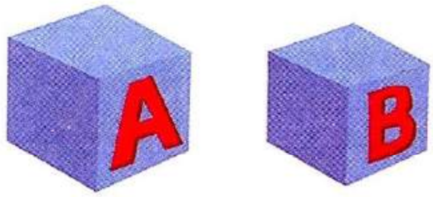
more / less than . . .

- A: How much did your shoes cost? $100?
  B: No, **more than** that. (= **more than** $100)
- The movie was very short – **less than** an hour.
- They have **more money than** they need.
- You go out **more than** me.

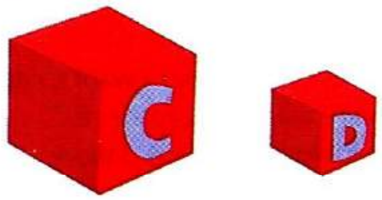


D

a little older / much older, etc.



Box A is **a little bigger** than Box B.



Box C is **much bigger** than Box D.

a little **much**	bigger older better more difficult more expensive	than . . .

- Canada is **much bigger** than France.
- Sue is a **little older** than Josh – she's 25 and he's 24.
- The hotel was **much more expensive** than I expected.
- You go out **much more** than me.

old → older, expensive → more expensive ➜ **Unit 85** not as . . . as ➜ **Unit 87**

Exercises

86.1 Write sentences about Liz and Ben. Use **than**.

1 I'm 26.
2 I'm not a very good swimmer.
3 I'm 5 feet 10 inches tall.
4 I start work at 8:00.
5 I don't work very hard.
6 I don't have much money.
7 I'm a very good driver.
8 I'm not very patient.
9 I'm not a very good dancer.
10 I'm very intelligent.
11 I speak Spanish very well.
12 I don't go to the movies very much.

1 I'm 24.
2 I'm a very good swimmer.
3 I'm 5 feet 8 inches tall.
4 I start work at 8:30.
5 I work very hard.
6 I have a lot of money.
7 I'm not a very good driver.
8 I'm very patient.
9 I'm a good dancer.
10 I'm not very intelligent.
11 I don't speak Spanish very well.
12 I go to the movies a lot.

1 Liz ...*is older than Ben*... .
2 Ben ...*is a better swimmer than Liz*... .
3 Liz is ....
4 Liz starts .... Ben.
5 Ben ....
6 Ben has ....
7 Liz is a ....
8 Ben ....
9 Ben ....
10 Liz ....
11 Liz ....
12 Ben ....

86.2 Complete the sentences. Use **than**.

1 He isn't very tall. You're ...*taller than him*... or ...*taller than he is*... .
2 She isn't very old. You're ....
3 I don't work very hard. You work ....
4 He doesn't watch TV very much. You ....
5 I'm not a very good cook. You ....
6 We don't know many people. You ....
7 They don't have much money. You ....
8 I can't run very fast. You can ....
9 She hasn't been here very long. You ....
10 They didn't get up very early. You ....
11 He wasn't very surprised. You ....

86.3 Complete the sentences with **a little** or **much** + comparative (**older**/**better**, etc.).

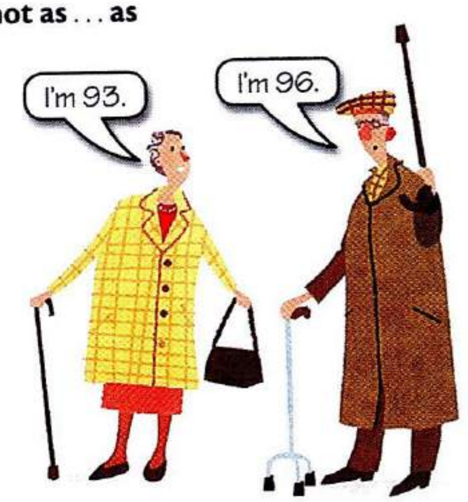
1 Emma is 25. Joe is $24\frac{1}{2}$.
Emma ...*is a little older than Joe*... .
2 Jack's mother is 52. His father is 69.
Jack's mother ....
3 My camera cost \$150. Yours cost \$145.
My camera ....
4 Yesterday I felt terrible. Today I feel OK.
I feel ....
5 Today the temperature is 12 degrees Celsius. Yesterday it was 10 degrees Celsius.
It's ....
6 Sarah is an excellent volleyball player. I'm not very good.
Sarah ....

not as . . . as

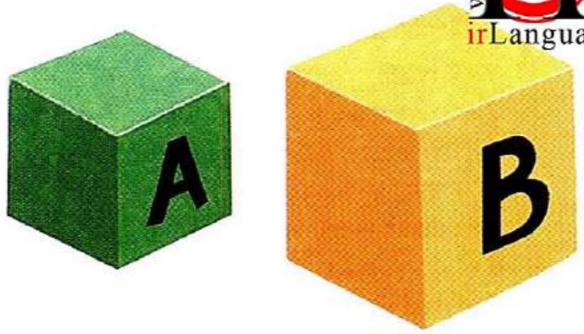
مرجع آموزش زبان ایرانیان
www.irLanguage.com

A

not as . . . as



She's old, but she's **not as old as** he is.



Box A is**n't as big as** Box B.

- Rome is **not as old as** Athens.
  (= Athens is **older**)
- The Grand Hotel is**n't as expensive as** the Western.
  (= the Western is **more expensive**)
- I do**n't** play soccer **as often as** you.
  (= you play **more often**)
- The weather is better than it was yesterday. It is**n't as cold**.
  (= as cold **as it was yesterday**)

B

not as much as . . . / not as many as . . .

- I don't have **as much money as** you. (= you have **more money**)
- I don't know **as many people as** you. (= you know **more people**)
- I don't go out **as much as** you. (= you go out **more**)

C

Compare **not as . . . as** and **than:**

- Rome is **not as old as** Athens.
  Athens is **older than** Rome. (*not* older as Rome)
- Tennis is**n't as popular as** soccer.
  Soccer is **more popular than** tennis.
- I do**n't** go out **as much as** you.
  You go out **more than** me.

D

We usually say: as **me** / as **him** / as **her,** etc.
You can say:

- She's not as old **as him**. *or* She's not as old **as he is**.
- You don't work as hard **as me**. *or* You don't work as hard **as I do**.

E

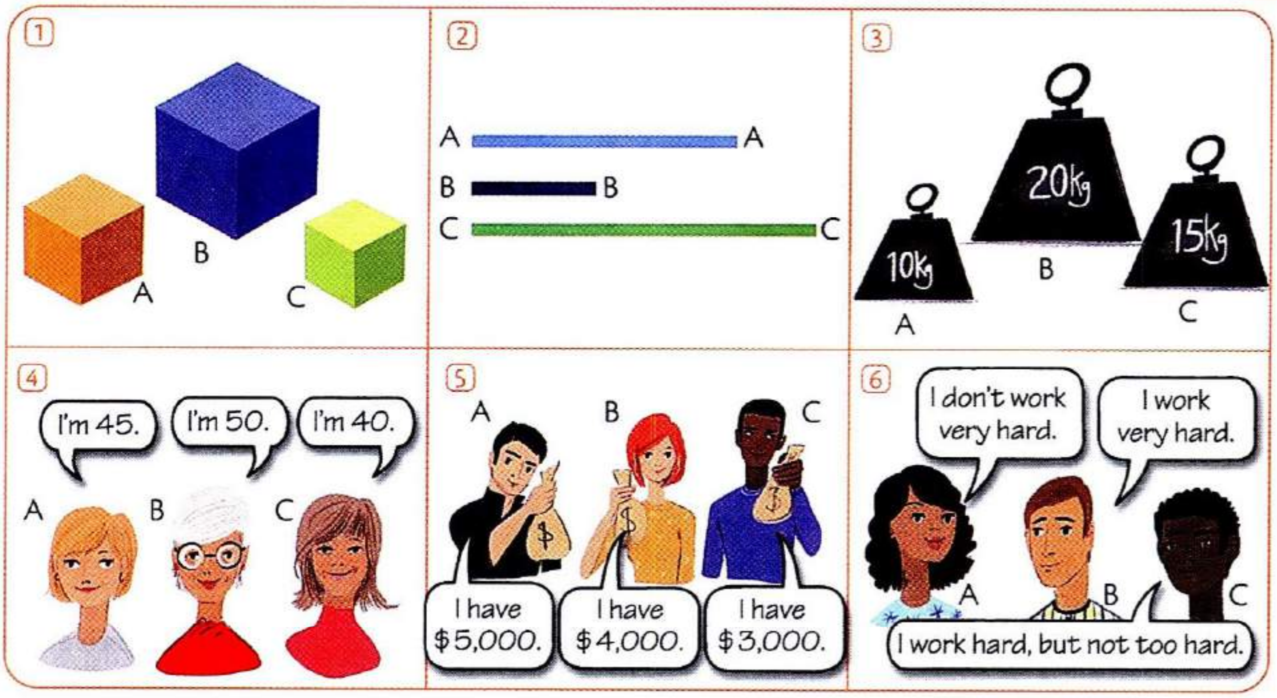
We say **the same as . . .:**

- The weather today is **the same as** yesterday.
- My hair is **the same color as** yours.
- I arrived at **the same time as** Tim.

much/many → Unit 81 **older than . . . / more expensive than . . . → Unit 86**

Exercises

87.1 Look at the pictures and write sentences about A, B, and C.



1 A is *bigger than C, but not as big as B* .
2 A is .... B, but not .... C.
3 C is .... A, but ....
4 A is .... , but ....
5 B has ....
6 C works ....

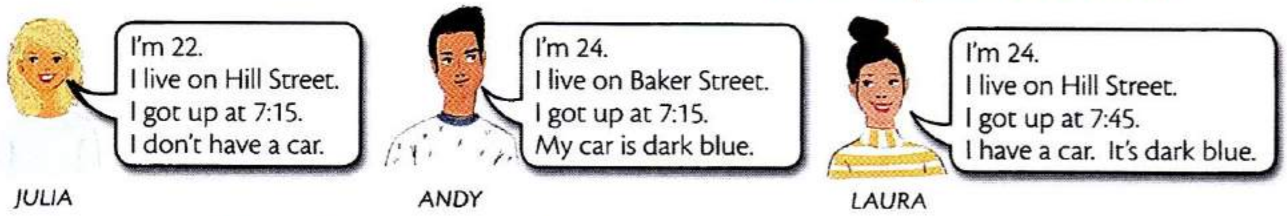
87.2 Write sentences with **as . . . as . . . .**

1 Athens is older than Rome. Rome *isn't as old as Athens* .
2 My room is bigger than yours. Your room isn't ....
3 You got up earlier than me. I didn't ....
4 We played better than them. They ....
5 I've been here longer than you. You ....
6 She's more nervous than him. He ....

87.3 Write **as** or **than**.

1 Athens is older *than* Rome.
2 I don't watch TV as much .... you.
3 You eat more .... me.
4 I'm more tired today .... I was yesterday.
5 Joe isn't as intelligent .... he thinks.
6 Belgium is smaller .... Switzerland.
7 Brazil isn't as big .... Canada.
8 I can't wait more .... an hour.

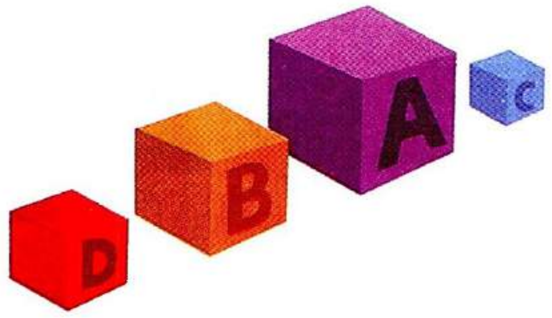
87.4 Complete the sentences about Julia, Andy, and Laura. Use **the same age** / **the same street**, etc.



1 (age) *Andy is the same age as Laura* .
2 (street) Julia lives ....
3 (time) Julia got up ....
4 (color) Andy's ....

Unit 88 the oldest the most expensive

A



Box A is **bigger than** Box B.

Box A is **bigger than** all the other boxes.

Box A is **the biggest** box.

The Best West Motel is **more expensive than** the Sleep Inn.

The Best West Motel is **more expensive than** all the other motels in town.

The Best West Motel is **the most expensive** motel in town.

Bigger and **more expensive**, etc. are *comparative* forms (→ Unit 85).
Biggest and **most expensive**, etc. are *superlative* forms.

B

The superlative form is **-est** (**oldest**) or **most** . . . (**most expensive**).

Short words (**old**/**cheap**/**nice**, etc.) → **the -est**:

	old → **the oldest**	cheap → **the cheapest**	nice → **the nicest**
but	good → **the best**	bad → **the worst**	
For spelling see Appendix 5:		**big** → the bi**gg**est	**hot** → the ho**tt**est

Words ending in **-y** (**easy**/**heavy**, etc.) → **the -iest**:

easy → **the easiest** heavy → **the heaviest** pretty → **the prettiest**

Long words (**careful**/**expensive**/**interesting**, etc.) → the **most** . . . :

careful → **the most careful** interesting → **the most interesting**

C

We say **the** oldest . . . / **the** most expensive . . . , etc. (with **the**):

- The church is very old. It's **the oldest** building in the town.
  (= it is **older than** all the other buildings)
- What is **the longest** river in the world?
- Money is important, but it isn't **the most important** thing in life.
- Excuse me, where is **the nearest** bank?

D

You can use **the oldest** / **the best** / **the most expensive**, etc. without a noun:

- Mike is a good player, but he isn't **the best** on the team.
  (**the best** = the best player)

E

You can use *superlative* + **I've ever** . . . / **you've ever** . . . , etc. :

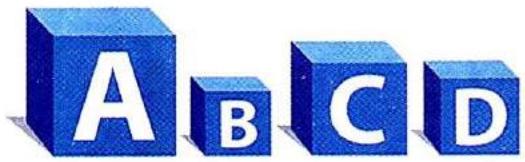
- The movie was very bad. I think it's **the worst** movie **I've ever seen.**
- What is **the most unusual** thing **you've ever done**?

present perfect + **ever** → **Unit 16** older / more expensive → **Units 85–86**

Exercises

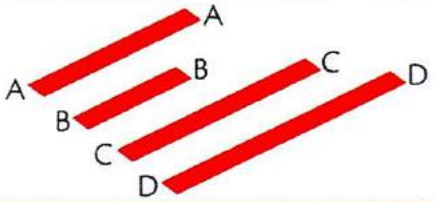
88.1 Write sentences with comparatives (**older**, etc.) and superlatives (**the oldest**, etc.).

1



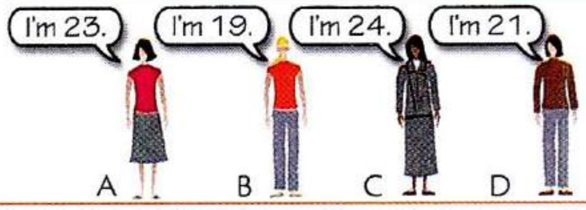
big/small
(A/D) A is bigger than D.
(A) A is the biggest.
(B) B is the smallest.

2



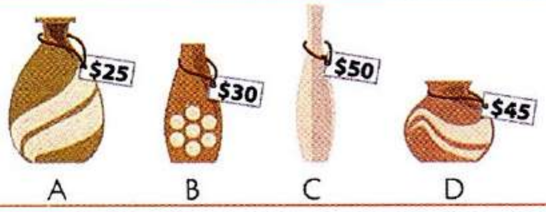
long/short
(C/A) C is .... A.
(D) D is ....
(B) B is ....

3



young/old
(D/C) D ....
(C) ....
(B) ....

4



expensive/cheap
(D/A) ....
(C) ....
(A) ....

5

good/bad
(A/C) ....
(A) ....
(D) ....

88.2 Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (**the oldest**, etc.).

1. This building is very old. It's the oldest building in town.
2. It was a very happy day. It was .... of my life.
3. It's a very good movie. It's .... I've ever seen.
4. She's a very popular singer. She's .... in the country.
5. It was a very bad mistake. It was .... I've ever made.
6. It's a very pretty city. It's .... I've ever seen.
7. It was a very cold day. It was .... of the year.
8. He's a very boring person. He's .... I've ever met.

88.3 Write sentences with a superlative (**the longest**, etc.). Choose from the boxes.

~~**Sydney**~~	**Alaska**	**high**	~~**city**~~	**river**	**Africa**	**the USA**
Everest	**the Nile**	**large**	**country**	**state**	~~**Australia**~~	**the world**
Brazil	**Jupiter**	**long**	**mountain**	**planet**	**South America**	**the solar system**

1. Sydney is the largest city in Australia.
2. Everest ....
3. ....
4. ....
5. ....
6. ....

Unit 89 enough

A

She isn't going to take a taxi.
She doesn't have **enough money**.

He can't reach the shelf.
He isn't **tall enough**.

مرجع آموزش زبان ایرانیان
irLanguage.com

B

enough + *noun* (**enough money / enough people**, etc.)

- A: Is there **enough salt** in the soup?
  B: Yes, it's fine.
- We wanted to play football, but we didn't have **enough players**.
- Why don't you buy a car? You've got **enough money**. (*not* money enough)

enough *without a noun*

- I've got some money, but not **enough** to buy a car.
  (= I need more money to buy a car)
- A: Would you like some more to eat?
  B: No, thanks. I've had **enough**.
- You're always at home. You don't go out **enough**.

C

adjective + **enough** (**good enough / tall enough**, etc.)

- A: Do you want to go swimming?
  B: No, it isn't **warm enough**. (*not* enough warm)
- Can you hear the radio? Is it **loud enough** for you?
- Don't buy that coat. It's nice, but it isn't **long enough**. (= it's too short)

Remember:
enough + *noun* but *adjective* + **enough**

enough money	tall **enough**
enough time	good **enough**
enough people	old **enough**

D

We say:

enough for somebody/something	This sweater isn't **big enough for me**. I don't have **enough money for a new car**.
enough to do something	I don't have **enough money to buy** a new car. (*not* for buy) Is your English **good enough to have** a conversation? (*not* for have)
enough for somebody/something **to do** something	There aren't **enough chairs for everybody to sit** down.

to ... and **for** ... → Unit 52 **too** → Unit 90

Exercises

89.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use **enough** + these words:

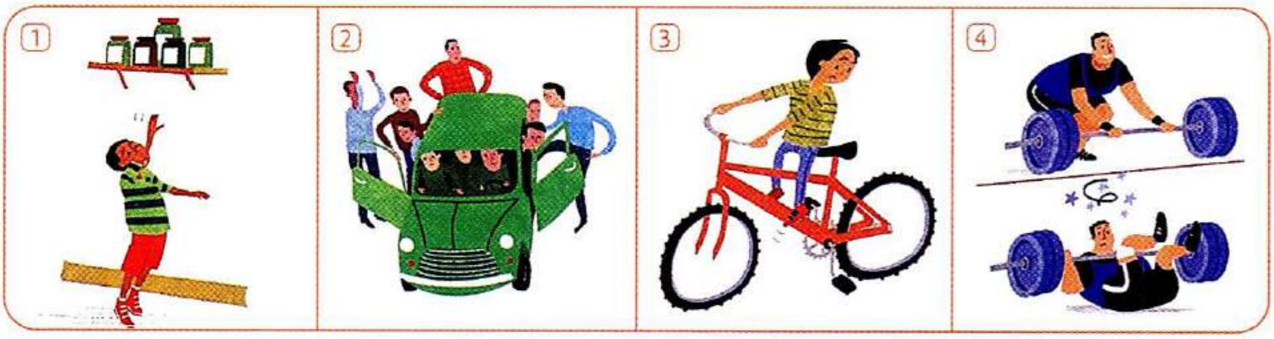
chairs ~~money~~ **paint** **wind**

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

1 She doesn't have ...enough money...... .
2 There aren't ....
3 She doesn't have ....
4 There isn't ....

89.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use these adjectives + **enough**:

big **long** **strong** ~~tall~~



1 He ...isn't tall enough...... .
2 The car ....
3 His legs aren't ....
4 He ....

89.3 Complete the sentences. Use **enough** with these words:

big **eat** ~~loud~~ **old** **practice** ~~salt~~ **space** **time** **tired**

1 "Is there ...enough salt... in the soup?" "Yes, it's fine."
2 Can you hear the radio? Is it ...loud enough... for you?
3 He can quit school if he wants – he's ....
4 When I visited New York last year, I didn't have .... to see all the things I wanted to see.
5 This house isn't .... for a large family.
6 Kate is very thin. She doesn't ....
7 My office is very small. There isn't ....
8 It's late, but I don't want to go to bed now. I'm not ....
9 Lisa isn't a very good tennis player because she doesn't ....

89.4 Complete the sentences. Use **enough** with these words:

1 We don't have ...enough money to buy... a new car. (money/buy)
2 This knife isn't .... tomatoes. (sharp/cut)
3 The water wasn't .... swimming. (warm/go)
4 Do we have .... sandwiches? (bread/make)
5 We played well, but not .... the game. (well/win)
6 I don't have .... the newspaper. (time/read)

Unit 90 too

A

His shoes are **too big** for him.

There is **too much** sugar in it.

B

too + *adjective/adverb* (**too big** / **too hard**, etc.)

- Can you turn the radio down? It's **too loud**. (= louder than I want)
- I can't work. I'm **too tired**.
- I think you work **too hard**.

C

too much / **too many** = more than you want, more than is good:

- I don't like the weather here. There is **too much rain**. (= more rain than is good)
- Let's go to another restaurant. There are **too many people** here.
- Emily studies all the time. I think she studies **too much**.
- Traffic is a problem in this town. There are **too many cars**.

D

Compare **too** and **not enough**:

too big

- The hat is **too big** for him.
- The music is **too loud**. Can you turn it down, please?
- There's **too much sugar** in my coffee. (= more sugar than I want)
- I don't feel very well. I ate **too much**.

not big enough

- The hat is**n't big enough** for him. (= it's **too small**)
- The music is**n't loud enough**. Can you turn it up, please?
- There's **not enough sugar** in my coffee. (= I need more sugar)
- You're very thin. You do**n't** eat **enough**.

E

We say:

too ... **for** somebody/something	These shoes are **too big for me**. It's a small house – **too small for a large family**.
too ... **to do** something	I'm **too tired to go** out. (*not* for go out) It's **too cold to sit** outside.
too ... **for** somebody **to do** something	She speaks **too fast for me to understand**.

to ... and for ... ➜ Unit 52 much/many ➜ Unit 81 enough ➜ Unit 89

Exercises

irLanguage.com

90.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use **too** + these words:

big	crowded	fast	heavy	~~loud~~	low

1 The music is *too loud* .
2 The box is ....
3 The net is ....
4 She's driving ....
5 His jacket ....
6 The museum is ....

90.2 Write **too / too much / too many** or **enough.**

1 You're always at home. You don't go out *enough* .
2 I don't like the weather here. There's *too much* rain.
3 I can't wait for them. I don't have .... time.
4 There was nowhere to sit on the beach. There were .... people.
5 You're always tired. I think you work .... hard.
6 "Did you have .... to eat?" "Yes, thank you."
7 You drink .... coffee. It's not good for you.
8 You don't eat .... vegetables. You should eat more of them.
9 I don't like the weather here. It's .... cold.
10 Our team didn't play well. We made .... mistakes.
11 "Would you like some ice in your tea?" "Yes, but not ...."

90.3 Complete the sentences. Use **too** or **enough** with these words:

1 I couldn't work. I *was too tired* . (tired)
2 Can you turn the radio up, please? It *isn't loud enough* . (loud)
3 I don't want to walk home. It's .... (far)
4 Don't buy anything in that store. It .... (expensive)
5 You can't put all your things in this bag. It .... (big)
6 I couldn't do the exercise. It .... (difficult)
7 Your work needs to be better. It .... (good)
8 I can't talk to you now. I .... (busy)
9 I thought the movie was boring. It .... (long)

90.4 Complete the sentences. Use **too** (+ adjective) + **to . . . .**

1 (I'm not going out / cold) It's *too cold to go out* .
2 (I'm not going to bed / early) It's ....
3 (they're not getting married / young) They're ....
4 (nobody goes out at night / dangerous)
It's ....
5 (don't call Sue now / late)
It's ....
6 (I didn't say anything / surprised)
I was ....

Unit 91 He speaks English very well. (word order 1)

A

verb + object

Sue **bought** **some new shoes** yesterday.
subject *verb* *object*

The *verb* (**bought**) and the *object* (**some new shoes**) are usually together. We say:

- Sue **bought some new shoes** yesterday.
  (*not* Sue bought yesterday some new shoes)

SUE (*subject*) SOME NEW SHOES (*object*)

verb + object

He **speaks**	**English** very well. (*not* He speaks very well English)
I **like**	**Italian food** very much. (*not* I like very much ...)
Did you **watch**	**TV** all night? (*not* ... watch all night TV)
Jake often **wears**	**a black hat**. (*not* Jake wears often ...)
We **invited**	**a lot of people** to the party.
I **opened**	**the door** slowly.
Why do you always **make**	**the same mistake**?
I'm going to **borrow**	**some money** from the bank.

B

where and when

We went **to a party** **last night**.
where? *when?*

Place (*where?*) is usually before time (*when?*). We say:

- We went **to a party last night**. (*not* We went last night to a party)

	place (*where?*) +	time (*when? how long? how often?*)
Liz walks	**to work**	**every day**. (*not* ... every day to work)
Will you be	**at home**	**tonight**? (*not* ... tonight at home)
I usually go	**to bed**	**early**. (*not* ... early to bed)
We arrived	**at the airport**	**at 7:00**.
They've lived	**in the same house**	**for 20 years**.
Joe's father has been	**in the hospital**	**since June**.

word order in questions ➜ **Units 42–44** **always/usually/often**, etc. ➜ **Unit 92**

Exercises

91.1 Right or wrong? Correct the sentences that are wrong.

1 Did you watch all night TV? — *Did you watch TV all night?*
2 Sue bought some new shoes yesterday. — *OK*
3 I like very much this picture. ....
4 Tom started last week his new job. ....
5 I want to speak English fluently. ....
6 Jenn bought for her friend a present. ....
7 I drink every day three cups of coffee. ....
8 Don't eat your dinner too quickly! ....
9 I borrowed from my brother 50 dollars. ....

91.2 Put the words in order.

1 (the door / opened / I / slowly) — *I opened the door slowly.*
2 (a new computer / I / last week / bought) — I ....
3 (finished / Matt / quickly / his work) ....
4 (Emily / very well / French / doesn't speak) ....
5 (a lot of shopping / did / I / yesterday) ....
6 (New York / do you know / well?) ....
7 (we / enjoyed / very much / the party) ....
8 (the problem / carefully / I / explained) ....
9 (we / at the airport / some friends / met) ....
10 (did you buy / in Canada / that jacket) ....
11 (every day / do / the same thing / we) ....
12 (football / don't like / very much / I) ....

91.3 Put the words in order.

1 (to work / every day / walks / Megan) — *Megan walks to work every day.*
2 (at the hotel / I / early / arrived) — I ....
3 (goes / every year / to Puerto Rico / Julia) — Julia ....
4 (we / since 2012 / here / have lived) — We ....
5 (in Florida / Sue / in 1990 / was born)
Sue ....
6 (didn't go / yesterday / Mike / to work)
Mike ....
7 (to a wedding / last weekend / went / Samantha)
Samantha ....
8 (I / in bed / this morning / my breakfast / had)
I ....
9 (in September / Jessica / to college / is going)
Jessica ....
10 (I / a beautiful bird / this morning / in the yard / saw)
I ....
11 (many times / have been / my parents / to Tokyo)
My ....
12 (my umbrella / I / last night / left / in the restaurant)
I ....
13 (to the movies / tomorrow night / are you going?)
Are ....
14 (the children / I / took / this morning / to school)
I ....

Unit 92

always/usually/often, etc. (word order 2)

A

These words (**always/never**, etc.) are with the verb in the middle of a sentence:

always	**often**	**ever**	**rarely**	**also**	**already**	**all**
usually	**sometimes**	**never**	**seldom**	**just**	**still**	**both**

- My brother **never speaks** to me.
- She**'s always** late.
- Do you **often go** to restaurants?
- I **sometimes eat** too much. (*or* **Sometimes** I eat too much.)
- A: Don't forget to call Laura.
  B: I **already called** her.
- I have three sisters. They**'re all** married.

B

Always/never, etc. are *before* the verb:

	verb
always **often** **never**, etc.	**go** **play** **have**, etc.

- I **always drink** coffee in the morning. (*not* I drink always coffee)
- Sarah **often goes** to Chicago on business. (*not* Sarah goes often)
- You **sometimes look** unhappy.
- They **usually have** dinner at 7:00.
- We **rarely watch** TV. *or* We **seldom watch** TV.
- Nick is a good swimmer. He **also plays** tennis and volleyball. (*not* He plays also tennis)
- I have three sisters. They **all live** in the same city.

But **always/never**, etc. are *after* **am/is/are/was/were**:

am **is** **are** **was** **were**	**always** **often** **never**, etc.

- I **am always** tired. (*not* I always am tired)
- They **are never** at home during the day.
- It **is usually** very cold here in the winter.
- When I was a child, I **was often** late for school.
- A: Where's Laura?
  B: She**'s still** in bed.
- I have two brothers. They**'re both** doctors.

C

Always/never, etc. are *between* two verbs (**have** ... **been** / **can** ... **find**, etc.):

verb 1		*verb 2*
will **can** **do**, etc.	**always** **often** **never**, etc.	**go** **find** **remember**, etc.
have **has**		**gone** **been**, etc.

- I **will always remember** you.
- It **doesn't often rain** here.
- **Do** you **usually drive** to work?
- I **can never find** my keys.
- **Have** you **ever been** to Egypt?
- **Did** the phone **just ring**?
- They **were all invited** to the wedding.

always/never + simple present ➔ **Unit 5** **just** + simple past ➔ **Unit 11** **all** ➔ **Units 78–79**
both ➔ **Unit 80** **still** ➔ **Unit 93** **already** ➔ **Unit 93**

Exercises

92.1 Read Eric's answers to the questions. Write sentences about Eric with **often**/**never**, etc.

ERIC

1	Do you ever play tennis?	Yes, often.	*Eric often plays tennis.*
2	Do you get up early?	Yes, always.	He ....
3	Are you ever late for work?	No, never.	He ....
4	Do you ever get angry?	Sometimes.	....
5	Do you ever go swimming?	Rarely.	....
6	Are you at home in the evenings?	Yes, usually.	....

92.2 Write these sentences with **never**/**always**/**usually**, etc.

1 My brother speaks to me. (never) — *My brother never speaks to me.*
2 Jessica is polite. (always) — Jessica ....
3 I finish work at 5:00. (usually) — I ....
4 Sarah started a new job. (just) — Sarah ....
5 I go to bed before midnight. (rarely) — ....
6 The bus isn't late. (usually) — ....
7 I don't eat fish. (often) — ....
8 I will forget what you said. (never) — ....
9 Have you lost your passport? (ever) — ....
10 Do you work in the same place? (still) — ....
11 They stay at the same hotel. (always) — ....
12 Liz doesn't work on Saturdays. (usually) — ....
13 Is Megan here? (already) — ....
14 What do you have for breakfast? (usually) — ....
15 I can remember his name. (never) — ....

92.3 Write sentences with **also**.

1 Do you play football? (basketball) — *Yes, and I also play basketball.*
2 Do you speak Italian? (French) — Yes, and I ....
3 Are you tired? (hungry) — Yes, and ....
4 Have you been to Mexico? (Guatemala) — Yes, ...
5 Did you buy any clothes? (some books) — ....

92.4 Write sentences with **both** and **all**.

I live in Lima.
I play soccer.
I'm a student.
I have a car.

I live in Lima.
I play soccer.
I'm a student.
I have a car.

1 *They both live in Lima.*
They .... soccer.
.... students.
.... cars.

I'm married. I was born in Colombia.
I live in Miami.

2 They .... married.
They .... Colombia.
....

Unit 93 still yet already

A still

an hour ago

now

An hour ago it was raining.

It is **still** raining now.

still = something is the same as before:

- I had a lot to eat, but I'm **still** hungry. (= I was hungry before, and I'm hungry now)
- "Did you sell your car?" "No, I **still** have it."
- "Do you **still** live in Los Angeles?" "No, I live in San Francisco now."

B yet

20 minutes ago

now

Twenty minutes ago they were waiting for Bill.

They are **still** waiting for Bill.
Bill **hasn't come yet**.

yet = until now

We use **yet** in *negative* sentences (He **hasn't** come yet.) and in *questions* (**Has he** come yet?).
Yet is usually at the end of a sentence:

- A: Where's Emma?
  B: She **isn't** here **yet**. (= she will be here, but until now she hasn't come)
- A: What are you doing tonight?
  B: I **don't** know **yet**. (= I will know later, but I don't know now)
- A: Are you ready to go **yet**?
  B: **Not yet**. In a minute. (= I will be ready, but I'm not ready now)
- A: Have you decided what to do **yet**?
  B: No, I'm still thinking about it.

Compare **yet** and **still**:

- She hasn't left **yet**. = She's **still** here. (*not* she is yet here)
- I haven't finished my homework **yet**. = I'm **still** doing it.

C

already = earlier than expected:

- "What time is Joe coming?" "He's **already** here." (= earlier than we expected)
- "I'm going to tell you what happened." "That's not necessary. I **already** know."
- Sarah isn't coming to the movies with us. She **already** saw the film.

yet + present perfect or past ➜ **Unit 19** word order (**still/already**) ➜ **Unit 92**

Exercises

93.1 You see Tina. The last time you saw her was two years ago. You ask her some questions with **still**.

Tina – two years ago

1 *Do you still play the piano?*
2 Do you ....
3 Are ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

93.2 Write three sentences for each situation. Look at the example carefully.

before *now*

1

→

(*before*) *They were waiting for the bus.*
(still) *They are still waiting.*
(yet) *The bus hasn't come yet.*

2

→

(*before*) He was ....
(still) He ....
(yet) .... yet.

3

→

(*before*) She .... asleep.
(still) ....
(yet) ....

4

→

(*before*) They ....
(still) ....
(yet) ....

93.3 Write questions with **yet**.

1 You and Sue are going out together. You are waiting for her to get ready. Maybe she is ready now.
You ask her: *Are you ready yet?*
2 You are waiting for Jessica to arrive. She wasn't here 10 minutes ago. Maybe she is here now.
You ask somebody: .... Jessica ....
3 Anna had a blood test and is waiting for the results. Maybe she has gotten her results.
You ask her: .... you ....
4 A few days ago you spoke to Tom. He wasn't sure where to go for his vacation. Maybe he has decided.
You ask him: ....

93.4 Complete the sentences. Use **already**.

1 What time is Joe coming? — *He's already* here.
2 Do they want to see the movie? — No, they *already saw* it.
3 I have to see Julia before she leaves. — It's too late. She ....
4 Do you need a pen? — No, thanks. I .... one.
5 Should I pay the bill? — No, that's OK. I ....
6 Should I tell Paul about the meeting? — No, he .... I told him.

Unit 94

Give me that book! Give it to me!

A

give lend pass send show

After these verbs (**give**/**lend**, etc.), there are two possible structures:

give something to somebody

- I gave **the keys to Sarah**.

give somebody something

- I gave **Sarah the keys**.

B

give something to somebody

		something	**to** somebody
That's my book.	**Give**	it	**to** me.
These are Sue's keys. Can you	**give**	them	**to** her?
Can you	**give**	these flowers	**to** your mother?
I	**lent**	my car	**to** a friend of mine.
Did you	**send**	a postcard	**to** Kate?
We've seen these pictures. You	**showed**	them	**to** us.

C

give somebody something

		somebody	something
	Give	me	that book. It's mine.
Tom	**gave**	his mother	some flowers.
I	**lent**	Joe	some money.
How much money did you	**lend**	him?	
I	**sent**	you	an email. Did you get it?
Nicole	**showed**	us	her vacation photos.
Can you	**pass**	me	the salt, please?

You can also say "**buy/get** somebody something":

- I **bought my mother** some flowers. (= I bought some flowers **for** my mother.)
- I'm going to the store. Can I **get you** anything? (= get anything **for** you)

D

You can say:

- I **gave** the keys **to Sarah**.

and I **gave Sarah** the keys.
(*but not* I gave to Sarah the keys)

- That's my book. Can you **give** it **to me**?

and Can you **give me** that book?
(*but not* Can you give to me that book?)

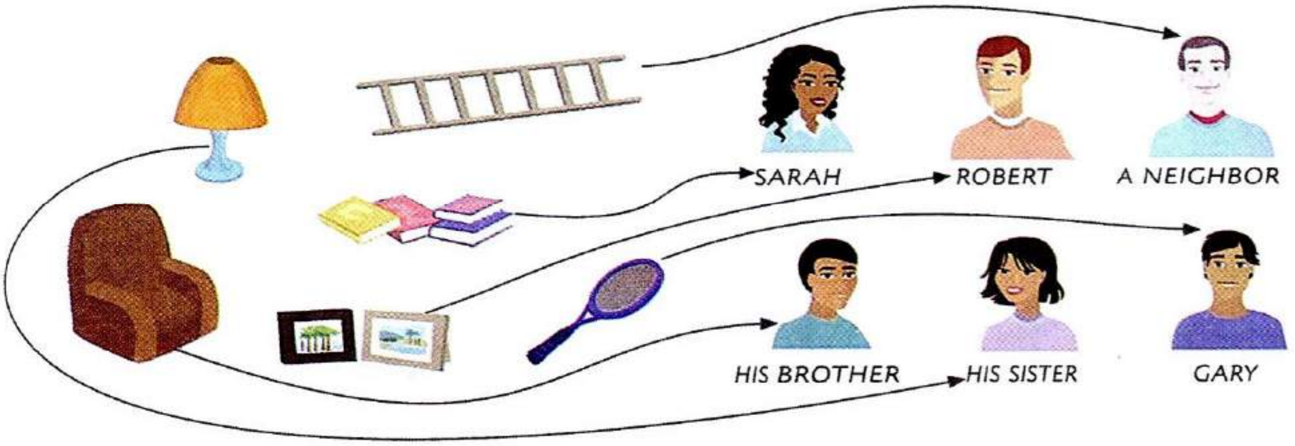
We prefer the first structure (**give** something **to** somebody) with **it** or **them**:

- I gave **it to her**. (*not* I gave her it)
- Here are the keys. Give **them to your father**. (*not* Give your father them)

it/him/them, etc. → **Unit 57**

Exercises

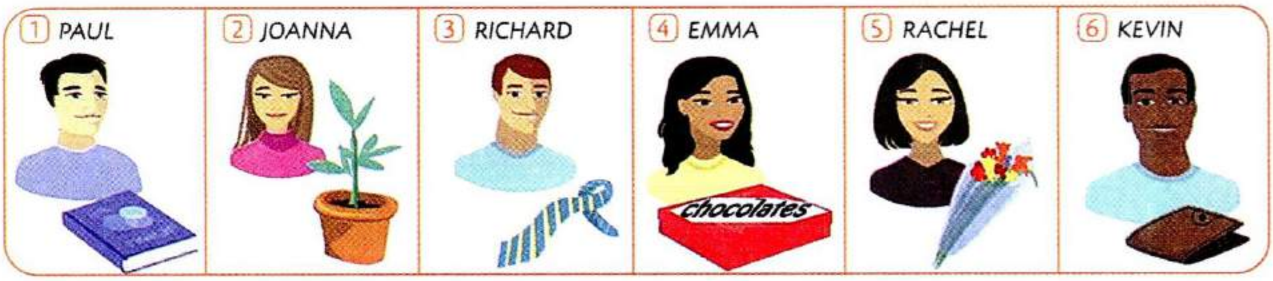
94.1 Mark had some things that he didn't want. He gave them to different people.



Write sentences beginning **He gave . . . .**

1 What did Mark do with the armchair? *He gave it to his brother.*
2 What did he do with the tennis racket? He gave ...
3 What happened to the books? He ...
4 What about the lamp? ...
5 What did he do with the pictures? ...
6 And the ladder? ...

94.2 You gave presents to your friends. You decided to give them the things in the pictures. Write a sentence for each person.



1 *I gave Paul a book.*
2 I gave ...
3 I ...
4 ...
5 ...
6 ...

94.3 Write questions beginning **Can you give me . . . ? / Can you pass me . . . ?**, etc.

1 (you want the salt) (pass) *Can you pass me the salt?*
2 (you need an umbrella) (lend) Can you ...
3 (you want my address) (give) Can ... your ...
4 (you need 20 dollars) (lend) ...
5 (you want more information) (send) ...
6 (you want to see the letter) (show) ...

94.4 Which is correct?

1 ~~I gave to Sarah the keys.~~ / I gave Sarah the keys. (I gave Sarah the keys *is right*)
2 I'll lend to you some money if you want. / I'll lend you some money if you want.
3 Did you send the bill me? / Did you send the bill to me?
4 I want to buy for you a present. / I want to buy you a present.
5 Can you pass to me the sugar, please? / Can you pass me the sugar, please?
6 This is Julia's bag. Can you give it to her? / Can you give her it?
7 I showed to the police officer my driver's license. / I showed the police officer my driver's license.

Unit 95 and but or so because

A

and but or so because

We use these words (*conjunctions*) to join two sentences. They make one longer sentence from two shorter sentences:

sentence A The car stopped. — The driver got out. *sentence B*

The car stopped, **and** the driver got out.

B

and/but/or

sentence A		*sentence B*
We stayed home	**and**	(we)* watched TV.
My sister is married	**and**	(she)* lives in Houston.
He doesn't like her,	**and**	she doesn't like him.
I bought a sandwich,	**but**	I didn't eat it.
It's a nice house,	**but**	it doesn't have a garage.
Do you want to go out,	**or**	are you too tired?

*It is not necessary to repeat "we" and "she."

In lists, we use commas (,). We use **and** before the last thing:

- I got home**,** had something to eat**,** sat down in an armchair**, and** fell asleep.
- Karen is at work**,** Sue is shopping**, and** Chris is playing football.

C

so (the result of something)

sentence A		*sentence B*
It was very hot,	**so**	I opened the window.
Joe plays a lot of sports,	**so**	he's very fit.
They don't like to travel,	**so**	they haven't been to many places.

D

because (the reason for something)

sentence A		*sentence B*
I opened the window	**because**	it was very hot.
Joe can't come to the party	**because**	he's leaving town.
Liz is hungry	**because**	she didn't have breakfast.

Because is also possible at the beginning. We use a comma:

- **Because it was very hot,** I opened the window.

E

In these examples there is more than one conjunction:

- It was late **and** I was tired, **so** I went to bed.
- I love New York, **but** I wouldn't like to live there **because** it's too big.

when/while/before, etc. ➔ **Unit 96**

Exercises

95.1 Write sentences. Choose from the boxes and use **and**/**but**/**or**.

~~I stayed home.~~ ~~I bought a sandwich.~~ I went to the window. I wanted to call you. I jumped into the river. I usually drive to work. Do you want me to come with you?	I didn't have your number. Should I wait here? ~~I didn't eat it.~~ I took the bus this morning. ~~I watched TV.~~ I swam to the other side. I looked out.

1 I stayed home and watched TV.
2 I bought a sandwich, but I didn't eat it.
3 I ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....

95.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use **and**/**but**/**so**/**because**.

1 It was very hot, so he opened the window.
2 They couldn't play tennis ....
3 They went to the museum, ...
4 Ben wasn't hungry, ...
5 Emily was late ....
6 Sue said ....

95.3 Write sentences about what you did yesterday. Use **and**/**but**, etc.

1 (and) Last night I stayed home and studied.
2 (because) I went to bed very early because I was tired.
3 (but) ....
4 (and) ....
5 (so) ....
6 (because) ....

Unit 96 When . . .

A

When I went out, it was raining.

This sentence has two parts:

when I went out + **it was raining**

You can say:

- **When I went out**, it was raining. *or*
  It was raining when I went out.

We write a comma (**,**) if **When** . . . is at the beginning:

- **When** you're tired**,** don't drive.
  Don't drive **when** you're tired.
- Heather was 25 **when** she got married.
  When Heather got married**,** she was 25.

We do the same in sentences with **before/while/after**:

- Always look both ways **before** you cross the street.
  Before you cross the street, always look both ways.
- **While** I was waiting for the bus, it began to rain.
  It began to rain **while** I was waiting for the bus.
- He never played football again **after** he broke his leg.
  After he broke his leg, he never played football again.

B

When I am . . . / **When I go** . . . , etc.

Next week Sarah is going to New York.
She has a friend, Hannah, who lives in New York,
but Hannah is also going away – to Mexico.
So they won't see each other in New York.

Hannah **will be** in Mexico **when** Sarah **is** in New York.

The time is *future* (**next week**), but we say:
. . . **when** Sarah **is** in New York.
(*not* when Sarah will be)

We use the *present* (**I am / I go**, etc.) with a *future meaning* after **when**:

- **When** I **get** home tonight, I'm going to take a shower.
  (*not* When I will get home)
- I can't talk to you now. I'll talk to you later **when** I **have** more time.

We do the same after **before/while/after/until**:

- Please close the window **before** you **go** out.
  (*not* before you will go)
- Rachel is going to stay in our apartment **while** we **are** away.
  (*not* while we will be)
- I'll wait here **until** you **come** back.
  (*not* until you will come back)

if and **when** → **Unit 97** **until** → **Unit 102** **before/while/after** → **Unit 103**

Exercises

96.1 Write sentences beginning with **When**. Choose from the boxes.

When +

~~I went out~~
I'm tired
I knocked on the door
I go on vacation
the program ended
I got to the hotel

\+

I turned off the TV
I always go to the same place
there were no rooms
~~it was raining~~
there was no answer
I like to watch TV

1 When I went out, it was raining.
2 ...
3 ...
4 ...
5 ...
6 ...

96.2 Complete the sentences using the following:

somebody broke into the house | **before they came here** | **when they heard the news**
~~**before they crossed the street**~~ | **while they were away** | **they didn't believe me**
they went to live in France

1 They looked both ways before they crossed the street.
2 They were very surprised ... .
3 After they got married, ...
4 Their house was damaged in a storm ... .
5 Where did they live ... ?
6 While we were asleep, ...
7 When I told them what happened, ...

96.3 Which is right?

1 ~~I stay~~ / I'll stay here until you come / ~~you'll come~~ back. (I'll stay, you come *are right*)
2 I'm going to bed when I finish / I'll finish my work.
3 We must do something before it's / it will be too late.
4 Lauren is moving away soon. I'm / I'll be very sad when she leaves / she'll leave.
5 Don't go out yet. Wait until the rain stops / will stop.
6 We come / We'll come and visit you when we're / we'll be in Toronto again.
7 When I come / I'll come to see you tomorrow, I bring / I'll bring our vacation photos.
8 I'm going to Quebec next week. I hope to see some friends of mine while I'm / I'll be there.
9 Let's go for a walk before it gets / it will get too dark.
10 I'm not ready yet. I tell / I'll tell you when I'm / I'll be ready.

96.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1 Can you close the window before you go out ?
2 What are you going to do when ... ?
3 When I have enough money, ...
4 I'll wait for you while ... .
5 When I start my new job, ...
6 Will you be here when ... ?

If we go . . . If you see . . . , etc.

A

If can be at the beginning of a sentence or in the middle:

If at the beginning

If we take the bus,	it will be cheaper.
If you don't hurry,	you'll miss the train.
If you're hungry,	have something to eat.
If the phone rings,	can you answer it, please?

if in the middle

It will be cheaper	**if** we take the bus.
You'll miss the train	**if** you don't hurry.
I'm going to the concert	**if** I can get a ticket.
Is it OK	**if** I use your phone?

In conversation, we often use the **if**-part of the sentence alone:

- "Are you going to the concert?" "Yes, **if I can get a ticket**."

B

If you see Anna tomorrow . . . , etc.

After **if**, we use the present (*not* will). We say "**if** you **see** . . ." (*not* if you will see):

- **If** you **see** Anna tomorrow, can you ask her to call me?
- **If I'm** late tonight, don't wait for me. (*not* if I will be)
- What should we do **if** it **rains**? (*not* if it will rain)
- **If** I **don't feel** well tomorrow, I'll stay home.

C

if and **when**

If I go out = it is possible that I will go out, but I'm not sure:

- A: Are you going out later?
  B: Maybe. **If I go out**, I'll close the windows.

When I go out = I'm going out (for sure):

- A: Are you going out later?
  B: Yes, I am. **When I go out**, I'll close the windows.

Compare **when** and **if**:

- **When** I get home tonight, I'm going to take a shower.
- **If** I'm late tonight, don't wait for me. (*not* When I'm late)
- We're going to play basketball **if** it doesn't rain. (*not* when it doesn't rain)

when → **Unit 96** **if I had / if we went** . . . , etc. → **Unit 98**

Exercises

97.1 Write sentences beginning with **if**. Choose from the boxes.

If +	~~you don't hurry~~ you pass the driving test you fail the driving test you don't want this magazine you want those pictures you're busy now you're hungry you need money	+	we can have lunch now you can have them I can lend you some you'll get your license ~~you'll be late~~ I'll throw it away we can talk later you can take it again

1 If you don't hurry, you'll be late.
2 If you pass ……
3 If ……
4 ……
5 ……
6 ……
7 ……
8 ……

97.2 Which is right?

1 If I'm / ~~I'll be~~ late tonight, don't wait for me. (*I'm is right*)
2 Will you call me if I give / I'll give you my phone number?
3 If there is / will be a fire, the alarm will ring.
4 If I don't see you tomorrow morning, I call / I'll call you in the afternoon.
5 I'm / I'll be surprised if John and Rachel get / will get married.
6 Do you go / Will you go to the party if they invite / they'll invite you?

97.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1 I'm going to the concert if I can get a ticket.
2 If you don't hurry, you'll miss the train.
3 I don't want to disturb you if ……
4 If you go to bed early tonight, ……
5 Turn the TV off if ……
6 Rachel won't pass her driving test if ……
7 If I have time tomorrow, ……
8 We can go to the beach tomorrow if ……
9 I'll be surprised if ……

97.4 Write **if** or **when**.

1 If I'm late tonight, don't wait for me.
2 I'm going shopping now. …… I come back, we can have lunch.
3 I'm thinking of going to see Tom. …… I go, will you come with me?
4 …… you don't want to go out tonight, we can stay at home.
5 Is it OK …… I close the window?
6 John is still in high school. …… he finishes, he wants to go to college.
7 Do you want to go on a picnic tomorrow …… the weather is good?
8 We're going to Mexico City next week. We're going to look for a hotel …… we get there. I don't know what we'll do …… we don't find a room.

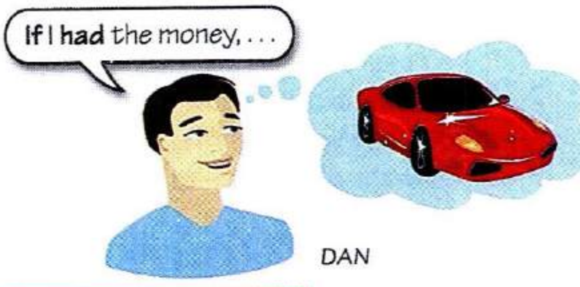
If I had . . . If we went . . . , etc.

A

Dan likes fast cars, but he doesn't have one.
He doesn't have enough money.

If he **had** the money, he **would buy** a fast car.

Usually **had** is *past*, but in this sentence **had** is *not* past. **If** he **had** the money = if he had the money *now* (but he doesn't have it).



If	I you, etc.	**had/knew/lived** (etc.) . . . , **didn't have / didn't know** (etc.) . . . , **were** . . . , **could** . . . ,	I you, etc.	**would** . . . **wouldn't** . . . **could** . . . **couldn't** . . .

You can say:
- **If he had** the money, he would buy a car.

or He would buy a car **if he had** the money.

I'd / she'd / they'd, etc. = I **would** / she **would** / they **would**, etc. :
- I don't know the answer. **If** I **knew** the answer, **I'd tell** you.
- It's raining, so we're not going out. We**'d get** wet **if** we **went** out.
- Emily lives in a city. She likes cities. She **wouldn't be** happy **if** she **lived** in the country.
- **If** you **didn't have** a job, what **would** you **do**? (but you *have* a job)
- I'm sorry I can't help you. I**'d help** you **if** I **could**. (but I *can't*)
- **If** we **had** a car, we **could travel** more. (but we *don't* have a car, so we *can't* travel much)

B

If (I) **was/were** . . .

You can say: **if** I/he/she/it **was** *or*
if I/he/she/it **were**

- It's not a very nice place. I wouldn't go there **if I were** you. (*or* . . . **if I was** you)
- It would be nice **if the weather was** better. (*or* . . . **if the weather were** better)
- What would Tom do **if he were** here? (*or* . . . **if he was** here)

C

Compare:

if I have / if it is, etc.
- I want to go and see Helen. **If** I **have** time, I **will go** today. (= maybe I'll have time, so maybe I'll go)
- I like that jacket. I**'ll buy** it **if** it **isn't** too expensive. (= maybe it will not be too expensive)
- **I'll help** you **if** I **can**. (= maybe I can)

if I had / if it was, etc.
- I want to go and see Helen. **If** I **had** time, I **would go** today. (= I don't have time today, so I will not go)
- I like this jacket, but it's very expensive. I**'d buy** it **if** it **wasn't** so expensive. (= it is expensive, so I'm not going to buy it)
- **I'd help** you **if** I **could**, but I can't.

if we go / if I have / if I can, etc. → **Unit 97**

Exercises

98.1 Complete the sentences.

1 I don't know the answer. If I ..knew.. the answer, I'd tell you.
2 I have a car. I couldn't travel very much if I ..didn't have.. a car.
3 I don't want to go out. If I .... to go out, I'd go.
4 We don't have a key. If we .... a key, we could get into the house.
5 I'm not hungry. I would have something to eat if I .... hungry.
6 Sue enjoys her work. She wouldn't do it if she .... it.
7 He can't speak any foreign languages. If he .... speak a foreign language, maybe he would get a better job.
8 You don't try hard enough. If you .... harder, you would have more success.
9 I have a lot to do today. If I .... so much to do, we could go out.

98.2 Put the verb in the correct form.

1 If ..he had.. the money, he would buy a fast car. (he/have)
2 Hannah likes living in a city. ..She wouldn't be.. happy if she lived in the country. (she/not/be)
3 If I wanted to learn Italian, ... to Italy. (I/go)
4 I didn't tell Helen what happened. She'd be angry if .... (she/know)
5 If .... a map, I could show you where I live. (we/have)
6 What would you do if .... a lot of money? (you/win)
7 It's not a very good hotel. .... there if I were you. (I/not/stay)
8 If .... closer to Miami, we would go there more often. (we/live)
9 I'm sorry you have to go now. .... nice if you had more time. (it/be)
10 I'm not going to take the job. I'd take it if .... better. (the salary / be)
11 I don't know anything about cars. If my car broke down, ... what to do. (I/not/know)
12 If you could change one thing in the world, what .... ? (you/change)

98.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb in the correct form:

we (have) a bigger house	**every day (be) the same**
we (buy) a bigger house	**the air (be) cleaner**
we (have) some pictures on the wall	**I (watch) it**
~~**it (be) a little cheaper**~~	**I (be) bored**

1 I'd buy that jacket if ..it was a little cheaper.. .
2 If there was a good movie on TV tonight, ...
3 This room would be nicer if ....
4 If there wasn't so much traffic, ...
5 Life would be boring if ....
6 If I had nothing to do, ...
7 We could invite all our friends to stay if ....
8 If we had more money, ...

98.4 Complete the sentences. Use your own ideas.

1 I'd be happier if ..I had less work.. .
2 If I could go anywhere in the world, ...
3 I wouldn't be very happy if ....
4 I'd buy .... if ....
5 If I saw an accident in the street, ...
6 The world would be a better place if ....

a person **who** . . . a thing **that/which** . . . (relative clauses 1)

A

I met a woman. **She** can speak six languages.
2 sentences

she → **who**

1 sentence
I met **a woman who** can speak six languages.

JACK

Jack was wearing a hat. **It** was too big for him.
2 sentences

it → **that** *or* **which**

1 sentence
Jack was wearing **a hat that** was too big for him.
or
Jack was wearing **a hat which** was too big for him.

B

who is for people (*not* things):

A thief is **a person**	**who** steals things.	
Do you know **anybody**	**who** can play the piano?	
The man	**who** called	didn't give his name.
The people	**who** work in the office	are very friendly.

C

that is for things or people:

An airplane is **a machine**	**that** flies.	
Emma lives in **a house**	**that** is 100 years old.	
The people	**that** work in the office	are very friendly.

You can use **that** for people, but **who** is more common.

D

which is for things (*not* people):

An airplane is **a machine**	**which** flies. (*not* a machine who . . .)
Emma lives in **a house**	**which** is 100 years old.

Do not use **which** for people:

- Do you remember **the woman who** played the piano at the party?
  (*not* the woman which . . .)

who and **which** in questions ➔ **Units 43, 45**   **the people we met** (relative clauses 2) ➔ **Unit 100**

Exercises

99.1 Choose from the boxes and write sentences: **A . . . is a person who . . . .** Use a dictionary if necessary.

~~a thief~~	a dentist
a butcher	a fool
a musician	a genius
a patient	a liar

doesn't tell the truth	is sick in the hospital
takes care of your teeth	~~steals things~~
is very intelligent	does stupid things
plays a musical instrument	sells meat

1 *A thief is a person who steals things.*
2 A butcher is a person ....
3 A musician ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....

99.2 Make one sentence from two.

1 (A man called. He didn't give his name.)
The man who called didn't give his name.
2 (A woman opened the door. She was wearing a yellow dress.)
The woman .... a yellow dress.
3 (Some students took the test. Most of them passed.)
Most of the students ....
4 (A police officer stopped our car. He wasn't very friendly.)
The ....

99.3 Write **who** or **which**.

1 I met a woman *who* can speak six languages.
2 What's the name of the man .... just started working in your office?
3 What's the name of the river .... flows through the town?
4 Where is the picture .... was hanging on the wall?
5 Do you know anybody .... wants to buy a car?
6 You always ask questions .... are difficult to answer.
7 I have a friend .... is very good at fixing cars.
8 I think everybody .... went to the party really enjoyed it.
9 Why does he always wear clothes .... are too small for him?

99.4 Right or wrong? Correct the mistakes.

1 A thief is a person which steals things.	*a person who steals*
2 An airplane is a machine that flies.	*OK*
3 A coffeemaker is a machine who makes coffee.	....
4 What happened to the money that was on the table?	....
5 I don't like people which never stop talking.	....
6 I know somebody that can help you.	....
7 I know somebody who works in that store.	....
8 Correct the sentences who are wrong.	....
9 My neighbor bought a car who cost $60,000.	....

the people **we met** the hotel **you stayed at** (relative clauses 2)

www.irLanguage.com

A

The man is carrying a bag. It's very heavy. } *2 sentences*

The bag (**that**) **he is carrying** is very heavy. — *1 sentence*

KATE

Kate won some money. What is she going to do with it? } *2 sentences*

What is Kate going to do with **the money** (**that**) **she won**? — *1 sentence*

You can say:

- The bag **that** he is carrying ... *or* The bag he is carrying ... (with or without **that**)
- ... the money **that** she won? *or* ... the money she won?

You do not need **that/who/which** when it is the *object*:

subject	*verb*	*object*	
The man	was carrying	a bag	→ **the bag** (that) **the man was carrying**
Kate	won	some money	→ **the money** (that) **Kate won**
You	wanted	some books	→ **the books** (that) **you wanted**
We	met	some people	→ **the people** (who) **we met**

- Did you find **the books you wanted**? (*or* ... the books **that** you wanted?)
- **The people we met** were very friendly. (*or* The people **who** we met ...)
- **Everything I said** was true. (*or* Everything **that** I said ...)

We say:

- The movie **we saw** was very good. (*not* The movie we saw it was ...)

B

Sometimes there is a *preposition* (**to**/**in**/**at**, etc.) after the verb:

Eve **is talking to** a man.	→	Do you know **the man Eve is talking to**?
We **stayed at** a hotel.	→	**The hotel we stayed at** was near the station.
I **told** you **about** some books.	→	These are **the books I told you about**.

We say:

... the books **I told you about**. (*not* the books I told you about them)

You can say "(a place) **where** ...":

- **The hotel where** we stayed was near the station. (= The hotel we stayed at ...)

C

You must use **who/that/which** when it is the *subject* (→ Unit 99):

- I met a woman **who can speak** six languages. (**who** is the subject)
- Jack was wearing a hat **that was** too big for him. (**that** is the subject)

a person who ..., **a thing that/which** ... (relative clauses 1) → **Unit 99**

Exercises

100.1 Make one sentence from two.

1 (Helen took some pictures. Have you seen them?)
Have you seen the pictures Helen took?

2 (You gave me a pen. I lost it.)
I lost the ....

3 (Sue is wearing a jacket. I like it.)
I like the ....

4 (I gave you some flowers. Where are they?)
Where are the ....?

5 (He told us a story. I didn't believe it.)
I ....

6 (You bought some oranges. How much were they?)
How ....?

100.2 Make one sentence from two.

1 (I was carrying a bag. It was very heavy.)
The bag I was carrying was very heavy.

2 (You cooked a meal. It was excellent.)
The ....

3 (I'm wearing shoes. They aren't very comfortable.)
The shoes ....

4 (We invited some people to dinner. They didn't come.)
The ....

100.3 You ask your friend some questions. Complete the sentences.

1 Your friend stayed at a hotel. You ask:
What's the name of *the hotel you stayed at*?

2 Your friend was talking to some people. You ask:
Who are the people ....?

3 Your friend was looking for some keys. You ask:
Did you find the ....?

4 Your friend is going to a party. You ask:
Where is the ....?

5 Your friend was talking about a movie. You ask:
What's the name of ....?

6 Your friend is listening to some music. You ask:
What's that ....?

7 Your friend applied for a job. You ask:
Did you get ....?

100.4 Complete the questions. Use **where**.

1 John stayed at a hotel. You ask him:
Did you like *the hotel where you stayed*?

2 Sue had dinner in a restaurant. You ask her:
What's the name of the restaurant ....?

3 Sarah lives in a town. You ask her:
How big is the ....?

4 Mike works in a hospital. You ask him:
Where exactly is ....?

at 8:00 on Monday in April

A

at

at	8:00 10:30 midnight, etc.
	night the end of . . .

- I start work **at 8:00** in the morning.
- The banks close **at 5:00.**
- I can't sleep **at night.**
- I'm taking a trip **at the end of** October.

B

on

(**on**)	Sunday(s) / Monday(s), etc. April 25 / June 6, etc. Monday morning / Tuesday afternoon / Friday night, etc. New Year's Day, etc.

You can say:

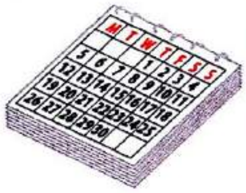
- Bye! See you **on Friday**. *or* See you **Friday**. (with or without **on**)
- Do you work **on Sundays**? *or* Do you work **Sundays**?
- The concert is **on November 20**. *or* The concert is **November 20**.
- I'm leaving **on Friday night**. *or* I'm leaving **Friday night**.

We say **on the weekend / on weekends** (always with **on**).

- They like to eat out **on the weekend / on weekends.**

C

in



in	April/June, etc. 2013/1988, etc. the spring/summer/fall/winter the morning/afternoon/evening

- I'm taking a trip **in October.**
- Amy was born **in 1995.**
- The park is beautiful **in the fall.**
- Do you often go out **in the evening**?

D

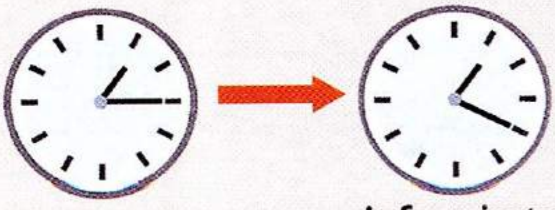
We do *not* use **at/on/in** before:

this . . . (**this morning / this week**, etc.) **every** . . . (**every day / every week**, etc.) **last** . . . (**last August / last week**, etc.) **next** . . . (**next Monday / next week**, etc.)

- What are you doing **this weekend**?
- We go on vacation **every summer. Last summer** we went to Europe.
- I'm leaving **next Monday.** (*not* on next Monday)

E

in five minutes / in a few days / in six weeks / in two years, etc.



now **in five minutes**

- Hurry! The train leaves **in five minutes.** (= it leaves five minutes from now)
- Bye! I'll see you **in a few days.** (= a few days from now)

in/at/on (places) ➔ **Units 104–105**

Exercises

101.1 Write **at** or **in**.

1 Samantha was born ...in... 1998.
2 I got up .... 8:00 this morning.
3 I like to get up early .... the morning.
4 I like to look at the stars .... night.
5 My brother got married .... May.
6 We often go to the beach .... the summer.
7 Let's meet .... 7:30 tomorrow night.
8 The company started .... 2000.
9 I'll send you the money .... the end of the month.
10 The café is open .... the evening. It closes .... midnight.

101.2 Write **at/on/in**.

1 ...on... June 6
2 ...in... the evening
3 .... half past two
4 .... Wednesday
5 2007
6 .... September
7 .... September 24
8 .... Thursday
9 .... 11:45
10 .... New Year's Eve
11 .... noon
12 .... the morning
13 .... Friday morning
14 .... Saturday night
15 .... night
16 .... the end of the day
17 .... the weekend
18 .... the winter

101.3 Which sentence is correct – A, B, or both of them?

	A	B	
1	I'm taking a trip in October.	I'm taking a trip on October.	A
2	Do you work Sundays?	Do you work on Sundays?	both
3	I always feel tired at the evening.	I always feel tired in the evening.	....
4	I'm leaving next Saturday.	I'm leaving on next Saturday.	....
5	Tom started his new job on May 18.	Tom started his new job May 18.	....
6	Sarah finished high school in 2012.	Sarah finished high school 2012.	....
7	We meet on every Tuesday.	We meet every Tuesday.	....
8	We don't often go out in night.	We don't often go out at night.	....
9	I can't meet you Thursday.	I can't meet you on Thursday.	....
10	Jessica saw Sam Monday night.	Jessica saw Sam on Monday night.	....
11	I'm leaving in the end of this month.	I'm leaving at the end of this month.	....
12	Tom goes to the gym on Fridays.	Tom goes to the gym Fridays.	....

101.4 Write sentences with **in . . . .**

1 It's 8:25 now. The train leaves at 8:30. The train leaves in five minutes.
2 It's Monday today. I'll call you on Thursday. I'll .... days.
3 Today is June 14. My exam is on June 28. My ....
4 It's 3:00 now. Tom will be here at 3:30. Tom ....

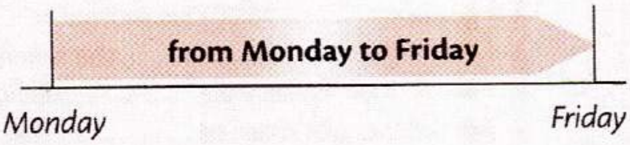
101.5 Write **at/on/in** if necessary. Sometimes the sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.

1 They like to eat out ...on... weekends.
2 I'm going ...–... next Friday. *(already complete)*
3 I always feel tired .... the evening.
4 Will you be at home .... this evening?
5 We went to France .... last summer.
6 Liz was born .... 2001.
7 What are you doing .... the weekend?
8 I call Matt .... every Sunday.
9 Should we play tennis .... next Sunday?
10 I couldn't go to the party .... last weekend.
11 I'm going out. I'll be back .... an hour.
12 I don't often go out .... night.

Unit 102 from . . . to until since for

A from . . . to . . .

- We lived in Japan **from** 2007 **to** 2014.
- I work **from** Monday **to** Friday.



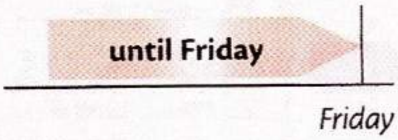
You can also say **from** . . . **until** . . . :

- We lived in Japan **from** 2007 **until** 2014.

B until . . .

until	Friday December 3:00 I come back

- They're leaving town tomorrow. They'll be away **until Friday**.
- I went to bed early, but I wasn't tired. I read a book **until 3:00 a.m.**
- Wait here **until I come back**.



You can also say **till** (= **until**):

- Wait here **till** I come back.

Compare:

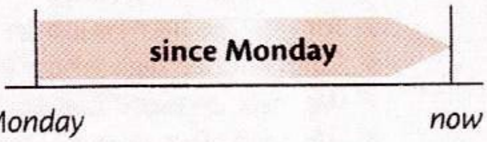
- "**How long** will you be away?" "**Until** Monday."
- "**When** are you coming back?" "**On** Monday."

C since + a time in the past (to now)

We use **since** after the *present perfect* (**have been** / **have done**, etc.):

since	Monday 2012 2:30 I arrived

- Joe is in the hospital. He has been in the hospital **since Monday**. (= from Monday to now)
- Sue and Dave have been married **since 2012**. (= from 2012 to now)
- It has been raining **since I arrived**.



Compare:

- We lived in Japan **from** 2007 **to** 2014.
  We lived in Japan **until** 2014.
- Now we live in Denver. We came to Denver **in** 2014.
  We have lived in Denver **since** 2014. (= from 2014 until now)

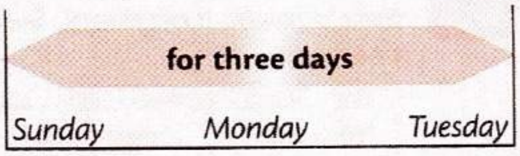
We use **for** (*not* **since**) + a period of time (**three days** / **10 years**, etc.):

- Joe has been in the hospital **for three days**. (*not* since three days)

D for + a period of time

for	three days 10 years five minutes a long time

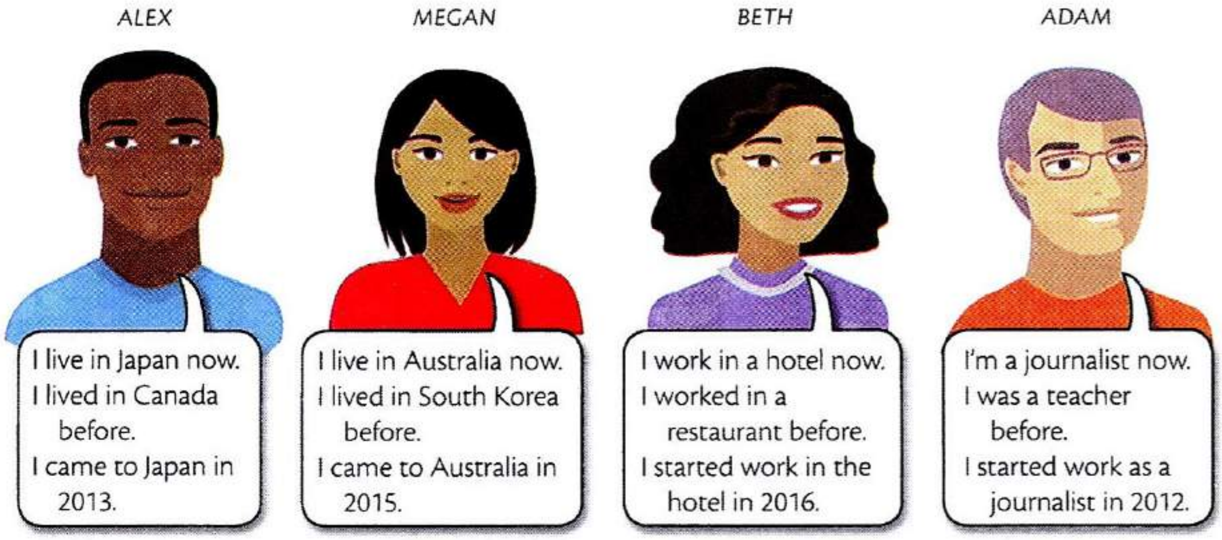
- Gary stayed with us **for three days**.
- I'm going away **for a few weeks**.
- I'm going away **for the weekend**.
- They've been married **for 10 years**.



present perfect + **for/since** ➔ **Units 17–18** present perfect (**I have lived**) and simple past (**I lived**) ➔ **Unit 19**

Exercises

102.1 Read the information and complete the sentences. Use **from . . . to** / **until** / **since**.



1 (Alex / Canada / 2005 → 2013) Alex lived *in Canada from 2005 to 2013* .
2 (Alex / Canada / → 2013) Alex lived in Canada .... 2013.
3 (Alex / Japan / 2013 →) Alex has lived in Japan ....
4 (Megan / South Korea → 2015) Megan lived in ....
5 (Megan / Australia / 2015 →) Megan has lived in ....
6 (Beth / a restaurant / 2014 → 2016) Beth worked .... 2014 ....
7 (Beth / a hotel / 2016 →) Beth has worked ....
8 (Adam / a teacher / 2006 → 2012) Adam was a ....
9 (Adam / a journalist / 2012 →) Adam has been ....

Now write sentences with **for**.

10 (Alex / Canada) *Alex lived in Canada for eight years* .
11 (Alex / Japan) Alex has lived in Japan ....
12 (Megan / Australia) Megan has ....
13 (Beth / a restaurant) Beth worked ....
14 (Beth / a hotel) Beth ....
15 (Adam / a teacher) Adam ....
16 (Adam / a journalist) Adam ....

102.2 Write **until**/**since**/**for**.

1 Sue and Dave have been married *since* 2012.
2 I was tired this morning. I stayed in bed .... 10:00.
3 We waited for Sue .... half an hour, but she didn't come.
4 "Did you just get here?" "No, I've been here .... 7:30."
5 "How long did you stay at the party last night?" " .... midnight."
6 Dan and I are good friends. We have known each other .... 10 years.
7 I'm tired. I'm going to lie down .... a few minutes.
8 *(in an airplane that's landing)* Please stay in your seats .... the airplane reaches the gate.
9 This is my house. I've lived here .... I was seven years old.
10 Jack is out of town. He'll be away .... Wednesday.
11 Next week I'm going to Chicago .... three days.
12 I usually finish work at 5:30, but sometimes I work .... 6:00.
13 "How long have you known Anna?" " .... we were in high school."
14 Where have you been? I've been waiting for you .... 20 minutes.

Unit 103

before after during while

A

before, **during**, and **after**

before the movie

during the movie

after the movie

- Everybody feels nervous **before a test**.
- I fell asleep **during the movie**.
- We were tired **after our visit** to the museum.

B

before, **while**, and **after**

before we played

while we were playing

after we played

- Don't forget to close the window **before you go out**.
- I often fall asleep **while I'm reading**.
- They watched TV **after they did the dishes**.

C

during, **while**, and **for**

We use **during** + *noun* (during **the movie**). We use **while** + *verb* (while **I'm reading**):

- We didn't speak **during the meal**.

but We didn't speak **while we were eating**. (*not* during we were eating)

Use **for** (*not* during) + *a period of time* (**three days / two hours / a year**, etc.):

- We played basketball **for two hours**. (*not* during two hours)
- I lived in Florida **for a year**. (*not* during a year)

D

You can use **before/after** + **-ing** (**before going / after eating**, etc.):

- I always have breakfast **before going** to work. (= before I go to work)
- **After doing** the dishes, they watched TV. (= after they did)

We say **before going** (*not* before to go), **after doing** (*not* after to do), etc.:

- **Before eating** the apple, I washed it carefully. (*not* before to eat)
- I started work **after reading** the newspaper. (*not* after to read)

past continuous (**I was -ing**) ➔ **Units 13–14** **before/after/while/when** ➔ **Unit 96** **for** ➔ **Unit 102**
prepositions + **-ing** ➔ **Unit 110**

Exercises

103.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

after	**during**
before	**while**

\+

lunch	**the end**	**they went to Mexico**
the concert	~~**the test**~~	**you're waiting**
the course	**the night**	

1 Everybody was nervous *before the test*.
2 I usually work four hours in the morning and another three hours ....
3 The movie was really boring. We left ....
4 Anna went to night school to learn German. She learned a lot ....
5 My aunt and uncle lived in Chicago ....
6 A: Somebody broke a window .... Did you hear anything?
B: No, I was asleep all night.
7 Would you like to sit down .... ?
8 A: Are you going home .... ?
B: Yes, I have to get up early tomorrow.

103.2 Write **during/while/for.**

1 We didn't speak *while* we were eating.
2 We didn't speak *during* the meal.
3 Josh called .... you were out.
4 Lauren went to Italy and stayed in Rome .... five days.
5 I didn't check my email .... I was away.
6 The students looked very bored .... the class.
7 I fell out of bed .... I was asleep.
8 Last night I watched TV .... three hours.
9 I don't usually watch TV .... the day.
10 Do you ever watch TV .... you are having dinner?

103.3 Complete the sentences. Use **-ing** (**doing**, **having**, etc.).

1 After *doing* the dishes, they watched TV.
2 I felt sick after .... too much chocolate.
3 I'm going to ask you a question. Think carefully before .... it.
4 I felt awful when I got up this morning. I felt better after .... a shower.
5 After .... my work, I left the office and went home.
6 Before .... to a foreign country, it's good to try and learn a little of the language.

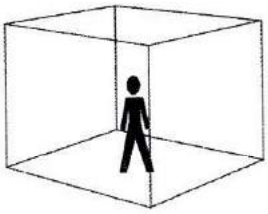
103.4 Write sentences with **before + -ing** and **after + -ing**.

1 They did the dishes. Then they watched TV.
After *doing the dishes, they watched TV.*
2 John finished high school. Then he worked in a bookstore for two years.
John worked ....
3 I read for a few minutes. Then I went to sleep.
Before ....
4 We walked for three hours. We were very tired.
After ....
5 Let's have a cup of coffee. Then we'll go out.
Let's ....

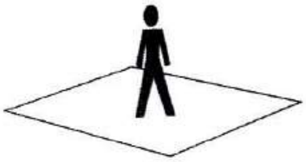
in at on (places 1)

www.irLanguage.com

A in



in a store
in a room
in a car
in the water



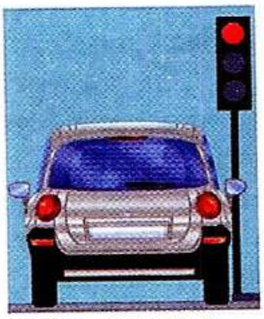
in a garden
in a town
in a park
in Brazil

- "Where's David?" "**In the kitchen. / In the garden. / In Seoul.**"
- What's **in that box / in that bag / in that closet**?
- Rachel works **in a store / in a bank / in a factory.**
- I went for a swim **in the river / in the pool / in the ocean.**
- Milan is **in the north of Italy.** Naples is **in the south.**
- I live **in a big city**, but I'd like to live **in the country.**

B at

at the bus stop

at the door



at the traffic light

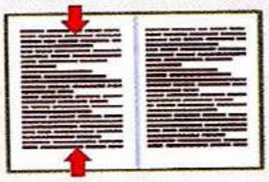
at her desk

- There's somebody **at the bus stop / at the door.**
- The car is waiting **at the traffic light.**
- Anna is working **at her desk.**

at the top / at the bottom / at the end (of . . .):

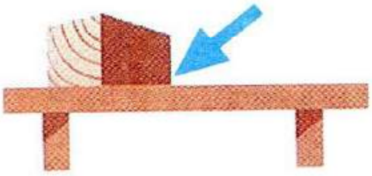
- Write your name **at the top of the page.**
- My house is **at the end of the street.**

at the top (of the page)

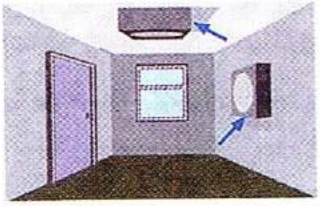


at the bottom (of the page)

C on

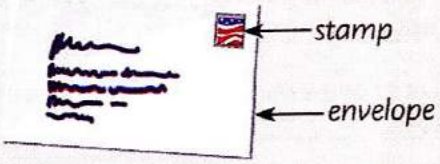


on a shelf
on a plate
on a balcony
on the floor, etc.



on a wall
on the ceiling
on a door, etc.

- There are some books **on the shelf** and some pictures **on the wall.**
- There are a lot of apples **on those trees.**
- Don't sit **on the grass.** It's wet.
- There is a stamp **on the envelope.**



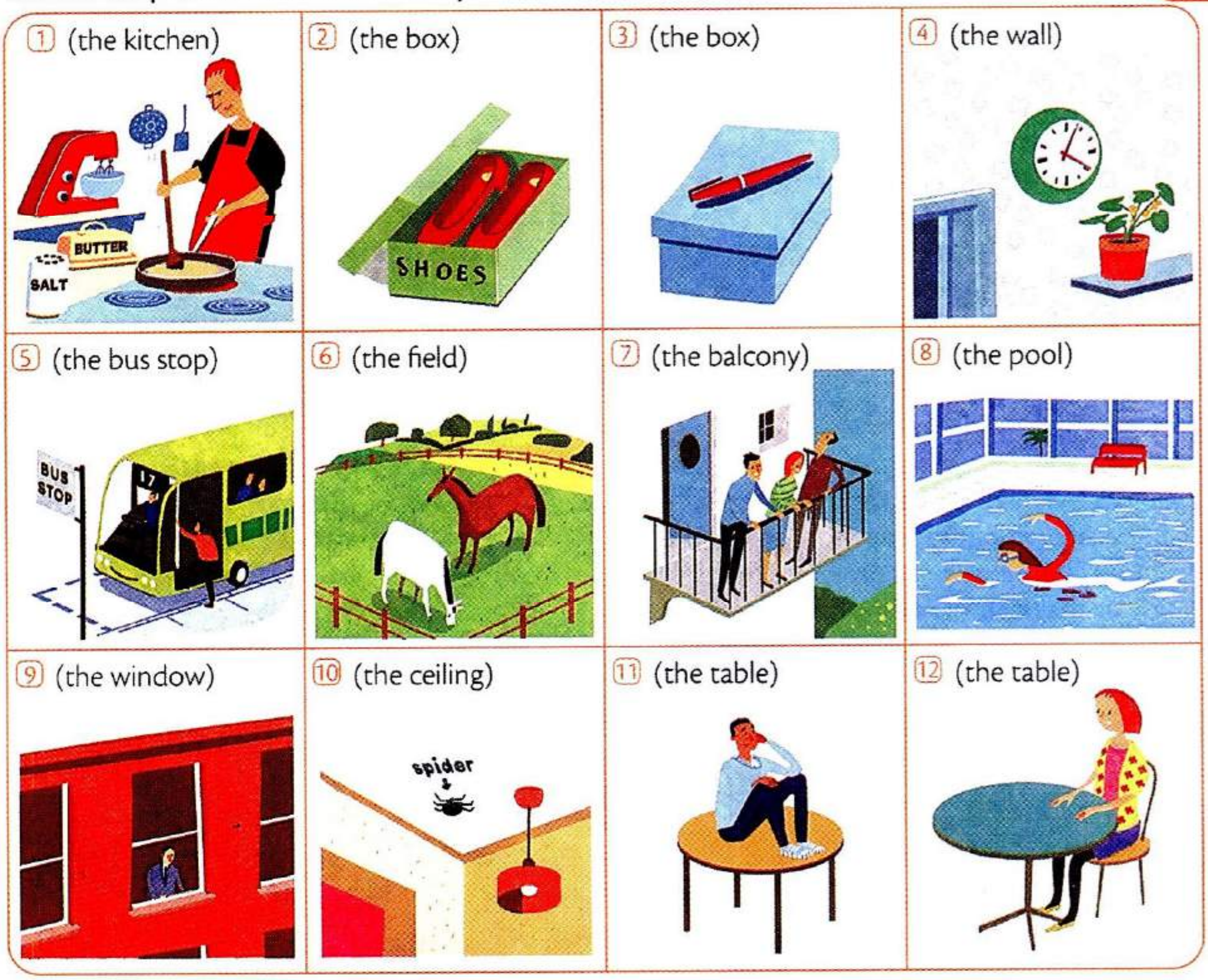
on a horse / on a bike / on a motorcycle:

- Who is that man **on the motorcycle**?

the top / the bottom → **Unit 68** **at/on/in** (time) → **Unit 101** **in/at/on** (places 2) → **Unit 105**

Exercises

104.1 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use **in/at/on**.



1 Where is he? In the kitchen.
2 Where are the shoes? ....
3 Where is the pen? ....
4 Where is the clock? ....
5 Where is the bus? ....
6 Where are the horses? ....
7 Where are they standing? ....
8 Where is she swimming? ....
9 Where is he standing? ....
10 Where is the spider? ....
11 Where is he sitting? ....
12 Where is she sitting? ....

104.2 Write **in/at/on**.

1 Don't sit ..on.. the grass. It's wet.
2 What do you have .... your bag?
3 Look! There's a man .... the roof. What's he doing?
4 There are a lot of fish .... this river.
5 Our house is number 45 – the number is .... the door.
6 "Is the hospital near here?" "Yes, turn left .... the traffic light."
7 I have a small vegetable garden .... the backyard.
8 My sister lives .... Prague.
9 There's a small park .... the top of the hill.
10 I think I heard the doorbell. There's somebody .... the door.
11 Munich is a large city .... the south of Germany.
12 There's a gas station .... the end of the block.
13 It's difficult to carry a lot of things .... a bike.
14 I looked at the list of names. My name was .... the bottom.
15 There is a mirror .... the wall .... the living room.

in at on (places 2)

A in

in bed
in the hospital
in the sky
in the world
in a newspaper / **in** a book
in a photo(graph) / **in** a picture
in a car / **in** a taxi
in the middle (of . . .)

- "Where's Kate?" "She's **in bed**."
- David's father is sick. He's **in the hospital**.
- I like to look at the stars **in the sky** at night.
- What's the largest city **in the world**?
- I read about the accident **in the newspaper**.
- You look sad **in this picture**.
- Did you come here **in your car**?
- There's a big tree **in the middle** of the yard.

B at

at work / **at** school
at the train station / **at** the airport
at the post office / **at** the supermarket
at Jen's (house) / **at** my sister's (house), etc.
at the doctor's / **at** the hairdresser's, etc.
at a concert / **at** a party / **at** a football game, etc.

- "Where's Kate?" "She's **at work**."
- Do you want me to meet you **at the train station**?
- I saw your brother **at the post office** today.
- "Where were you yesterday?" "**At my sister's**."
- I saw Tom **at the doctor's**.
- There weren't many people **at the party**.

Often it is possible to use **at** or **in** for buildings (hotels, restaurants, etc.):

- We stayed **at** a nice hotel. *or* We stayed **in** a nice hotel.

C

You can say **at school** or **in school**, but there is a difference.

She's **at school** = she's there now:

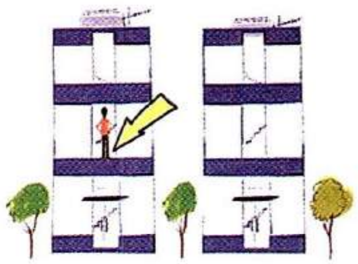
- "Where's your sister? Is she home?" "No, she's **at school**."

She's **in school** = she's a student (**in high school, in college, in medical school**, etc.):

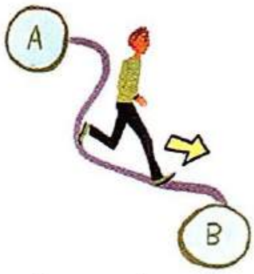
- "Does your sister have a job?" "No, she's still **in school** / **in college**."

D on

on a bus



on the second floor



on the way from A to B

on a bus / **on** a train / **on** a plane / **on** a ship
on the first floor (*or* ground floor), **on** the second floor, etc.
on the way (to . . .) / **on** the way home

- Did you come here **on the bus**?
- The office is **on the second floor**.
- I met Anna **on the way** to work / **on the way** home.

We say that a place is "**on a street**" or that somebody "**lives on a street**":

- My brother lives **on a** nice **street**.

in/at/on (places 1) → **Unit 104** **to/in/at** → **Unit 106** **(at) home** → **Unit 106** **on the left/right** → **Unit 107**

Exercises

105.1 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use **in**/**at**/**on**.

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

1 (the hospital) 2 (the airport) 3 (bed) 4 (a ship) 5 (the sky) 6 (a party) 7 (the doctor's) 8 (the second floor) 9 (work) 10 (a plane) 11 (a taxi) 12 (a wedding)

1. Where is she? *In the hospital.*
2. Where are they? ....
3. Where is he? ....
4. Where are they? ....
5. Where are the stars? ....
6. Where are they? ....
7. Where is Andy? ....
8. Where is the restaurant? ....
9. Where is she? ....
10. Where are they? ....
11. Where are they? ....
12. Where are they? ....

105.2 Write **in**/**at**/**on**.

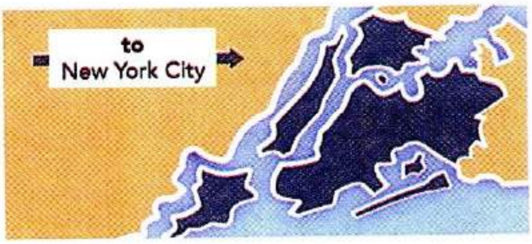
1. "Where's your sister? Is she home?" "No, she's *at* school."
2. There was a big table .... the middle of the room.
3. What is the longest river .... the world?
4. Were there many people .... the concert last night?
5. There's a new restaurant .... Main Street.
6. Who is the man .... this picture? Do you know him?
7. "Is your son going to get married soon?" "No, he's still .... college."
8. Dan is coming by bus. I'm going to meet him .... the station.
9. John is .... the hospital. He had an operation yesterday.
10. How many pages are there .... this book?
11. "Are you hungry after your trip?" "Yes, there was nothing to eat .... the plane."
12. I'm sorry I'm late. My car broke down .... the way here.
13. "Is Tom here?" "No, he's .... his friend's house."
14. Don't believe everything you read .... the newspaper!
15. I walked to work, but I came home .... the bus.
16. A: *(on the phone)* Can I speak to Anna, please?
    B: No, sorry. She'll be .... the university until 5:00 today.

to in at (places 3)

A

to

go/come/return/walk, (etc.) **to** . . . :



- We're **going to New York** on Sunday.
- I want to **go to Mexico** next year.
- We **walked** from my house **to the mall**.
- What time do you **go to bed**?

- The bus is **going to the airport**.
- Karen didn't **go to work** yesterday.
- I **went to a party** last night.
- We'd like you to **come to our house**.

in/at (→ Units 104–105)

be/stay/do something, (etc.) **in** . . . :

- The Statue of Liberty **is in New York**.
- My brother **lives in Mexico**.
- The best stores **are in the mall**.
- I like **to read in bed**.

be/stay/do something, etc. **at** . . . :

- The bus **is at the airport**.
- Sarah **wasn't at work** yesterday.
- I **met a lot of people at the party**.
- Helen **stayed at her brother's house**.

B

home

go/come/walk, (etc.) **home** (without **to**):

- I'm tired. I'm **going home**.
  (*not* to home)
- Did you **walk home**?

be/stay (**at**) **home** (*with* or *without* **at**):

- I'm **staying home** tonight. *or*
  I'm **staying at home** tonight.

do something (**work, watch TV,** etc.) **at home**

- Dan doesn't work in an office.
  He **works at home**.

C

arrive and **get**

arrive in a country or town (**arrive in Mexico / arrive in Tokyo,** etc.):

- They **arrived in this country** last week. (*not* arrived to this country)

arrive at other places (**arrive at the station / arrive at work,** etc.):

- What time did you **arrive at the hotel**? (*not* arrive to the hotel)

get to (**a place**):

- What time did you **get to the hotel**?
- What time did you **get to Tokyo**?

get home / arrive home (no preposition):

- I was tired when **I got home**. *or* I was tired when I **arrived home**.

been to ➔ **Unit 16** **get** (to . . .) ➔ **Unit 54** **in/at** ➔ **Units 104–105**

Exercises

106.1 Write **to** or **in**.

1 I like reading ...in... bed.
2 We're going .... Italy next month.
3 Sue is on vacation .... Mexico right now.
4 I have to go .... the hospital tomorrow.
5 I was tired, so I stayed .... bed.
6 What time do you usually go .... bed?
7 Does this bus go .... the airport?
8 Would you like to live .... another country?

106.2 Write **to** or **at** if necessary. One sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.

1 Olivia didn't go ...to... work yesterday.
2 I'm tired. I'm going ...–... home. *(already complete)*
3 Tina is sick. She went .... the doctor.
4 Would you like to come .... a party on Saturday?
5 "Is Liz .... home?" "No, she went .... work."
6 There were 20,000 people .... the football game.
7 Why did you go .... home early last night?
8 A boy jumped into the river and swam .... the other side.
9 There were a lot of people waiting .... the bus stop.
10 We had dinner .... a restaurant and then we went back .... the hotel.

106.3 Write **to**, **at**, or **in** if necessary.

1 Joe is coming tomorrow. I'm meeting him ...at... the airport.
2 We're going .... a concert tomorrow night.
3 I went .... Chile last year.
4 How long did you stay .... Chile?
5 Next year we hope to go .... Japan to visit some friends.
6 Do you want to go .... the movies tonight?
7 Did you park your car .... the station?
8 After the accident, three people were taken .... the hospital.
9 How often do you go .... the dentist?
10 "Is Sarah here?" "No, she's .... Emma's."
11 My house is .... the end of the block on the left.
12 I went .... Maria's house, but she wasn't .... home.
13 There were no taxis, so we had to walk .... home.
14 "Who did you meet .... the party?" "I didn't go .... the party."

106.4 Write **to**, **at**, or **in** if necessary. Sometimes the sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.

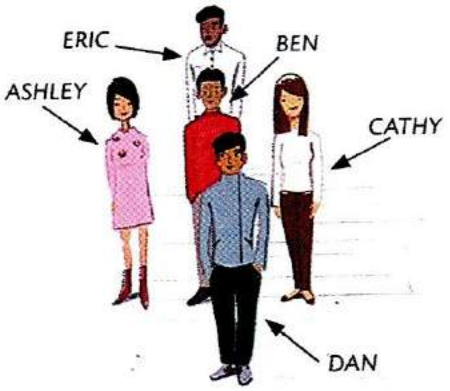
1 What time do you usually get .... work?
2 What time do you usually get .... home?
3 What time did you arrive .... the party?
4 When did you arrive .... Dallas?
5 What time does the plane get .... Paris?
6 We arrived .... home very late.

106.5 Complete these sentences about yourself. Use **to**/**in**/**at**.

1 At 3:00 this morning I was ...in bed.......................... .
2 Yesterday I went ....
3 At 11:00 yesterday morning I was ....
4 One day I'd like to go ....
5 I don't like going ....
6 At 9:00 last night I was ....

Unit 107 next to, between, under, etc.

A next to / between / in front of / behind



Ashley is **next to** Ben.
Ben is **between** Ashley and Cathy.
Dan is **in front of** Ben.
Eric is **behind** Ben.

also
Ashley is **on the left**.
Cathy is **on the right**.
Ben is **in the middle** (of the group).

B across from / in front of

Anna is sitting **in front of** Brandon.
Anna is sitting **across from** Chris.
Chris is sitting **across from** Anna.

C by (= next to)

by the window

- Who is that man standing **by the window**?
- Our house is **by the ocean**. (= next to the ocean)
- If you feel cold, why don't you sit **by the fire**?

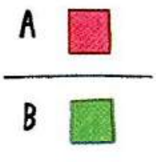
D under

under the table

under a tree

- The cat is **under the table**.
- The girl is standing **under a tree**.
- I'm wearing a jacket **under my coat**.

E above and below



A is **above the line**.
(= higher than the line)

B is **below the line**.
(= lower than the line)

The pictures are **above the shelves**.

The shelves are **below the pictures**.

up/over/through, etc. ➜ **Unit 108**   **by** ➜ **Unit 109**

Exercises

107.1 Where are the people in the picture? Complete the sentences.

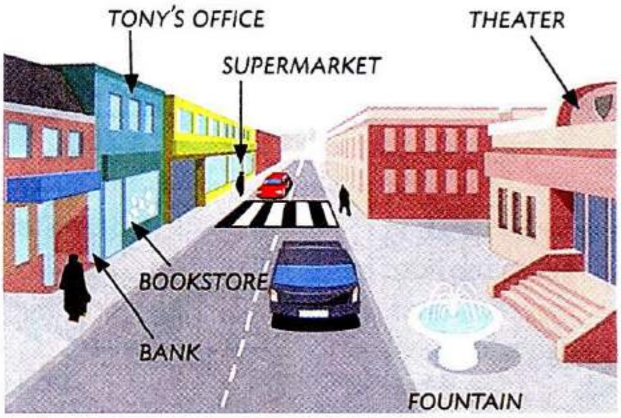
1. Connor is standing ...*behind*... Fred.
2. Fred is sitting .... Emily.
3. Emily is sitting .... Barbara.
4. Emily is sitting .... Donna and Fred.
5. Donna is sitting .... Emily.
6. Fred is sitting .... Connor.
7. Alan is standing .... Donna.
8. Alan is standing .... left.
9. Barbara is standing .... middle.

107.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

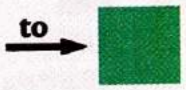
1. The cat is ...*under*... the table.
2. There is a big tree .... the house.
3. The plane is flying .... the clouds.
4. She is standing .... the piano.
5. The movie theater is .... the right.
6. She's standing .... the fridge.
7. The calendar is .... the clock.
8. The cabinet is .... the sink.
9. There are some shoes .... the bed.
10. The plant is .... the piano.
11. Ryan is sitting .... Anna.
12. In Japan people drive .... the left.

107.3 Write sentences about the picture.

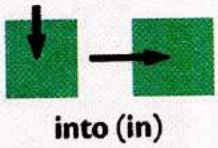


1. (next to) ...*The bank is next to the bookstore.*...
2. (in front of) The .... in front of ....
3. (across from) ....
4. (next to) ....
5. (above) ....
6. (between) ....

up, over, through, etc.



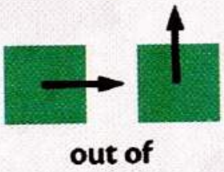
- Sarah is going **to** France next week.
- We walked **from** the hotel **to** the station.
- A lot of English words come **from** Latin.

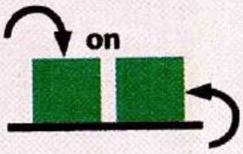


- We jumped **into** the water.
- A man came **out of** the house and got **into** a car.
- I took the old batteries **out of** the radio.

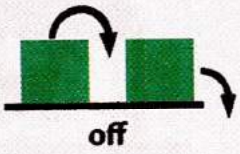
We say **put** something **in** . . . (*not usually* into):

- I **put** new batteries **in** the radio.

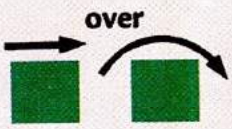




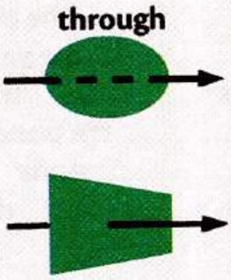
- Don't put your feet **on** the table.
- Please take your feet **off** the table.
- I'm going to hang some pictures **on** the wall.
- Be careful! Don't fall **off** your bike!
- We got **on** the bus downtown.



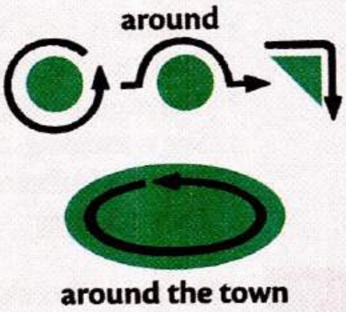
- We walked **up** the hill to the house.
- Be careful! Don't fall **down** the stairs.



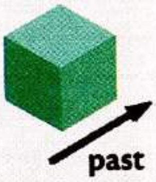
- The plane flew **over** the mountains.
- I jumped **over** the wall into the yard.
- Some people say it is unlucky to walk **under** a ladder.



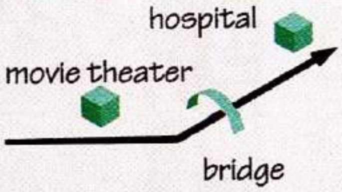
- A bird flew into the room **through** a window.
- The old highway goes **through** the town.
- The new road goes **around** the town.
- The bus stop is just **around** the corner.
- I walked **around** the town and took some pictures.



- I was walking **along** the road with my dog.
- Let's go for a walk **along** the river.
- The dog swam **across** the river.



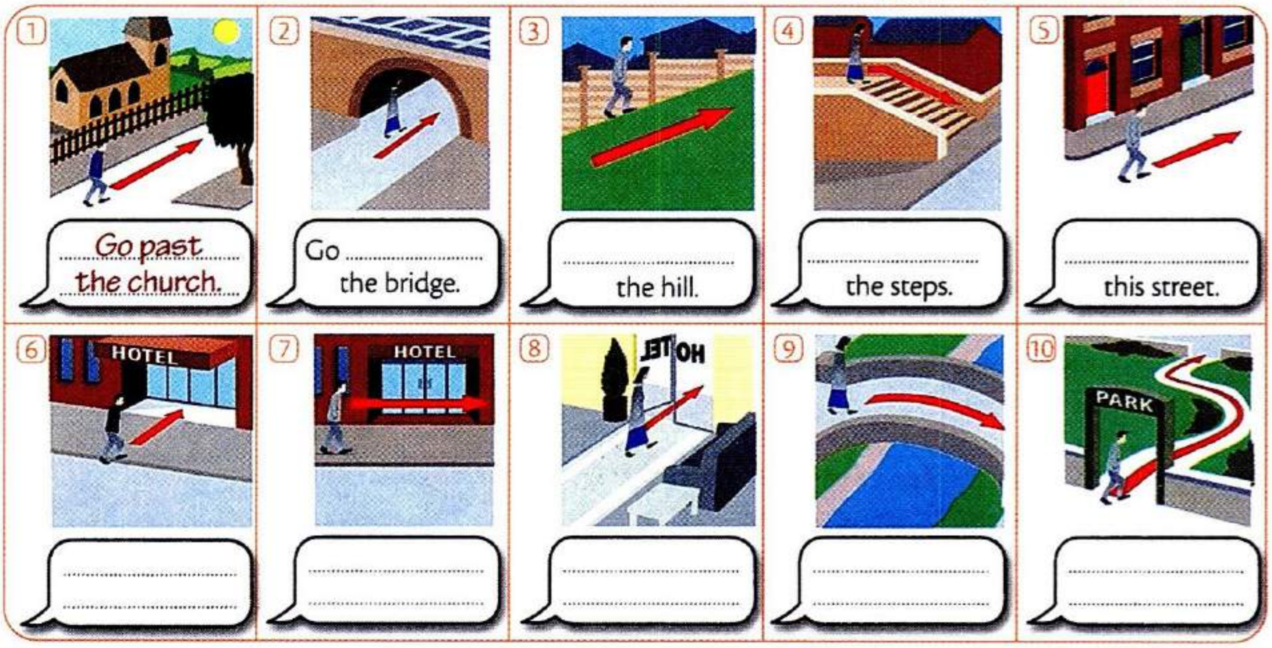
- They walked **past** me without speaking.
- A: Excuse me, how do I get to the hospital?
  B: Go along this street, **past** the movie theater, under the bridge, and the hospital is on the left.



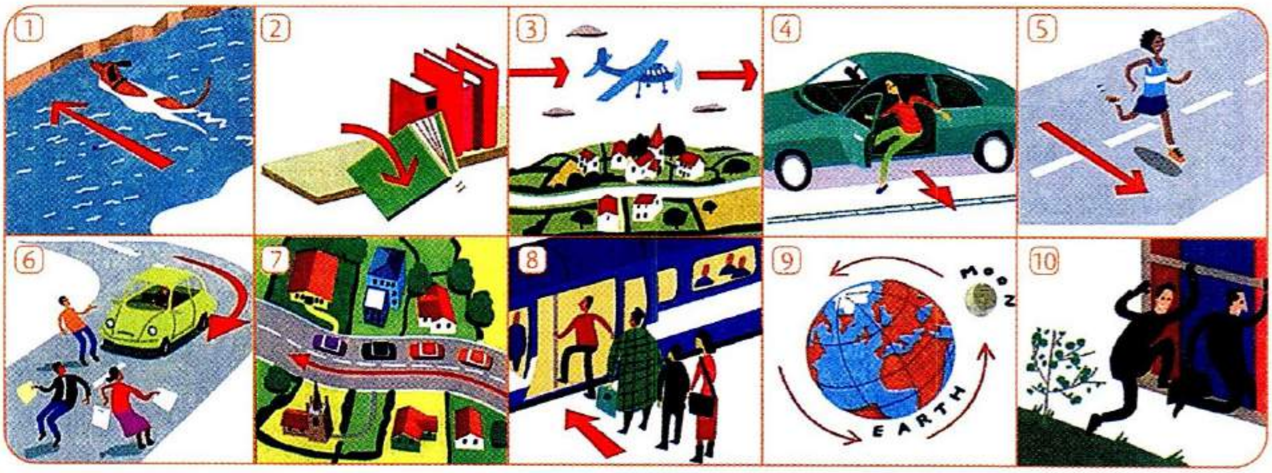
get in/on → Unit 54 in/on → Units 104–105 to → Unit 106 fall off / run away, etc. → Unit 112

Exercises

108.1 Somebody asks you how to get to a place.
You say which way to go. Look at the pictures
and write sentences beginning with **Go . . . .**



108.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



1 The dog swam ...*across*... the river.
2 A book fell .... the shelf.
3 A plane flew .... the village.
4 A woman got .... the car.
5 A girl ran .... the street.
6 Suddenly a car came .... the corner.
7 They drove .... the village.
8 They got .... the train.
9 The moon travels .... the earth.
10 They got .... the house .... a window.

108.3 Complete the sentences. Use **over/from/to**, etc.

1 I looked .... the window and watched the people in the street.
2 My house is near here. It's just .... the corner.
3 "Where's my phone?" "You put it .... your bag."
4 How far is it .... here .... the airport?
5 We walked .... the museum for an hour and saw a lot of interesting things.
6 You can put your coat .... the back of the chair.
7 In tennis, you have to hit the ball .... the net.
8 Adriana took a key .... her bag and opened the door.

on at by with about

A on

on vacation
on TV / on television
on the radio
on the phone
on fire
on time (= not late)

- Megan isn't at work this week. She's **on vacation**.
- We watched the news **on TV**.
- We listened to the news **on the radio**.
- I spoke to Rachel **on the phone** last night.
- The house is **on fire**! Call the fire department.
- "Was the train late?" "No, it was **on time**."

irLanguage.com

B at

at (the age of) 21 / at 50 miles an hour / at 100 degrees, etc. :

- Olivia got married **at 21**. (*or* . . . **at the age of 21**.)
- A car uses more gas **at 70 miles an hour** than **at 55**.
- Water boils **at 100 degrees Celsius**.

C by

by car / by bus / by plane / by bike, etc. :

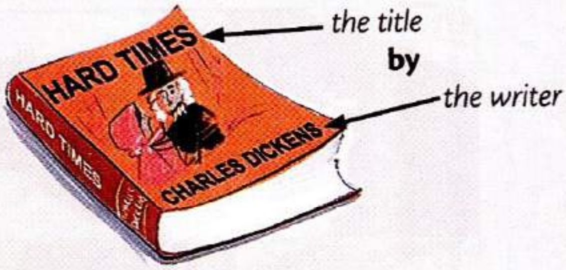
- Do you like traveling **by train**?
- Jenn usually goes to work **by bike**.

but **on foot**:

- You can't get there **by car**. You have to go **on foot**. (= you have to walk)

a book **by** . . . / a painting **by** . . . / a piece of music **by** . . . , etc. :

- Have you read any books **by Charles Dickens**?
- **Who** is that painting **by**? Andy Warhol?



by after the *passive* (→ Unit 20):

- I was bitten **by a dog**.

D with/without

- Did you stay at a hotel or **with friends**?
- Wait for me. Please don't go **without me**.
- Do you like your coffee **with** or **without milk**?
- I cut the paper **with a pair of scissors**.

a man **with** a beard / a woman **with** glasses, etc.:

- Do you know that man **with the beard**?
- I'd like to have a house **with a big yard**.

E about

talk/speak/think/hear/know about . . . :

- Some people **talk about their work** all the time.
- I don't **know** much **about cars**.

a book / a question / a program / information, etc. **about** . . . :

- There was **a program about** volcanoes on TV last night. Did you see it?

by → Units 20, 61, 107 at/on → Units 101, 104–105 preposition + -ing → Unit 110

Exercises

109.1 Complete the sentences. Use **on** + these words:

the phone	~~the radio~~	TV	time	vacation

1 We heard the news ....on the radio.... .
2 Please don't be late. Try to get here ....
3 I won't be here next week. I'm going ....
4 "Did you see Linda?" "No, but I talked to her ...."
5 "What's .... tonight?" "Nothing that I want to watch."

109.2 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with **at/by/with**, etc.

1 I cut the paper ....with.... a pair of scissors.
2 Last year they took a trip around the world .... boat.
3 Who is the woman .... short hair?
4 They are talking .... the weather.
5 The car is .... fire.
6 She's listening to some music .... Mozart.
7 The plane is flying .... 600 miles an hour.
8 They're .... vacation.
9 Do you know the man .... sunglasses?
10 He's reading a book .... grammar .... Vera P. Bull.

109.3 Complete the sentences. Use **at/by/with**, etc.

1 In tennis, you hit the ball .... a racket.
2 It's cold today. Don't go out .... a coat.
3 *Hamlet*, *Othello*, and *Macbeth* are plays .... William Shakespeare.
4 Do you know anything .... computers?
5 My grandmother died .... the age of 98.
6 How long does it take to go from New York to Los Angeles .... plane?
7 I didn't go to the football game, but I watched it .... TV.
8 My house is the one .... the red door on the right.
9 These trains are very fast. They can travel .... very high speeds.
10 You can't get there .... car. There's no road.
11 Can you give me some information .... hotels in this town?
12 I was arrested .... two police officers and taken to the police station.
13 The buses here are very good. They're almost always .... time.
14 What would you like to drink .... your meal?
15 We traveled from Los Angeles to Seattle .... train.
16 The museum has some paintings .... Frida Kahlo.

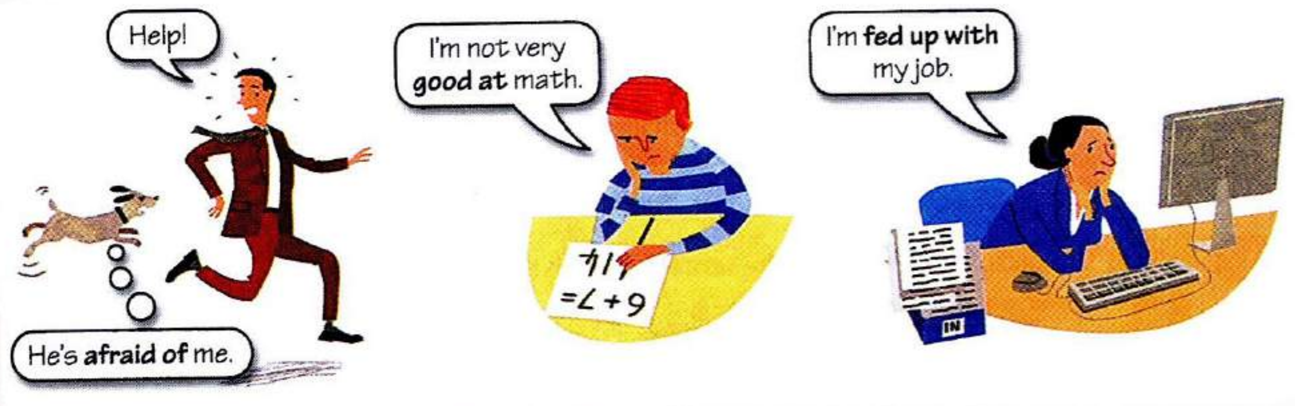
→ **Additional exercise 35 (page 256)**

Unit 110 afraid of . . . , good at . . . , etc. of/at/for, etc. (prepositions) + -ing

www.irLanguage.com

A

afraid of . . . / **good at** . . . , etc. (*adjective + preposition*)



afraid of . . . / **scared of**	Are you **afraid of** dogs? *or* Are you **scared of** dogs?
angry/mad about something	Are you **angry about** last night? (= something that happened last night)
angry/mad at somebody	Why are you **mad at** me? What did I do?
bad at . . .	Tina is very **bad at** tennis.
different from . . . *or* **different than** . . .	Lisa is very **different from** her sister. *or* Lisa is very **different than** her sister.
fed up with . . .	I'm **fed up with** my job. I want to do something different. (= I've had enough of my job)
full of . . .	The room was **full of** people.
good at . . .	Are you **good at** math?
interested in . . .	I'm not **interested in** sports.
married to . . .	Sue is **married to** a dentist. (= her husband is a dentist)
nice/kind of somebody to . . .	It was **nice of** you to help us. Thank you very much.
be **nice/kind to** somebody	David is very friendly. He's always very **kind to** me.
sorry about a situation	I'm afraid I can't help you. I'm **sorry about** that.
sorry for/about doing something	**Sorry for** being late. *or* **Sorry about** being late. (You can also say: Sorry I'm late)
be/feel **sorry for** somebody	I feel **sorry for** them. They are in a very difficult situation.

B

of/at/for, etc. + **-ing**

After a preposition (**of/at/for**, etc.), a verb ends in **-ing**:

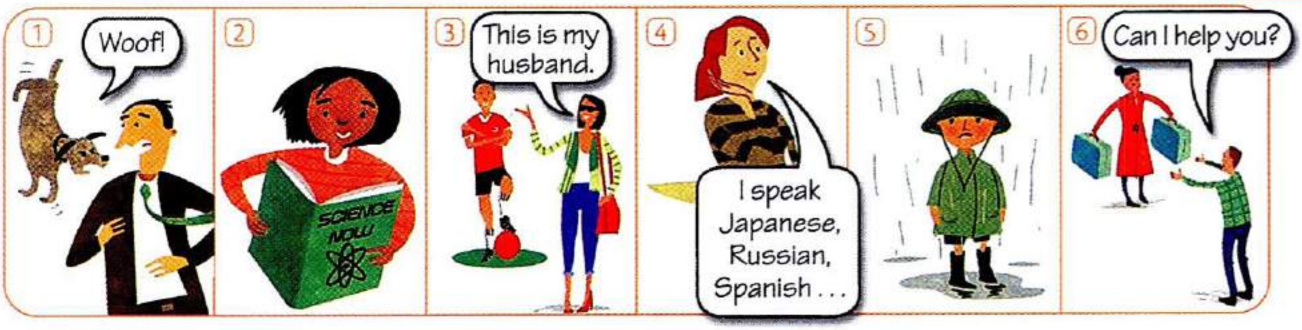
I'm not very good **at**	**telling**	stories.
Are you fed up **with**	**doing**	the same thing every day?
I'm sorry **for**	**being**	late.
Thank you **for**	**helping**	me.
Mark is thinking **of**	**buying**	a new car.
Tom left **without**	**saying**	goodbye. (= he didn't say goodbye)
After	**doing**	the housework, they went shopping.

before/after -ing → Unit 103 **think about/of** → Unit 111

Exercises

irLanguage.com

110.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with **of/with/in**, etc.



1 He's afraid ...*of*... dogs.
2 She's interested .... science.
3 She's married .... a soccer player.
4 She's very good .... languages.
5 He's fed up .... the weather.
6 A: Can I help you?
B: Thanks, that's very nice .... you.

110.2 Complete the sentences with **in/of/about**, etc.

1 I'm not interested ...*in*... sports.
2 I'm not very good .... sports.
3 I like Sarah. She's always very nice .... me.
4 I'm sorry .... your broken window. It was an accident.
5 He's very brave. He isn't scared .... anything.
6 It was very nice .... Jane to let us stay in her apartment.
7 Life today is very different .... life 50 years ago.
8 Are you interested .... politics?
9 I feel sorry .... her, but I can't help her.
10 Chris was angry .... what happened.
11 These boxes are very heavy. They are full .... books.
12 What's wrong? Are you mad .... me?

110.3 Complete the sentences.

1 I'm not very ...*good at telling*... stories. (good/tell)
2 I wanted to go to the movies, but Emily wasn't .... (interested/go)
3 Sue isn't very .... up in the morning. (good/get)
4 Let's go! I'm .... (fed up / wait)
5 I'm .... you up in the middle of the night. (sorry/wake)
6 Sorry I'm late! .... (thank you / wait)

110.4 Complete the sentences. Use **without -ing**.

1 (Tom left / he didn't say goodbye) ...*Tom left without saying goodbye.*...
2 (Sue walked past me / she didn't look at me)
Sue walked ....
3 (Don't do anything / ask me first)
Don't ....
4 (I went out / I didn't lock the door)
I ....

110.5 Write sentences about yourself.

1 (interested) ...*I'm interested in sports.*...
2 (scared) I'm ....
3 (not very good) I'm not ....
4 (not interested) ....
5 (fed up) ....

listen to . . . , look at . . . , etc. (verb + preposition)

A

ask (somebody) **for** . . .	Don't **ask** me **for** money. I don't have any.
belong to . . .	This house doesn't **belong to** me. (= it's not mine)
happen to . . .	I can't find my phone. What **happened to** it?
listen to . . .	**Listen to** this music. It's great.
talk to somebody (**about** . . .)	Did you **talk to** Matt **about** the problem?
speak to somebody (**about** . . .)	I'd like to **speak to** the manager, please.
take care of . . .	When Pat is at work, a friend of hers **takes care of** her children. Don't lose this book. **Take care of** it.
thank somebody **for** . . .	**Thank** you very much **for** your help.
think about . . . *or* **think of** . . .	He never **thinks about** (*or* **of**) other people. Nick is **thinking of** (*or* **about**) buying a new car.
wait for . . .	**Wait for** me. I'm almost ready.

B

look at . . .

- He's **looking at** his watch.
- **Look at** these flowers! They're beautiful!
- Why are you **looking at** me like that?

look for . . .
(= try to find)

- She lost her key. She's **looking for** it.
- I'm **looking for** Sarah. Have you seen her?

C

call, **email**, and **text**

We say **call/email/text** somebody (no preposition):

- I have to **call my parents** tonight.
  (*not* call to my parents)
- Should I **text you** or **email you**?

D

depend

We say **depend on** . . . :

- A: Do you like eating in restaurants?
  B: Sometimes. It **depends on** the restaurant. (*not* it depends of)

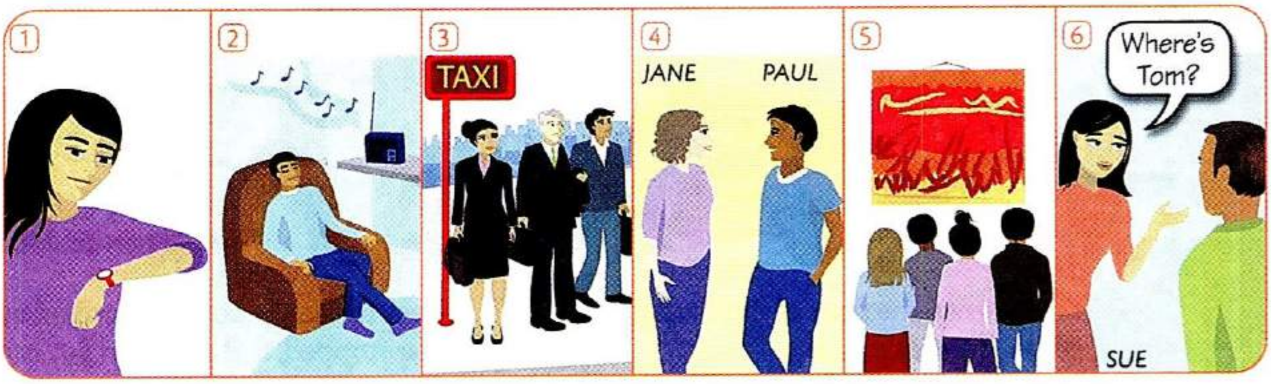
You can say **it depends what/where/how**, etc., with or without **on**:

- A: Do you want to come out with us?
  B: It **depends where** you're going. *or* It **depends on where** you're going.

wait ➔ Unit 52   preposition + -ing ➔ Unit 110

Exercises

111.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with **to/for/at**, etc.



1 She's looking ....*at*.... her watch.
2 He's listening .... the radio.
3 They're waiting .... a taxi.
4 Paul is talking .... Jane.
5 They're looking .... a picture.
6 Sue is looking .... Tom.

111.2 **Complete the sentences with a preposition (to/for/about, etc.) if necessary.**

1 Thank you very much ....*for*.... your help.
2 This isn't my umbrella. It belongs .... a friend of mine.
3 Who's going to take care .... your dog while you're out of town?
4 I saw Steve, but I didn't speak .... him.
5 Thank you .... the present. It's beautiful.
6 Excuse me, I'm looking .... Hill Street. Can you tell me where it is?
7 We're thinking .... going to Australia next year.
8 We asked the waiter .... tea, but he brought us coffee.
9 "Do you like to read books?" "It depends .... the book."
10 John was talking, but nobody was listening .... what he was saying.
11 I want to take your picture. Please look .... the camera and smile.
12 We waited .... Liz until 2:00, but she didn't come.
13 What happened .... Megan last night? Why didn't she come to the party?
14 Don't forget to call .... your mother tonight.
15 He's alone all day. He never talks .... anybody.
16 "How much does it cost to stay at this hotel?" "It depends .... the room."
17 I emailed .... my teacher to tell her I had to miss class.
18 Catherine is thinking .... changing jobs.
19 I looked .... the news online, but I didn't read it carefully.
20 When you're sick, you need somebody to take care .... you.
21 Ben is looking .... a job. He wants to work in a hotel.
22 "Where's Stephanie?" "I don't know. I'll text .... her."

111.3 Answer these questions with **It depends . . . .**

1 Do you want to go out with us? — *It depends where you're going.*
2 Do you like to eat in restaurants? — *It depends on the restaurant.*
3 Do you enjoy watching TV? — It depends ....
4 Can you do something for me? — It ....
5 Are you leaving town this weekend? — ....
6 Can you lend me some money? — ....

go in, fall off, run away, etc. (phrasal verbs 1)

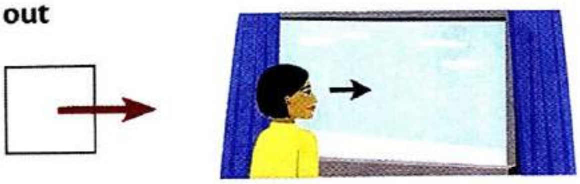
A *phrasal verb* is a verb (**go**/**look**/**be**, etc.) + **in**/**out**/**up**/**down**, etc.

in

GET IN

- Kate opened the door of the car and **got in**. (= **into** the car)
- I waited outside the store. I didn't **go in**.

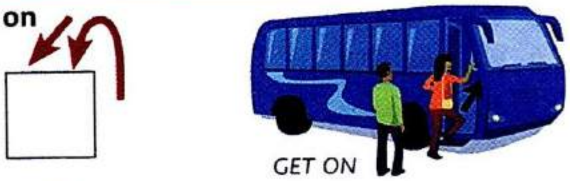
out



LOOK OUT

- I went to the window and **looked out**.
- A car stopped, and a woman **got out**. (= **out of** the car)

on



GET ON

- The bus came, and I **got on**.

off

FALL OFF

- Be careful! Don't **fall off**.

up

STAND UP

- She **stood up** and left the room.
- I usually **get up** early. (= get out of bed)
- We **looked up** at the stars in the sky.

down

FALL DOWN

- The picture **fell down**.
- Would you like to **sit down**?
- **Lie down** on the floor.

away *or* **off**

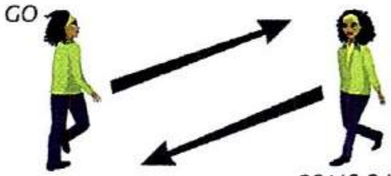
RUN AWAY

- The thief **ran away**. (*or* ... **ran off**)
- Emma got into the car and **drove away**. (*or* ... **drove off**)

be/go away (= in/to another place)

- Tom has **gone away** for a few days.

back



COME BACK

- Go away and don't **come back**!
- We went out for dinner and then **went back** to our hotel.

be back

- Tom is away. He'll **be back** on Monday.

around

LOOK AROUND

TURN AROUND

- I'm not sure what kind of car I want. I want to **look around** first.
- Somebody shouted my name, so I **turned around**.
- We went for a long walk. After an hour we **turned around** and went back.

get ➜ **Unit 54** **put on** / **take off**, etc. (phrasal verbs 2) ➜ **Unit 113** more phrasal verbs ➜ **Appendix 6**

Exercises

112.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use these verbs + **in/out/up**, etc.

got	**got**	~~**looked**~~	**looked**	**rode**	**sat**	**turned**	**went**

1 I went to the window and looked out .
2 The door was open, so we ....
3 He heard a plane, so he ....
4 She got on her bike and ....
5 I said hello, and he ....
6 The bus stopped, and she ....
7 There was a free seat, so she ....
8 A car stopped, and two men ....

112.2 Complete the sentences. Use **out/away/back**, etc.

1 "What happened to the picture on the wall?" "It fell down ."
2 Please don't walk .... I have something to tell you.
3 Emily heard a noise behind her, so she turned .... to see what it was.
4 I'm going .... now to do some shopping. I'll be .... at 5:00.
5 I'm really tired. I'm going to lie .... on the sofa.
6 The park was beautiful, so we went in and looked ....
7 Mark is from Utah. He lives in Boston now, but he wants to go .... to Utah.
8 We don't have a key to the house, so we can't get ....
9 I was very tired this morning. I couldn't get ....
10 A: When are you going .... ?
B: On the fifth. And I'm coming .... on the twenty-fourth.

112.3 Before you do this exercise, study the verbs in Appendix 6 (page 236). Complete the sentences. Choose a verb from the box + **on/off/up**, etc. If necessary, put the verb into the correct form.

break	**get**	**go**	**slow**	**take**	**work**
fall	**give**	**hold**	**speak**	~~**wake**~~	

+ **along/on/off/up/down/over/out**

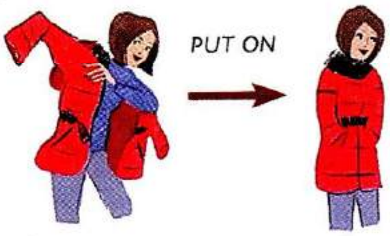
1 I went to sleep at 10:00 and woke up at 8:00 the next morning.
2 "It's time to go." " .... a minute. I'm not ready yet."
3 The train .... and finally stopped.
4 I like flying, but I'm always nervous when the plane ....
5 Tony doesn't see his sister much. They don't .... very well.
6 It's difficult to hear you. Can you .... a little?
7 This car isn't very good. It .... all the time.
8 When babies try to walk, they sometimes ....
9 Ben isn't in good shape because he doesn't .... at the gym anymore.
10 I tried to find a job, but I .... It was impossible.
11 The fire alarm ...., and everyone had to leave the building.

Unit 113 put on your shoes put your shoes on (phrasal verbs 2)

A

Sometimes a phrasal verb (**put on / take off**, etc.) has an *object*. For example:

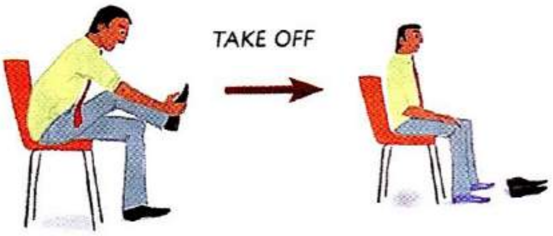
verb	*object*
put on	your coat



You can say:

put on your coat
or **put** your coat **on**

verb	*object*
take off	your shoes



You can say:

take off your shoes
or **take** your shoes **off**

But **it/them** *(pronouns)* always go before **on/off**, etc. :

put **it on** (*not* put on it)

take **them off** (*not* take off them)

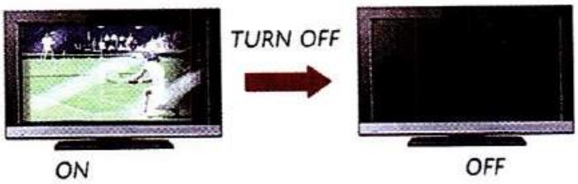
- It was cold, so I **put on** my coat.
  or . . . I **put** my coat **on**.
- Here's your coat. **Put it on**.
- I'm going to **take off** my shoes.
  or . . . **take** my shoes **off**.
- Your shoes are dirty. **Take them off**.

B

Some more phrasal verbs + *object*:

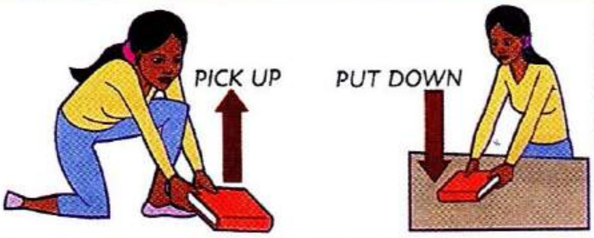
turn on / turn off (lights, machines, faucets, etc.):

- It was dark, so I **turned on** the light.
  or . . . I **turned** the light **on**.
- I don't want to watch this program.
  You can **turn it off**.



pick up / put down:

- Those are my keys on the floor.
  Can you **pick them up** for me?
- I stopped reading and **put** my book **down**.
  or . . . **put down** my book.



bring back / take back / give back / put back:

- You can take my umbrella, but please **bring it back**.
- I **took** my new sweater **back** to the store. It was too small for me.
- I have Rachel's keys. I have to **give them back** to her.
- I read the letter and then **put it back** in the envelope.

go in / fall off, etc. (phrasal verbs 1) ➔ **Unit 112** more phrasal verbs + object ➔ **Appendix 7**

Exercises

113.1 Look at the pictures. What did these people do?

1 He turned on the light.
2 She ....
3 He ....
4 She ....
5 He ....
6 She ....

113.2 You can write these sentences in three different ways. Complete the table.

1	I turned on the radio.	I turned the radio on.	I turned it on.
2	He put on his jacket.	He	He ....
3	She	She took her glasses off.	....
4	I picked up the phone.	....	....
5	They gave back the key.	....	....
6	....	We turned the lights off.	....

113.3 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs with **it** or **them**.

bring back   **pick up**   **take back**   **turn off**   ~~**turn on**~~

1 I wanted to watch something on TV, so I turned it on.
2 My new lamp doesn't work. I'm going to .... to the store.
3 There were some gloves on the floor, so I .... and put them on the table.
4 When I finished working on the computer, I ....
5 Thank you for lending me these books. I won't forget to ....

113.4 Before you do this exercise, study the verbs in Appendix 7 (page 237). Complete the sentences. Use a verb from the box. Sometimes you will also need to use **it**/**them**/**me**.

fill out	**knock over**	**put out**	~~**tear down**~~	**try on**
give up	**look up**	**show around**	**throw away**	~~**turn down**~~

1 They tore a lot of houses down when they built the new road.
2 That music is very loud. Can you turn it down?
3 I .... a glass and broke it.
4 "What does this word mean?" "Why don't you ....?"
5 I want to keep these magazines. Please don't ....
6 I .... a pair of shoes at the store, but I didn't buy them.
7 I visited a school last week. One of the teachers ....
8 "Do you play the piano?" "No, I started to learn, but I .... after a month."
9 Somebody gave me a form and told me to ....
10 Smoking isn't allowed here. Please .... your cigarette ....

Appendix 1
Active and passive

1.1 Present and past

	Active	Passive
Simple present	We **make** butter from milk. Somebody **cleans** these rooms every day. People never **invite** me to parties. How **do** they **make** butter?	Butter **is made** from milk. These rooms **are cleaned** every day. I **am** never **invited** to parties. How **is** butter **made**?
Simple past	Somebody **stole** my car last week. Somebody **stole** my keys yesterday. They **didn't invite** me to the party. When **did** they **build** these houses?	My car **was stolen** last week. My keys **were stolen** yesterday. I **wasn't invited** to the party. When **were** these houses **built**?
Present continuous	They **are building** a new airport right now. (= it isn't finished) They **are building** some new houses near the river.	A new airport **is being built** right now. Some new houses **are being built** near the river.
Past continuous	When I was here a few years ago, they **were building** a new airport. (= it wasn't finished at that time)	When I was here a few years ago, a new airport **was being built**.
Present perfect	Look! They **have painted** the door. These shirts are clean. Somebody **has washed** them. Somebody **has stolen** my car.	Look! The door **has been painted**. These shirts are clean. They **have been washed**. My car **has been stolen**.
Past perfect	Tina said that somebody **had stolen** her car.	Tina said that her car **had been stolen**.

1.2 **will** / **can** / **must** / **have to**, etc.

Active	Passive
Somebody **will clean** the office tomorrow.	The office **will be cleaned** tomorrow.
Somebody **must clean** the office at night.	The office **must be cleaned** at night.
I think they**'ll invite** you to the party.	I think you**'ll be invited** to the party.
They **can't repair** my watch.	My watch **can't be repaired**.
You **should wash** this sweater by hand.	This sweater **should be washed** by hand.
They **are going to build** a new airport.	A new airport **is going to be built**.
Somebody **has to wash** these clothes.	These clothes **have to be washed**.
They **had to take** the injured man to the hospital.	The injured man **had to be taken** to the hospital.

Appendix 2
List of irregular verbs (see Unit 23)

Infinitive	*Simple past*	*Past participle*
be	**was/were**	**been**
beat	**beat**	**beaten**
become	**became**	**become**
begin	**began**	**begun**
bite	**bit**	**bitten**
blow	**blew**	**blown**
break	**broke**	**broken**
bring	**brought**	**brought**
build	**built**	**built**
buy	**bought**	**bought**
catch	**caught**	**caught**
choose	**chose**	**chosen**
come	**came**	**come**
cost	**cost**	**cost**
cut	**cut**	**cut**
do	**did**	**done**
draw	**drew**	**drawn**
drink	**drank**	**drunk**
drive	**drove**	**driven**
eat	**ate**	**eaten**
fall	**fell**	**fallen**
feel	**felt**	**felt**
fight	**fought**	**fought**
find	**found**	**found**
fly	**flew**	**flown**
forget	**forgot**	**forgotten**
get	**got**	**gotten**
give	**gave**	**given**
go	**went**	**gone**
grow	**grew**	**grown**
hang	**hung**	**hung**
have	**had**	**had**
hear	**heard**	**heard**
hide	**hid**	**hidden**
hit	**hit**	**hit**
hold	**held**	**held**
hurt	**hurt**	**hurt**
keep	**kept**	**kept**
know	**knew**	**known**
leave	**left**	**left**
lend	**lent**	**lent**
let	**let**	**let**

Infinitive	*Simple past*	*Past participle*
lie	**lay**	**lain**
light	**lit**	**lit**
lose	**lost**	**lost**
make	**made**	**made**
mean	**meant** (ment)*	**meant** (ment)*
meet	**met**	**met**
pay	**paid**	**paid**
put	**put**	**put**
quit	**quit**	**quit**
read (reed)*	**read** (red)*	**read** (red)*
ride	**rode**	**ridden**
ring	**rang**	**rung**
rise	**rose**	**risen**
run	**ran**	**run**
say	**said** (sed)*	**said** (sed)*
see	**saw**	**seen**
sell	**sold**	**sold**
send	**sent**	**sent**
shine	**shone**	**shone**
shoot	**shot**	**shot**
show	**showed**	**shown**
shut	**shut**	**shut**
sing	**sang**	**sung**
sit	**sat**	**sat**
sleep	**slept**	**slept**
speak	**spoke**	**spoken**
spend	**spent**	**spent**
stand	**stood**	**stood**
steal	**stole**	**stolen**
swim	**swam**	**swum**
take	**took**	**taken**
teach	**taught**	**taught**
tear	**tore**	**torn**
tell	**told**	**told**
think	**thought**	**thought**
throw	**threw**	**thrown**
understand	**understood**	**understood**
wake	**woke**	**woken**
wear	**wore**	**worn**
win	**won**	**won**
write	**wrote**	**written**

* *pronunciation*

Appendix 3
Irregular verbs in groups

The *simple past* and *past participle* are the same:

1

cost	→	**cost**
cut	→	**cut**
hit	→	**hit**
hurt	→	**hurt**

let	→	**let**
put	→	**put**
quit	→	**quit**
shut	→	**shut**

2

lend	→	**lent**
send	→	**sent**
spend	→	**spent**
build	→	**built**

lose	→	**lost**
shoot	→	**shot**
light	→	**lit**
sit	→	**sat**

keep	→	**kept**
sleep	→	**slept**

feel	→	**felt**
leave	→	**left**
meet	→	**met**
mean	→	**meant** (ment)*

3

bring	→	**brought** (brot)*
buy	→	**bought** (bot)*
fight	→	**fought** (fot)*
think	→	**thought** (thot)*
catch	→	**caught** (cot)*
teach	→	**taught** (tot)*

4

sell	→	**sold**
tell	→	**told**

find	→	**found**
have	→	**had**
hear	→	**heard** (herd)*
hold	→	**held**
read	→	**read** (red)*
say	→	**said** (sed)*

pay	→	**paid**
make	→	**made**

stand	→	**stood**
understand	→	**understood**

* *pronunciation*

The *simple past* and *past participle* are different:

1

break	→	**broke**	**broken**
choose	→	**chose**	**chosen**
speak	→	**spoke**	**spoken**
steal	→	**stole**	**stolen**
wake	→	**woke**	**woken**

2

drive	→	**drove**	**driven**
ride	→	**rode**	**ridden**
rise	→	**rose**	**risen**
write	→	**wrote**	**written**

beat	→	**beat**	**beaten**
bite	→	**bit**	**bitten**
hide	→	**hid**	**hidden**

3

eat	→	**ate**	**eaten**
fall	→	**fell**	**fallen**
forget	→	**forgot**	**forgotten**
get	→	**got**	**gotten**
give	→	**gave**	**given**
see	→	**saw**	**seen**
take	→	**took**	**taken**

4

blow	→	**blew**	**blown**
grow	→	**grew**	**grown**
know	→	**knew**	**known**
throw	→	**threw**	**thrown**
fly	→	**flew**	**flown**
draw	→	**drew**	**drawn**
show	→	**showed**	**shown**

5

begin	→	**began**	**begun**
drink	→	**drank**	**drunk**
swim	→	**swam**	**swum**
ring	→	**rang**	**rung**
sing	→	**sang**	**sung**
run	→	**ran**	**run**

6

come	→	**came**	**come**
become	→	**became**	**become**

Appendix 4
Short forms (**he's / I'd / don't**, etc.)

4.1 In spoken English we usually pronounce "**I am**" as one word. The short form (**I'm**) is a way of writing this:

I am	→	**I'm**
it is	→	**it's**
they have	→	**they've**,
		etc.

- **I'm** feeling tired this morning.
- "Do you like this jacket?" "Yes, **it's** nice."
- They**'ve** sold their car.

When we write short forms, we use ' (*an apostrophe*):

I ~~a~~m → I'**m** he ~~i~~s → he'**s** you ~~ha~~ve → you'**ve** she ~~wi~~ll → she'**ll**

4.2 We use these forms with **I/he/she**, etc.:

am	→	**'m**	**I'm**						
is	→	**'s**		**he's**	**she's**	**it's**			
are	→	**'re**					**we're**	**you're**	**they're**
have	→	**'ve**	**I've**				**we've**	**you've**	**they've**
has	→	**'s**		**he's**	**she's**	**it's**			
had	→	**'d**	**I'd**	**he'd**	**she'd**		**we'd**	**you'd**	**they'd**
will	→	**'ll**	**I'll**	**he'll**	**she'll**		**we'll**	**you'll**	**they'll**
would	→	**'d**	**I'd**	**he'd**	**she'd**		**we'd**	**you'd**	**they'd**

- I**'ve** got some new shoes.
- We**'ll** probably go out tonight.
- It**'s** 10:00. You**'re** late again.

's = **is** *or* **has**:

- She**'s** going out tonight. (she**'s** going = she **is** going)
- She**'s** gone out. (she**'s** gone = she **has** gone)

'd = **would** *or* **had**:

- A: What would you like to eat?
  B: I**'d** like a salad, please. (I**'d** like = I **would** like)
- I told the police that I**'d** lost my passport. (I**'d** lost = I **had** lost)

Do not use **'m**/**'s**/**'d**, etc. at the end of a sentence (see Unit 38):

- "Are you tired?" "Yes, I **am**." (*not* Yes, I'm.)
- She isn't tired, but he **is**. (*not* he's)

4.3 We use short forms with **I/you/he/she**, etc., but you can use short forms (especially **'s**) with other words, too:

- **Who's** your favorite singer? (= who **is**)
- **What's** the time? (= what **is**)
- **There's** a big tree in the yard. (= there **is**)
- **My sister's** working in London. (= my sister **is** working)
- **Eric's** gone out. (= Eric **has** gone out)
- **What color's** your car? (= What color **is** your car?)

4.4 Negative short forms (see Unit 41):

isn't	(= is not)	**don't**	(= do not)	**can't**	(= cannot)
aren't	(= are not)	**doesn't**	(= does not)	**couldn't**	(= could not)
wasn't	(= was not)	**didn't**	(= did not)	**won't**	(= will not)
weren't	(= were not)			**wouldn't**	(= would not)
hasn't	(= has not)			**shouldn't**	(= should not)
haven't	(= have not)			**mustn't**	(= must not)
hadn't	(= had not)				

- We went to her house, but she **wasn't** home.
- "Where's David?" "I **don't** know. I **haven't** seen him."
- You work all the time. You **shouldn't** work so hard.
- I **won't** be here tomorrow. (= I will not)

4.5 **'s** (*apostrophe* + **s**)

's can mean different things:

(1) **'s** = **is** *or* **has** (see section 4.2 of this appendix)

- It**'s** raining. (= It **is** raining)
- It**'s** been raining all day! (= It **has** been raining)

(2) let**'s** = let **us** (see Unit 34 and Unit 51)

- It's a beautiful day. **Let's** go outside. (= Let **us** go outside.)

(3) Kate**'s** camera = her camera
my brother**'s** car = his car
the manager**'s** office = his/her office, etc.
(see Unit 62)

Compare:

- **Kate's** camera was very expensive. (**Kate's** camera = **her** camera)
- **Kate's** a very good photographer. (**Kate's** = Kate **is**)
- **Kate's** got a new camera. (Kate**'s** got = Kate **has** got)

Appendix 5
Spelling

5.1 Words + **-s** and **-es** (bird**s**/watch**es**, etc.)

noun + **s** (plural) (see Unit 64)

bird → bird**s**	mistake → mistake**s**	hotel → hotel**s**

verb + **s** (he/she/it **-s**) (see Unit 5)

think → think**s**	live → live**s**	remember → remember**s**

but

+ **es** after **-s** / **-sh** / **-ch** / **-x**

bu**s** → bus**es**	pa**ss** → pass**es**	addre**ss** → address**es**
di**sh** → dish**es**	wa**sh** → wash**es**	fini**sh** → finish**es**
wat**ch** → watch**es**	tea**ch** → teach**es**	sandwi**ch** → sandwich**es**
bo**x** → box**es**		

also

potato → potato**es**	tomato → tomato**es**
do → do**es**	go → go**es**

-f / **-fe** → **-ves**

shel**f** → shel**ves**	kni**fe** → kni**ves**	*but* roof → roof**s**

5.2 Words ending in **-y** (bab**y** → bab**ies** / stud**y** → stud**ied**, etc.)

-y → **-ies**

stud**y** → stud**ies** (*not* studys)		famil**y** → famil**ies** (*not* familys)
stor**y** → stor**ies**	cit**y** → cit**ies**	bab**y** → bab**ies**
tr**y** → tr**ies**	marr**y** → marr**ies**	fl**y** → fl**ies**

-y → **-ied** (see Unit 11)

stud**y** → stud**ied** (*not* studyed)		
tr**y** → tr**ied**	marr**y** → marr**ied**	cop**y** → cop**ied**

-y → **-ier** / **-iest** (see Units 85, 88)

eas**y** → eas**ier**/eas**iest** (*not* easyer/easyest)	
happ**y** → happ**ier**/happ**iest**	luck**y** → luck**ier**/luck**iest**
heav**y** → heav**ier**/heav**iest**	funn**y** → funn**ier**/funn**iest**

-y → **-ily** (see Unit 84)

eas**y** → eas**ily** (*not* easyly)		
happ**y** → happ**ily**	heav**y** → heav**ily**	luck**y** → luck**ily**

y does not change to **i** if the ending is **-ay**/**-ey**/**-oy**/**-uy**:

holid**ay** → holid**ays** (*not* holidaies)

enj**oy** → enj**oys**/enj**oyed**	st**ay** → st**ays**/st**ayed**	b**uy** → b**uys**	k**ey** → k**eys**

but

say → **said**   **pay** → **paid**   (*irregular verbs*)

5.3 -ing

Verbs that end in **-e** (mak**e**/writ**e**/driv**e**, etc.) → ~~e~~**ing**:

make → mak**ing** write → writ**ing** come → com**ing** dance → danc**ing**

Verbs that end in **-ie** → **-ying**:

lie → l**ying** die → d**ying** tie → t**ying**

5.4 stop → sto**pp**ed, big → bi**gg**er, etc.

Vowels and consonants:

Vowel letters: a e i o u

Consonant letters: b c d f g k l m n p r s t w y

Sometimes a word ends in a *vowel* + a *consonant*. For example: st**op**, b**ig**, g**et**.
Before **-ing**/**-ed**/**-er**/**-est**, **p**/**g**/**t**, etc. become **pp**/**gg**/**tt**, etc.

For example:

	V+C				
stop	ST **O P**	p → **pp**	sto**pp**ing	sto**pp**ed	
run	R **U N**	n → **nn**	ru**nn**ing		
get	G **E T**	t → **tt**	ge**tt**ing		
swim	SW **I M**	m → **mm**	swi**mm**ing		
big	B **I G**	g → **gg**	bi**gg**er	bi**gg**est	
hot	H **O T**	t → **tt**	ho**tt**er	ho**tt**est	
thin	TH **I N**	n → **nn**	thi**nn**er	thi**nn**est	

V = *vowel*
C = *consonant*

This does *not* happen

(1) if the word ends in *two* consonant letters (C + C):

	C+C		
help	HE **L P**	he**lp**ing	he**lp**ed
work	WO **R K**	wo**rk**ing	wo**rk**ed
fast	FA **S T**	fa**st**er	fa**st**est

(2) if the word ends in two vowel letters + a consonant letter (V + V + C):

	V+V+C		
need	N **E E D**	nee**d**ing	nee**d**ed
wait	W **A I T**	wai**t**ing	wai**t**ed
cheap	CH **E A P**	chea**p**er	chea**p**est

(3) in longer words (two syllables or more) if the last part of the word is *not* stressed:

	stress		
happen	**HAP**-pen	→	happe**n**ing/happe**n**ed (*not* happenned)
visit	**VIS**-it	→	visi**t**ing/visi**t**ed
remember	re-**MEM**-ber	→	remembe**r**ing/remembe**r**ed

but

prefer	pre-**FER**	(*stress at the end*)	→	prefe**rr**ing/prefe**rr**ed
begin	be-**GIN**	(*stress at the end*)	→	begi**nn**ing

(4) if the word ends in **-y** or **-w**. (At the end of words, **y** and **w** are not consonants.)

enjo**y** → enjo**y**ing/enjo**y**ed snow → sno**w**ing/sno**w**ed few → fe**w**er/fe**w**est

Appendix 6
Phrasal verbs (**take off** / **give up**, etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs (see Unit 112).

out

look out / **watch out** = *be careful*
- ▢ **Look out**! There's a car coming.

work out = *exercise* (to become stronger and fitter)
- ▢ Sarah **works out** at the gym two or three times a week.

WORK OUT

on

come on = *be quick / hurry*
- ▢ **Come on**! Everybody is waiting for you.

go on = *continue*
- ▢ I'm sorry I interrupted. **Go on**. (= continue what you were saying)
- ▢ How long will this hot weather **go on**?

keep on = *continue (talking, etc.)*
- ▢ I asked them to be quiet, but they **kept on** talking.

hold on = *wait*
- ▢ Can you **hold on** a minute? (= can you wait?)

off

take off = *leave the ground (for planes)*
- ▢ The plane **took off** 20 minutes late, but arrived on time.

TAKE OFF

go off = *explode (a bomb, etc.) or ring (an alarm, an alarm clock, etc.)*
- ▢ A bomb **went off** and caused a lot of damage.
- ▢ A car alarm **goes off** if somebody tries to break into the car.

GO OFF

up

clean up = *make neat or clean*
- ▢ After the party, it took two hours to **clean up**.

give up = *stop trying*
- ▢ I know it's difficult, but don't **give up**. (= don't stop trying)

grow up = *become an adult*
- ▢ What does your son want to do when he **grows up**?

GROW UP

hurry up = *do something more quickly*
- ▢ **Hurry up**! We don't have much time.

speak up = *speak more loudly*
- ▢ I can't hear you. Can you **speak up**, please?

wake up = *stop sleeping*
- ▢ I often **wake up** in the middle of the night.

WAKE UP

down

slow down = *go more slowly*
- ▢ You're driving too fast. **Slow down**!

break down = *stop working (for cars, machines, etc.)*
- ▢ Sue was very late because her car **broke down**.

BREAK DOWN

along

get along = *be together without problems*
- ▢ Sam doesn't visit his parents often. He doesn't **get along** with his father.

over

fall over = *lose your balance*
- ▢ I **fell over** because my shoes were too big for me.

FALL OVER

Appendix 7 Phrasal verbs + object (**put out** a fire / **try on** clothes, etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs + object (see Unit 113).

out

fill out a form = *complete a form*

- Can you **fill out this form**, please?

FILL OUT

put out a fire, a cigarette, etc.

- The fire department arrived and **put the fire out**.

cross out a mistake, a word, etc.

- If you make a mistake, **cross it out**.

PUT OUT

CROSS OUT

on

try on clothes = *put on clothes to see if they fit you*

- *(in a store)* Where can I **try these pants on**?

up

give up something = *stop doing / having something*

- Sue **gave up her job** when her baby was born. (= she stopped working)
- Tom's doctor told him he had to **give up smoking**.

look up a word in a dictionary, etc.

- I didn't know the meaning of the word, so I **looked it up** in a dictionary.

turn up the TV, radio, music, heat, etc. = *make it louder or warmer*

- Can you **turn the radio up**? I can't hear it.

wake up somebody who is sleeping

- I have to get up early tomorrow. Can you **wake me up** at 6:30?

down

tear down a building = *demolish it*

- They are going to **tear down** the school and build a new one.

TEAR DOWN

turn down the TV, radio, music, heat, etc. = *make it quieter or less warm*

- The music is too loud. Can you **turn it down**?

over

knock over a cup, a glass, a person, etc.

- Be careful. Don't **knock your cup over**.

KNOCK OVER

away

throw away garbage, things you don't want

- These apples are bad. Should I **throw them away**?
- Don't **throw away that picture**. I want it.

THROW AWAY

put something **away** = *put it in the place where you usually keep it*

- After they finished playing, the children **put their toys away**.

back

pay somebody **back** = *give back money that you borrowed*

- Thank you for lending me the money. I'll **pay you back** next week.

around

show somebody **around** = *take somebody on a tour of a place*

- We visited a factory last week. The manager **showed us around**.

Additional Exercises

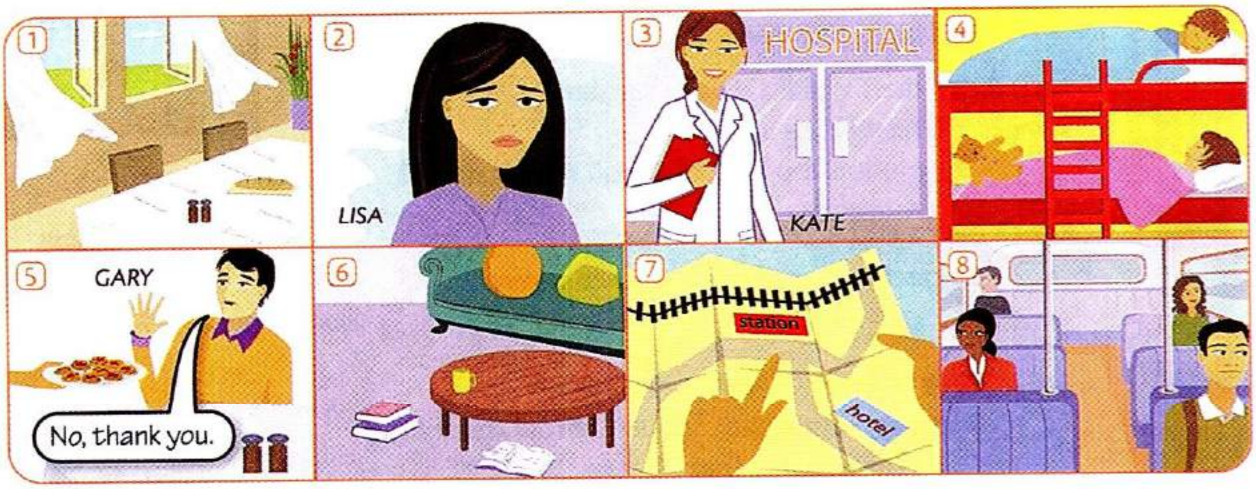
List of exercises:

1–2	**am/is/are**	Units 1–2
3	Present continuous	Units 3–4
4	Simple present	Units 5–7
5–7	Simple present, **am/is/are** and **have (got)**	Units 1–2, 5–7, 9
8–9	Present continuous and simple present	Units 3–8
10–13	**was/were** and simple past	Units 10–12
14	Simple past and past continuous	Units 11–14
15	Present and past	Units 3–14
16–18	Present perfect	Units 16–19
19–22	Present perfect and simple past	Unit 19
23	Present, past, and present perfect	Units 3–19
24–27	Passive	Units 20–21, Appendix 1
28	Future	Units 24–26
29	Past, present, and future	Units 3–19, 24–26
30–31	Past, present, and future	Units 3–21, 24–26, 50, 52, 96, 103
32	**-ing** and **to** . . .	Units 49–53, 103, 110
33–34	**a** and **the**	Units 63, 67–71
35	Prepositions	Units 101–106, 109

am/is/are

Units 1–2

1 Write sentences for the pictures. Use the words in the boxes + **is/isn't/are/aren't**.



~~The windows~~	on the table
~~Lisa~~	hungry
Kate	asleep
The children	~~open~~
Gary	full
The books	near the station
The hotel	a doctor
The bus	~~happy~~

1 *The windows are open.*
2 *Lisa isn't happy.*
3 Kate ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....

2 Complete the sentences.

1 "Are you hungry?" "No, but ...I'm... thirsty."
2 "...How are... your parents?" "They're fine."
3 "Is Anna home?" "No, ... at work."
4 "................................ my keys?" "On your desk."
5 Where is Eric from? .... American or Canadian?
6 .... very hot today. The temperature is 95 degrees Fahrenheit.
7 "Are you a teacher?" "No, ... a student."
8 "................................ your umbrella?" "Green."
9 Where's your car? .... in the parking lot?
10 "................................ tired?" "No, I'm fine."
11 "These shoes are nice. How .... ?" "Seventy-five dollars."

Present continuous (I'm working / are you working?, etc.) — Units 3–4

3 Use the words in parentheses to write sentences.

1 A: Where are your parents?
B: ...They're watching TV.... (they / watch / TV)
2 A: Emily is going out.
B: ...Where's she going?... (where / she / go?)
3 A: Where's David?
B: .... (he / take / a shower)
4 A: .... (the children / play?)
B: No, they're asleep.
5 A: .... (it / rain?)
B: No, not anymore.
6 A: Where are Sue and Mike?
B: .... (they / come / now)
7 A: .... (why / you / stand / here?)
B: .... (I / wait / for somebody)

Simple present (I work / she doesn't work / do you work?, etc.) — Units 5–7

4 Complete the sentences. Use the *simple present*.

1 ...Sue always gets... to work early. (Sue / always / get)
2 ...We don't watch... TV very often. (we / not / watch)
3 How often ...do you wash... your hair? (you / wash)
4 I want to go to the movies, but .... to go. (Sam / not / want)
5 .... to go out tonight? (you / want)
6 .... near here? (Helen / live)
7 .... a lot of people. (Sarah / know)
8 I enjoy traveling, but .... very much. (I / not / travel)
9 What time .... in the morning? (you / usually / get up)
10 My parents are usually home at night.
.... very often. (they / not / go out)
11 .... work at 5:00. (Tom / always / leave)
12 A: What .... ? (Julia / do)
B: .... in a hotel. (she / work)

Simple present, am/is/are and have

Units 1–2, 5–7, 9

5 Read the questions and Anna's answers. Then write sentences about Anna.

1 Are you married? — No.
2 Do you live in Houston? — Yes.
3 Are you a student? — Yes.
4 Do you have a car? — No.
5 Do you go out a lot? — Yes.
6 Do you have a lot of friends? — Yes.
7 Do you like Houston? — No.
8 Do you like to dance? — Yes.
9 Are you interested in sports? — No.

ANNA

1 *She isn't married.*
2 *She lives in Houston.*
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....
9 ....

6 Complete the questions.

1
What's your name ....?
.... married?
Where ....?
.... any children?
How ....?

Ben.
Yes, I am.
On State Street.
Yes, a daughter.
She's three.

2
..........?
..........?
.... your job?
.... a car?
.... to work by car?

I'm 29.
I work in a supermarket.
No, I hate it.
Yes, I do.
No, I usually go by bus.

3
Who is this man ....?
..........?
..........?
.... in New York?

That's my brother.
Michael.
He's a web designer.
No, in Los Angeles.

7 Write sentences from these words. All the sentences are present.

1 (Sarah often / tennis) *Sarah often plays tennis.*
2 (my parents / a new car) *My parents have a new car.* or *My parents have got a new car.*
3 (my shoes / dirty) *My shoes are dirty.*
4 (Liz / 32 years old) Liz ....
5 (I / two sisters) ....
6 (we often / TV at night) ....
7 (Jane never / a hat) ....
8 (my car / a flat tire) ....
9 (these flowers / beautiful) ....
10 (Mary / German very well) ....

Present continuous (I'm working) and simple present (I work)

Units 3–8

8 Complete the sentences.

9 Which is right?

1 ~~"Are you speaking~~ / Do you speak English?" "Yes, a little." (Do you speak *is right*)
2 Sometimes we're going / we go away on weekends.
3 It's a nice day today. The sun is shining / shines.
4 (*You meet Kate in the street.*) Hello, Kate. Where are you going / do you go?
5 How often are you taking / do you take a vacation?
6 Emily is a writer. She's writing / She writes children's books.
7 I'm never reading / I never read newspapers.
8 "Where are Michael and Megan?" "They're watching / They watch TV in the living room."
9 Lauren is in her office. She's talking / She talks to somebody.
10 What time are you usually having / do you usually have dinner?
11 John isn't at home right now. He's visiting / He visits some friends.
12 "Would you like some coffee?" "No, thanks. I'm not drinking / I don't drink coffee."

was/were and simple past (I worked / did you work?, etc.)

Units 10–12

10 Complete the sentences. Use one word only.

1 I got up early and ......took...... a shower.
2 Tom was tired last night, so he .... to bed early.
3 I .... this key on the floor. Is it yours?
4 Kate got married when she .... 23.
5 Lauren is learning to drive. She .... her first lesson yesterday.
6 "I've got a new job." "Yes, I know. David .... me."
7 "Where did you buy that book?" "It was a present. Olivia .... it to me."
8 We .... hungry, so we had something to eat.
9 "Did you enjoy the movie?" "Yes, I .... it was very good."
10 "Did Andy come to your party?" "No, we .... him, but he didn't come."

11 Look at the questions and Joe's answers. Write sentences about Joe when he was a child.

When you were a child . . .

Question	JOE		
Were you tall?	No.	1	He wasn't tall.
Did you like school?	Yes.	2	He liked school.
Were you good at sports?	Yes.	3	He ....
Did you play soccer?	Yes.	4	....
Did you work hard at school?	No.	5	....
Did you have a lot of friends?	Yes.	6	....
Did you have a bike?	No.	7	....
Were you a quiet child?	No.	8	....

12 Complete the questions.

1	...Did you have... a nice vacation?	Yes, it was great, thanks.
2	...Where did you go... ?	To the Bahamas.
3	.... there?	Five days.
4	.... the Bahamas?	Yes, very much.
5	.... ?	I have friends there, so I stayed with them.
6	.... good?	Yes, it was warm and sunny.
7	.... back?	Yesterday.

13 Put the verb in the right form (affirmative, negative, or question).

1 It was a good party. ...I enjoyed... it. (I / enjoy)
2 "...Did you do... the dishes?" (you / do) "No, ...I didn't have... time." (I / have)
3 "Did you call Matt?" "No, I'm sorry. ...." (I / forget)
4 I like your new watch. Where .... it? (you / get)
5 I saw Emma at the party, but .... to her. (I / speak)
6 A: .... a nice weekend? (you / have)
B: Yes, I visited some friends of mine.
7 Josh wasn't well yesterday, so .... to work. (he / go)
8 "Is Sarah here?" "Yes, ... five minutes ago." (she / arrive)
9 Where .... before he moved here? (Robert / live)
10 The restaurant wasn't expensive. .... very much. (the meal / cost)

Simple past (I worked) and past continuous (I was working)

Units 11–14

14 Complete the sentences. Use the *simple past* or *past continuous*.

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

1.

It **was raining** (rain) when we **went** (go) out.

2.

When I arrived at the office, Emma and Mike .... (work) at their desks.

3.

I .... (open) the window because it was hot.

4.

The doorbell .... (ring) when Sue .... (cook).

5.

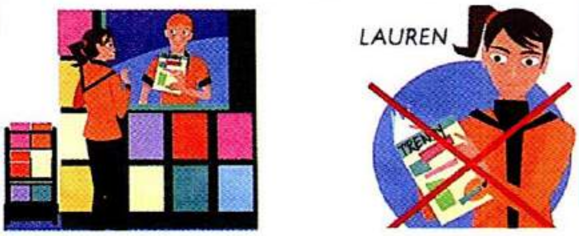
I .... (hear) a noise outside, so I .... (look) out the window.

6.

Tom .... (look) out the window when the accident .... (happen).

7.

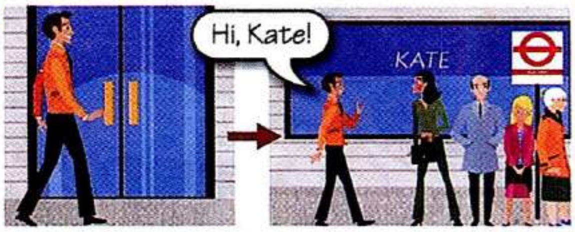
Chris had a book in his hand, but he .... (not/read) it. He .... (watch) TV.

8.


Lauren bought a magazine, but she .... (not/read) it. She didn't have time.

9.

I .... (finish) lunch, ... (pay) the check, and .... (leave) the restaurant.

10.


I .... (see) Kate this morning. I .... (walk) down the street and she .... (wait) for the bus.

Present and past

Units 3–14

15 Complete the sentences. Use one of these forms:

simple present (**I work/drive**, etc.) *present continuous* (**I am working/driving**, etc.)
simple past (**I worked/drove**, etc.) *past continuous* (**I was working/driving**, etc.)

1 You can turn off the TV. I ...'m not watching... (not/watch) it.
2 Last night Jen ...fell... (fall) asleep while she ...was reading... (read).
3 Listen! Somebody .... (play) the piano.
4 "Do you have my key?" "No, I .... (give) it back to you."
5 David is very lazy. He .... (not/like) to work hard.
6 Where .... (your parents / go) on vacation last year?
7 I .... (see) Diane yesterday. She .... (drive) her new car.
8 A: .... (you/watch) TV very much?
B: No, I don't have a TV.
9 A: What .... (you/do) at 6:00 last Sunday morning?
B: I was in bed asleep.
10 Andy isn't at home very much. He .... (go) out a lot.
11 I .... (try) to find a job right now. It's not easy.
12 I'm tired this morning. I .... (not/sleep) very well last night.

Present perfect (I have done / she has been, etc.)

Units 16–19

16 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the *present perfect*.

17 **Complete the sentences (1, 2, or 3 words).**

1 Alex and Liz are married. They ..*have been*.. married for five years.
2 David has been watching TV ..*since*.. 5:00.
3 Justin is at work. He .... at work since 8:30.
4 "Did you just arrive in Miami?" "No, I've been here .... five days."
5 I've known Nicole .... we were in high school.
6 "My brother lives in Los Angeles." "Really? How long .... there?"
7 Sam has had the same job .... 20 years.
8 Some friends of ours are staying with us. They .... here since Monday.

18 **Complete the sentences. Write about yourself.**

1 I've never ..*ridden a horse.*..
2 I've ..*been to Montreal*.. many times.
3 I've ....
(once / twice / a few times / many times)
4 I haven't .... yet.
5 I've never ....
6 I've .... since ....
7 I've .... for ....

Present perfect (I have done, etc.) and simple past (I did, etc.)

19 ***Present perfect*** **or** ***simple past*****? Complete the sentences (affirmative or negative).**

1 A: Do you like London?
B: I don't know. I ..haven't been.. there.

2 A: Have you seen Kate?
B: Yes, I ..saw.. her five minutes ago.

3 A: That's a nice sweater. Is it new?
B: Yes, I .... it last week.

4 A: Are you tired this morning?
B: Yes, I .... to bed late last night.

5 A: Is the new French movie good?
B: Yes, really good. I .... it three times.

6 A: Do you like your new job?
B: I .... yet. My first day is next Monday.

7 A: The weather isn't very nice today, is it?
B: No, but it .... nice yesterday.

8 A: Was Emily at the party on Saturday?
B: I don't think so. I .... her there.

9 A: Is your son still in school?
B: No, he .... college two years ago.

10 A: Is Sofia married?
B: Yes, she .... married for five years.

11 A: Have you heard of George Washington?
B: Of course. He .... the first president of the United States.

12 A: How long does it take to make a pizza?
B: I don't know. I .... a pizza.

20 **Write sentences with the** ***present perfect*** **or** ***simple past*****.**

1 A: Have you been to Thailand?
B: Yes, ..I went there last year.. (I / go / there / last year)

2 A: Do you like London?
B: I don't know. ..I've never been there.. (I / never / there)

3 A: Where is Eric these days?
B: He's living in Chicago. He ....
(live / there / since last May)

4 A: Is Catherine still here?
B: No, ...
(she / leave / an hour ago)

5 A: New York is my favorite city.
B: It is? ....?
(how many times / you / there ?)

6 A: You look tired.
B: Yes, ... (I / tired / all day)

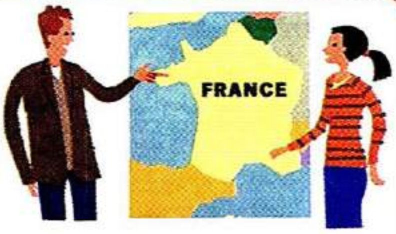
7 A: I can't find my wallet. Have you seen it?
B: .... (it / on the table / last night)

8 A: Do you know the Japanese restaurant on First Street?
B: Yes, ... (I / eat / there a few times)

9 A: Hannah and Sue are here.
B: They are? ....?
(what time / they / get / here ?)

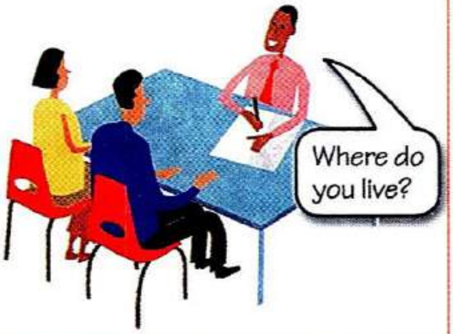
21 *Present perfect* or *simple past*? Complete the sentences.

1 A: ....Have you been.... to France?
B: Yes, many times.
A: When .... the last time?
B: Two years ago.



2 A: Is this your car?
B: Yes, it is.
A: How long .... it?
B: It's new. I .... it yesterday.

3 A: Where do you live?
B: On Maple Street.
A: How long .... there?
B: Five years. Before that .... on Mill Road.
A: How long .... on Mill Road?
B: About three years.



4 A: What do you do?
B: I work in a store.
A: How long .... there?
B: Nearly two years.
A: What .... before that?
B: I .... a taxi driver.

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

22 Write sentences about yourself.

1 (yesterday morning) ....I was late for work yesterday morning....
2 (last night) ....
3 (yesterday afternoon) ....
4 (... days ago) ....
5 (last week) ....
6 (last year) ....

Present, past, and present perfect

Units 3–19

23 Which is right?

1 "Is Sue working? (C)" "No, she's on vacation."
A Does Sue work? **B** Is working Sue? **C** Is Sue working? **D** Does work Sue?

2 "Where ...?" "In Dallas."
A lives your uncle **B** does your uncle live **C** your uncle lives **D** does live your uncle

3 I speak Italian, but ... French.
A I no speak **B** I'm not speaking **C** I doesn't speak **D** I don't speak

4 "Where's Tom?" "... a shower at the moment."
A He's taking **B** He take **C** He takes **D** He has taken

5 Why ... angry at me yesterday?
A were you **B** was you **C** you were **D** have you been

6 My favorite movie is *Cleo's Dream*. ... it four times.
A I'm seeing **B** I see **C** I was seeing **D** I've seen

7 I ... out last night. I was too tired.
A don't go **B** didn't went **C** didn't go **D** haven't gone

8 Liz is from Chicago. She ... there all her life.
A is living **B** has lived **C** lives **D** lived

9 My friend ... for me when I arrived.
A waited **B** has waited **C** was waiting **D** has been waiting

10 "How long ... English?" "Six months."
A do you learn **B** are you learning **C** you are learning **D** have you been learning

11 Joe is Canadian, but he lives in Peru. He has been there ... .
A for three years **B** since three years **C** three years ago **D** during three years

12 "What time ...?" "About an hour ago."
A has Liz called **B** Liz has called **C** did Liz call **D** is Liz calling

13 What ... when you saw her?
A did Sue wear **B** was Sue wearing **C** has Sue worn **D** was wearing Sue

14 "Can you drive?" "No, ... a car, but I want to learn."
A I never drive **B** I'm never driving **C** I've never driven **D** I was never driving

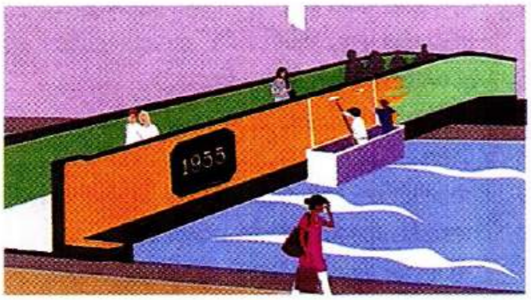
15 I saw Samantha at the station when I was going to work this morning, but she ... me.
A didn't see **B** don't see **C** hasn't seen **D** didn't saw

Passive **Units 20–21, Appendix 1**

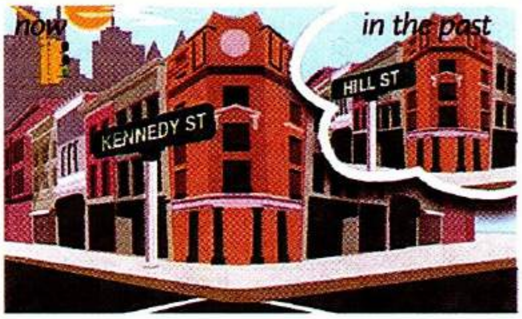
24 Complete the sentences.

1

These houses ....**were built**.... (build) 20 years ago. Before that there was a movie theater here, but the building .... (damage) in a fire and had to .... (tear down).

2


This bridge .... (build) in 1955. Now it .... (use) by hundreds of people every day. The bridge .... (paint) now.

3


This street .... (call) Kennedy Street. It used to .... (call) Hill Street, but the name .... (change) a few years ago.

4

This is a bicycle factory. Bicycles .... (make) here since 1971. It's the largest bicycle factory in the country. Thousands of bicycles .... (produce) here every year.

25 Complete the sentences.

1 We ....**were invited**.... (invite) to the party, but we didn't go.
2 The museum is very popular. Every year it .... (visit) by thousands of people.
3 Many buildings .... (damage) in the storm last week.
4 A new road is going to .... (build) next year.
5 "Where's your jacket?" "It .... (clean). It will be ready tomorrow."
6 She's famous now, but in a few years her name will .... (forget).
7 Milk should .... (keep) in a fridge.
8 .... (you / ever / bite) by a snake?
9 My bag .... (steal) from my car yesterday afternoon.

26 Write a new sentence with the same meaning.

1 Somebody stole my keys. — **My keys were stolen.**
2 Somebody stole my car last week. — My car ....
3 Somebody has eaten all the bananas. — All the ....
4 Somebody will repair the machine. — The ....
5 Somebody is watching us. — We ....
6 Somebody has to do the housework. — The ....

27 *Active* or *passive*? Complete the sentences.

1 They ...are building... (build) a new airport now.
2 I can't find my bag. I think it ...has been stolen... or ...was stolen... (steal).
3 I can't find my bag. Somebody .... (take) it!
4 "How did you fall?" "Somebody .... (push) me."
5 "How did you fall?" "I .... (push)."
6 My watch is broken. It .... (repair) at the moment.
7 Who .... (invent) the camera?
8 When .... (the camera / invent)?
9 These shirts are clean now. They .... (wash).
10 These shirts are clean now. I .... (wash) them.
11 The letter was for me, so why .... (they/send) it to you?
12 The information will .... (send) to you as soon as possible.

Future

Units 24–26

28 Which is the best alternative?

1 ...We're having (B)... a party next Sunday. I hope you can come.
A We have **B** We're having **C** We'll have

2 Do you know about Catherine? .... her job. She told me last week.
A She quits **B** She's going to quit **C** She'll quit

3 There's a program on TV that I want to watch. .... in five minutes.
A It starts **B** It's starting **C** It will start

4 The weather is nice now, but I think .... later.
A it rains **B** it's raining **C** it will rain

5 "What .... next weekend?" "Nothing. I have no plans."
A do you do **B** are you doing **C** will you do

6 "When you see Jessica, can you ask her to call me?" "OK, ... her."
A I ask **B** I'm going to ask **C** I'll ask

7 "What would you like to drink, tea or coffee?" ".. tea, please."
A I have B I'm going to have **C** I'll have

8 Don't take that magazine away. .... it.
A I read **B** I'm going to read **C** I'll read

9 Rachel is sick, so .... to the party tomorrow night.
A she doesn't come **B** she isn't coming **C** she won't come

10 I want to meet Sarah at the station. What time ....?
A does her train arrive **B** is her train going to arrive **C** is her train arriving

11 "Will you be home tomorrow night?" "No, ..."
A I go out **B** I'm going out **C** I'll go out

Past, present, and future

Units 3–19, 24–26

29 Complete the sentences.

1 A: ......Did you go...... (you/go) out last night?
B: No, ... (I/stay) home.
A: What .... (you/do)?
B: .... (I/watch) TV.
A: .... (you/go) out tomorrow night?
B: Yes, ... (I/go) to the movies.
A: What movie .... (you/see)?
B: .... (I/not/know).
.... (I/not/decide) yet.

2 A: Are you visiting here?
B: Yes, we are.
A: How long .... (you/be) here?
B: .... (we/arrive) yesterday.
A: And how long .... (you/stay)?
B: Until the end of next week.
A: And .... (you/like) it here?
B: Yes, ... (we/have) a wonderful time.

3 A: .... (I/go) out with Chris and Andy tonight.
.... (you/want) to come with us?
B: Yes, where .... (you/go)?
A: To the Italian restaurant on North Avenue. .... (you/ever/eat) there?
B: Yes, ... (I/be) there two or three times. In fact, I
.... (go) there last night, but I'd love to go again!

4 A: .... (I/lose) my glasses again.
.... (you/see) them?
B: .... (you/wear) them
when .... (I/come) in.
A: Well, ... (I/not/wear)
them now, so where are they?
B: .... (you/look) in the kitchen?
A: No, ... (I/go) and look now.

Past, present, and future

Units 3–19, 24–26, 50, 52, 96, 103

30 Rachel is talking about her best friend, Carolyn. Put the verbs in the correct form.

RACHEL

Carolyn is my best friend. I remember very well the first time (1) .... (we/meet). It was our first day of high school, and (2) .... (we/sit) next to each other in the first class. (3) .... (we/not/know) any other students in our class, and so (4) .... (we/become) friends. We found that (5) .... (we/like) the same things, especially music and sports, and so (6) .... (we/spend) a lot of time together.

(7) .... (we/finish) school five years ago, but (8) .... (we/meet) as often as we can. For the last six months Carolyn (9) .... (be) in Mexico – right now (10) .... (she/work) in a school as a teaching assistant. (11) .... (she/come) back to the States next month, and when (12) .... (she/come) back, (13) .... (we/have) lots of things to talk about. (14) .... (it/be) really nice to see her again.

31 Nick and his friend Jon are from Boston. They are traveling around the world. Read the emails between Nick and his parents, and put the verbs in the correct form.

Dear Mom and Dad,

We're in Los Angeles, the first stop on our round-the-world trip! (1) ..We arrived.. (we/arrive) here yesterday, and now (2) .... (we/stay) at a hotel near the airport. The flight was six hours, but (3) .... (we/enjoy) it. (4) .... (we/watch) a movie and (5) .... (sleep) for a few hours, which is unusual for me – usually (6) .... (I/not/sleep) well on planes.

Today is a rest day for us and (7) .... (we/not/do) anything special, but tomorrow (8) .... (we/go) to Hollywood (9) .... (see) the movie studios. (10) .... (we/not/decide) yet what to do after Los Angeles. Jon (11) .... (want) to drive up the coast to San Francisco, but I'd prefer (12) .... (go) south to San Diego.

I hope all is well with you – (13) .... (I/send) you another email next week.

Love,

Nick

NICK

www.irLanguage.com

Dear Nick,

Thanks for your email. It's good to hear that (14) .... (you/have) a good time. We're fine – Ellie and Jo (15) .... (study) hard for their exams next month. Dad has been busy at work, and last week (16) .... (he/have) a lot of important meetings. He's a little tired – I think (17) .... (he/need) a good rest.

Keep in touch!

Love,
Mom

A month later . . .

irLanguage.com

Hi Mom and Dad,

(18) .... (we/be) in California for a month now. (19) .... (we/get) back to Los Angeles yesterday after (20) .... (see) many wonderful places. I think the place (21) .... (I/like) most was Yosemite National Park – it's beautiful there and (22) .... (we/go) biking a lot. The day before (23) .... (we/leave), Jon (24) .... (have) an accident on his bike. Luckily (25) .... (he/not/injure), but the bike (26) .... (damage).

(27) .... (we/change) our travel plans since my last message: now (28) .... (we/leave) for Hawaii on Monday (not Tuesday). (29) .... (we/stay) there for a week before (30) .... (fly) to New Zealand. (31) .... (that/be) different, I'm sure!

All the best to Ellie and Jo for their exams.

Love,
Nick

Hi Nick,

Have a good time in Hawaii! Ellie and Jo (32) .... (finish) their exams yesterday – (33) .... (I/let) you know when (34) .... (we/get) the results.

We're all OK. Dad and I (35) .... (look) forward to our vacation next month. (36) .... (we/go) to Italy for two weeks – (37) .... (we/send) you an email from there.

Take care!

Love,
Mom

-ing and to . . .

Units 49–53, 103, 110

32 Which is correct?

1 Don't forget ...to turn (B)... off the light before you go out.
A turn **B** to turn **C** turning

2 It's late. I should .... now.
A go **B** to go **C** going

3 I'm sorry, but I don't have time .... to you now.
A for talking **B** to talk **C** talking

4 Eric is always in the kitchen. He enjoys ....
A cook **B** to cook **C** cooking

5 We decided .... away for a few days.
A go **B** to go **C** going

6 You're making too much noise. Can you please stop .... ?
A shout **B** to shout **C** shouting

7 Would you like .... to dinner on Sunday?
A come **B** to come **C** coming

8 That bag is too heavy for you. Let me .... you.
A help **B** to help **C** helping

9 There's a swimming pool near my house. I go .... every day.
A to swim **B** to swimming **C** swimming

10 I need to go shopping .... some food.
A to buy **B** for buy **C** for buying

11 I'd love .... a car like yours.
A have **B** to have **C** having

12 Could you .... me with this bag, please?
A help **B** to help **C** helping

13 I don't mind .... here, but I'd prefer to sit by the window.
A sit **B** to sit **C** sitting

14 Do you want .... you?
A that I help **B** me to help **C** me helping

15 You should think carefully before .... an important decision.
A make **B** to make **C** making

16 I wasn't feeling very well, but the medicine made me .... better.
A feel **B** to feel **C** feeling

17 Should I call the restaurant .... a table?
A for reserve **B** for reserving **C** to reserve

18 Tom looked at me without .... anything.
A say **B** saying **C** to say

a and the

Units 63, 67–71

33 Complete the sentences.

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

34 Write **a/an** or **the** if necessary. If **a/an/the** are not necessary, leave an empty space (–).

1 Who is ...the... best player on your team?
2 I don't watch ...–... TV very often.
3 "Is there ...a... bank near here?" "Yes, at ...the... end of this block."
4 I can't ride .... horse.
5 .... sky is very clear tonight.
6 Do you live here, or are you .... tourist?
7 What did you have for .... lunch?
8 Who was .... first president of .... United States?
9 I'm not feeling very well. I have .... headache.
10 I'm sorry, but I've forgotten your name. I can never remember .... names.
11 What time is .... next train to Boston?
12 Kate rarely sends .... emails. She prefers to call people.
13 "Where's Sue?" "She's in .... backyard."
14 Excuse me, I'm looking for .... Majestic Hotel. Is it near here?
15 Kevin was sick .... last week, so he didn't go to .... work.
16 Everest is .... highest mountain in .... world.
17 I usually listen to .... radio while I'm having .... breakfast.
18 I like .... sports. My favorite sport is .... basketball.
19 Julia is .... doctor. Her husband is .... art teacher.
20 My apartment is on .... second floor. Turn left at .... top of .... stairs, and it's on .... right.
21 After .... dinner, we watched .... TV.
22 I've been to .... northern Mexico but not to .... south.

Prepositions

Units 101–106, 109

35 Write a preposition (**in**/**for**/**by**, etc.).

1 Olivia is studying math ...in... college.
2 What is the longest river .... Europe?
3 Is there anything .... TV tonight?
4 We arrived .... the hotel after midnight.
5 "Where's Mike?" "He's .... vacation."
6 Tom hasn't gotten up yet. He's still .... bed.
7 Nicole is away. She's been away .... Monday.
8 The next meeting is .... April 15.
9 We traveled across Canada .... train.
10 There's too much sugar .... my coffee.
11 Kevin lived in Las Vegas .... six months. He didn't like it very much.
12 Were there a lot of people .... the party?
13 I don't know any of the people .... this photo.
14 The train was very slow. It stopped .... every station.
15 I like this room. I like the pictures .... the walls.
16 "Did you paint that picture?" "No, it was given to me .... a friend of mine."
17 I'm going away .... a few days. I'll be back .... Thursday.
18 Sofia has gone .... Italy. She's .... Milan right now.
19 Emma quit school .... sixteen and got a job .... a bookstore.

Study Guide

This guide will help you decide which units you need to study.

Each sentence can be completed using one or more of the alternatives (A, B, C, etc.). You have to decide which alternative (A, B, C, etc.) is right. SOMETIMES MORE THAN ONE ALTERNATIVE IS CORRECT.

If you don't know or if you are not sure which alternatives are correct, study the unit(s) in the list on the right. You will find the correct sentence in the unit.

There is an Answer Key to this Study Guide on page 300.

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH ANSWER IS RIGHT		STUDY UNIT
Present		
1.1	.... Can I close the window? **A** I cold **B** I'm cold **C** I have cold **D** It has cold	1
1.2	Tom .... He's at work. **A** isn't here **B** not here **C** doesn't here **D** no is here	1
1.3	"....................?" "No, she's out." **A** Is home your mother **B** Does your mother home **C** Is your mother home **D** Are your mother home	2
1.4	These shoes are nice. .... **A** How much are they? **B** How many are they? **C** How much they are? **D** How much is they?	2
1.5	Look, there's Sarah. .... a brown coat. **A** She wearing **B** She has wearing **C** She is wearing **D** She's wearing	3, 22
1.6	You can turn off the TV. .... it. **A** I'm not watch **B** I'm not watching **C** I not watching **D** I don't watching	3, 22
1.7	".................... today?" "Yes, he is." **A** Is working Ben **B** Is work Ben **C** Is Ben work **D** Is Ben working	4, 22
1.8	Look, there's Emily! .... **A** Where she is going? **B** Where she go? **C** Where's she going? **D** Where she going?	4, 22
1.9	The earth .... around the sun. **A** going **B** go **C** goes **D** does go **E** is go	5, 22
1.10	We .... late on weekends. **A** often sleep **B** sleep often **C** often sleeping **D** are often sleep	5, 22, 92
1.11	We .... TV very often. **A** not watch **B** doesn't watch **C** don't watch **D** don't watching **E** watch not	6, 22
1.12	".................... the guitar?" "Yes, but I'm not very good." **A** Do you play **B** Are you play **C** Does you play **D** Do you playing **E** Play you	7, 22
1.13	I don't understand this sentence. What ....? **A** mean this word **B** means this word **C** does mean this word **D** does this word mean **E** this word means	7,22

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH ANSWER IS RIGHT | STUDY UNIT

1.14 Please be quiet. .... — **8, 22**

A I working. **B** I work. **C** I'm working. **D** I'm work.

1.15 Tom .... a shower every morning. — **8**

A takes **B** taking **C** is taking **D** take

1.16 What .... on weekends? — **7, 8, 22**

A do you usually **B** are you usually doing **C** are you usually do
D do you usually do **E** you do usually

1.17 Sarah isn't feeling well. .... a headache. — **9, 56**

A She have **B** She have got **C** She has **D** She's got

1.18 They .... any children. — **9, 56**

A don't have **B** doesn't have **C** no have **D** haven't got **E** hasn't got

Past

2.1 The weather .... last week. — **10**

A is nice **B** was nice **C** were nice **D** nice **E** had nice

2.2 Why .... late this morning? — **10**

A you was **B** did you **C** was you **D** you were **E** were you

2.3 Tony .... in a bank from 2005 to 2011. — **11**

A work **B** working **C** works **D** worked **E** was work

2.4 Megan .... to the movies three times last week. — **11**

A go **B** went **C** goes **D** got **E** was

2.5 I .... TV yesterday. — **12, 22**

A didn't watch **B** didn't watched **C** wasn't watched
D don't watch **E** didn't watching

2.6 "How .... ?" "I don't know. I didn't see it." — **12**

A happened the accident **B** did happen the accident
C does the accident happen **D** did the accident happen
E the accident happened

2.7 What .... at 11:30 yesterday? — **13**

A were you doing **B** was you doing **C** you were doing
D were you do **E** you was doing

2.8 Jack was reading a book when his phone .... — **14**

A ringing **B** ring **C** rang **D** was ringing **E** was ring

2.9 I saw Emily and Sam this morning. They .... at the bus stop. — **14**

A waiting **B** waited **C** were waiting **D** was waiting
E were waited

2.10 Dave .... in a factory. Now he works in a supermarket. — **15**

A working **B** works **C** work **D** use to work **E** used to work

مرجع آموزش زبان ایرانیان
irLanguage.com

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH ANSWER IS RIGHT — STUDY UNIT

Present perfect

3.1 My sister .... by plane. — 16, 22

A has never travel **B** has never traveled **C** is never traveled **D** has never been traveled **E** have never traveled

3.2 .... that woman before, but I can't remember where. — 16, 22

A I see **B** I seen **C** I've saw **D** I've seen **E** I've seeing

3.3 "How long .... married?" "Since 2007." — 17

A you are **B** you have been **C** has you been **D** are you **E** have you been

3.4 "Do you know Lisa?" "Yes, ... her for a long time." — 17

A I knew **B** I've known **C** I know **D** I am knowing

3.5 David has been in Canada .... — 18, 102

A for six months **B** since six months **C** six months ago **D** in six months

3.6 "When did Tom leave?" " ...." — 18

A For ten minutes **B** Since ten minutes **C** Ten minutes ago **D** In ten minutes

3.7 We .... a vacation last year. — 19

A don't take **B** haven't taken **C** hasn't taken **D** didn't take **E** have taken

3.8 Where .... you on Sunday? I couldn't find you. — 19

A you have been **B** were you **C** have you been **D** was you

Passive

4.1 This house .... 100 years ago. — 20, 22

A is built **B** is building **C** was building **D** was built **E** built

4.2 We .... to the party last week. — 20, 22

A didn't invite **B** didn't invited **C** weren't invited **D** wasn't invited **E** haven't been invited

4.3 "Where .... born?" "In Cairo." — 20

A you are **B** you were **C** was you **D** are you **E** were you

4.4 My car is at the garage. It .... — 21

A is being repaired **B** is repairing **C** have been repaired **D** repaired **E** repairs

4.5 I don't have my keys. .... last week. — 20

A They were stolen **B** They are stolen **C** They've stolen **D** They're being stolen

Verb forms

5.1 It ...., so we didn't need an umbrella. — 22

A wasn't rained **B** wasn't rain **C** didn't raining **D** wasn't raining

5.2 Somebody .... this window. — 23

A has broke **B** broke **C** breaked **D** broken

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH ANSWER IS RIGHT

STUDY UNIT

www.irLanguage.com

Future

6.1 Andrew .... tennis tomorrow. — 24

A is playing **B** play **C** plays **D** is play

6.2 .... out tonight? — 24

A Are you going **B** Are you go **C** Do you go **D** Go you
E Do you going

6.3 "What time is the concert tonight?" "It .... at 7:30." — 24

A is start **B** is starting **C** starts **D** start **E** starting

6.4 What .... to the wedding next week? — 25

A are you wearing **B** are you going to wear **C** do you wear
D you are going to wear

6.5 .... to the movies on Saturday. Do you want to come with us? — 26

A We go **B** We'll go **C** We're going **D** We going

6.6 ".................... you tomorrow, OK?" "OK, bye." — 26

A I call **B** I calling **C** I'm calling **D** I'll call

6.7 I don't want my car anymore. .... it. — 25, 26

A I sell **B** I'll sell **C** I'm going to sell **D** I'll selling

Modals, imperative, etc.

7.1 .... to the movies tonight, but I'm not sure. — 27

A I'll go **B** I'm going **C** I may go **D** I might go

7.2 ".................... here?" "Sure." — 27, 28

A Can I sit **B** Do I sit **C** May I sit **D** Can I to sit

7.3 I'm having a party next week, but Eric and Rachel .... — 28

A can't come **B** can't to come **C** can't coming **D** couldn't come

7.4 Before Maria came to the United States, she .... understand much English. — 28

A can **B** can't **C** not **D** couldn't **E** doesn't

7.5 It's evening, and you haven't eaten anything all day. You .... hungry. — 29

A must **B** can **C** must be **D** can be **E** must to be

7.6 It's a good movie. You .... go and see it. — 30

A should to **B** should to go **C** must to **D** should **E** have

7.7 It's a nice day. .... for a walk? — 30

A Do we go **B** We will go **C** Should we go **D** We go
E Go we

7.8 What time .... go to the dentist tomorrow? — 31

A you must **B** you have to **C** have you to **D** do you have to

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH ANSWER IS RIGHT		STUDY UNIT
7.9	We .... walk home last night. There were no buses. **A** have to **B** had to **C** must **D** must to **E** must have	31
7.10	We .... wait very long for the bus – it came in a few minutes. **A** don't have to **B** hadn't to **C** didn't have to **D** didn't had to **E** mustn't	31
7.11	".............................. some coffee?" "No, thank you." **A** Are you liking **B** You like **C** Would you like **D** Do you like	32
7.12	I don't really want to go out. .... home. **A** I rather stay **B** I'd rather stay **C** I'd rather to stay **D** I'd prefer to stay	33
7.13	Please .... Stay here with me. **A** don't go **B** you no go **C** go not **D** you don't go	34
7.14	It's a nice day. .... out. **A** Let's to go **B** Let's go **C** Let's going **D** We go	34
There and it		
8.1	Excuse me, ... a hotel near here? **A** has there **B** is there **C** there is **D** is it	35
8.2	.... a lot of accidents on this road. It's very dangerous. **A** Have **B** It has **C** There have **D** They are **E** There are	35
8.3	I was hungry when I got home, but .... anything to eat. **A** there wasn't **B** there weren't **C** it wasn't **D** there hasn't been	36
8.4	.... two miles from our house to downtown. **A** It's **B** It has **C** There is **D** There are	37
8.5	.... true that you're moving to Dallas? **A** Is there **B** Is it **C** Is **D** Are you	37
Auxiliary verbs		
9.1	I haven't seen the movie, but my sister .... **A** does **B** is **C** has seen **D** has **E** hasn't	38
9.2	I don't like hot weather, but Sue .... **A** does **B** doesn't **C** do **D** does like **E** likes	38
9.3	"Nicole got married last week." ".............................. ? Really?" **A** Got she **B** She got **C** She did **D** She has	39
9.4	You haven't met my mother, ... ? **A** haven't you **B** have you **C** did you **D** you have **E** you haven't	39
9.5	Bill doesn't watch TV. He doesn't read newspapers, ... **A** too **B** either **C** neither **D** never	40

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH ANSWER IS RIGHT

		STUDY UNIT
9.6	"I'd like to go to Australia." "..............................." **A** So do I **B** So am I **C** So would I **D** Neither do I **E** So I would	40
9.7	Sue .... much on weekends. **A** don't **B** doesn't **C** don't do **D** doesn't do	41

Questions

10.1	"When ....?" "I'm not sure. More than 100 years ago." **A** did the telephone invent **B** has the telephone invented **C** was invented the telephone **D** was the telephone invented **E** the telephone was invented	42
10.2	"I broke my finger last week." "How .... that?" **A** did you **B** you did **C** you did do **D** did you do	42
10.3	Why .... me last night? I was waiting for you to call. **A** didn't you call **B** you not call **C** you don't call **D** you didn't call	42
10.4	"Who .... in this house?" "I don't know." **A** lives **B** does live **C** does lives **D** living	43
10.5	What .... when you told him the story? **A** said Kevin **B** did Kevin say **C** Kevin said **D** did Kevin said	43
10.6	"Tom's father is in the hospital." ".............................." **A** In which hospital he is? **B** In which hospital he is in? **C** Which hospital he is in? **D** Which hospital is he in?	44
10.7	Did you have a good vacation? .... **A** How was the weather like? **B** What was the weather like? **C** What the weather was like? **D** Was the weather like?	44
10.8	.... taller – Joe or David? **A** Who is **B** What is **C** Which is **D** Who has	45
10.9	There are four umbrellas here. .... is yours? **A** What **B** Who **C** Which **D** How **E** Which one	45, 73
10.10	How long .... to cross the Atlantic by ship? **A** is it **B** does it need **C** does it take **D** does it want	46
10.11	I don't remember what .... at the party. **A** Anna was wearing **B** was wearing Anna **C** was Anna wearing	47
10.12	"Do you know ....?" "Yes, I think so." **A** if Jack is home **B** is Jack home **C** whether Jack is home **D** that Jack is home	47

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH ANSWER IS RIGHT | STUDY UNIT

Reported speech

11.1 I saw Eric a week ago. He said that .... me, but he didn't. — 48
A he call **B** he calls **C** he'll call **D** he's going to call
E he would call

11.2 "Why did Tim go to bed so early?" "He ...." — 48
A said he was tired **B** said that he was tired **C** said me he was tired
D told me he was tired **E** told that he was tired

-ing and to . . .

12.1 You shouldn't .... so hard. — 49
A working **B** work **C** to work **D** worked

12.2 It's late. I .... now. — 49
A must to go **B** have go **C** have to going **D** have to go

12.3 Rachel decided .... her car. — 50
A sell **B** to sell **C** selling **D** to selling

12.4 I don't mind .... early. — 50
A get up **B** to get up **C** getting up **D** to getting up

12.5 Do you like .... early? — 50
A get up **B** to get up **C** getting up **D** to getting up

12.6 Do you want .... you some money? — 51
A me lend **B** me lending **C** me to lend **D** that I lend

12.7 He's very funny. He makes .... — 51
A me laugh **B** me laughing **C** me to laugh **D** that I laugh

12.8 Sofia went to the store .... some fruit. — 52
A for get **B** for to get **C** for getting **D** to get **E** get

Go, get, do, make, and have

13.1 The water looks nice. I'm going .... — 53
A for a swim **B** on a swim **C** to swimming **D** swimming

13.2 I'm sorry your mother is sick. I hope she .... better soon. — 54
A has **B** makes **C** gets **D** goes

13.3 Kate .... the car and drove away. — 54
A went into **B** went in **C** got in **D** got into

13.4 "Should I open the window?" "No, it's OK. I'll .... it." — 55
A do **B** make **C** get **D** open

13.5 I'm sorry. I .... a mistake. — 55
A did **B** made **C** got **D** had

13.6 .... enough time to do everything you wanted to do? — 56
A Have you **B** Had you **C** Do you have **D** Did you have

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH ANSWER IS RIGHT — STUDY UNIT

Pronouns and possessives

14.1 I don't want this book. You can have .... — 57, 60

A it **B** them **C** her **D** him

14.2 Sue and Kevin are going to the movies. Do you want to go with .... ? — 57, 60

A her **B** they **C** them **D** him

14.3 I know Amy, but I don't know .... husband. — 58, 60

A their **B** his **C** she **D** her

14.4 Hawaii is famous for .... beaches. — 58

A his **B** its **C** it's **D** their

14.5 I didn't have an umbrella, so Emily gave me .... — 59, 60

A her **B** hers **C** her umbrella **D** she's

14.6 I went to the movies with a friend of .... — 59, 60

A mine **B** my **C** me **D** I **E** myself

14.7 We had a good vacation. We enjoyed .... — 61

A us **B** our **C** ours **D** ourself **E** ourselves

14.8 Kate and Nicole are good friends. They know .... well. — 61

A each other **B** them **C** themselves **D** theirselves

14.9 Have you met .... ? — 62

A the wife of Mr. Black **B** Mr. Black wife **C** the wife Mr. Black
D Mr. Black's wife **E** the Mr. Black's wife

14.10 Have you seen .... ? — 62

A the car of my parents **B** my parent's car **C** my parents' car
D my parents car

A and the

15.1 I'm going to buy .... — 63, 65

A hat and umbrella **B** a hat and a umbrella
C a hat and an umbrella **D** an hat and an umbrella

15.2 "What do you do?" ".................... ." — 63

A I dentist **B** I'm a dentist **C** I'm dentist **D** I do dentist

15.3 I'm going shopping. I need .... — 64

A some new jeans **B** a new jeans **C** a new pair of jeans
D a new pair jeans

15.4 I like the people here. .... very friendly. — 64

A She is **B** They are **C** They is **D** It is **E** He is

15.5 We can't get into the house without .... — 65

A some key **B** a key **C** key

15.6 Where can I get .... about hotels here? — 66

A some information **B** some informations **C** an information

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH ANSWER IS RIGHT		STUDY UNIT
15.7	We enjoyed our vacation. .... was very nice. **A** Hotel **B** A hotel **C** An hotel **D** The hotel	67, 68
15.8	The table is in .... **A** middle of room **B** middle of the room **C** the middle of the room **D** the middle of room	68
15.9	What did you have for .... ? **A** the breakfast **B** breakfast **C** a breakfast	68
15.10	I finish .... at 5:00 every day. **A** the work **B** work **C** a work	69
15.11	I'm tired. I'm going .... **A** in bed **B** in the bed **C** to a bed **D** to the bed **E** to bed	69
15.12	We don't eat .... very often. **A** the meat **B** some meat **C** a meat **D** meat	70
15.13	.... is in New York. **A** The Times Square **B** Times Square	71
15.14	My friends are staying at .... **A** the Regent Hotel **B** Regent Hotel	71

Determiners and pronouns

16.1	"I'm going on vacation next week." "Oh, ... nice." **A** it's **B** this is **C** that's	72
16.2	"Is there a bank near here?" "Yes, there's .... on the corner." **A** some **B** it **C** one **D** a one	73
16.3	This cup is dirty. Can I have .... ? **A** clean one **B** a clean one **C** clean **D** a clean	73
16.4	I'm going shopping. I'm going to buy .... clothes. **A** any **B** some	74
16.5	"Where's your luggage?" "I don't have ...." **A** one **B** some **C** any	74
16.6	Tracey and Jeff .... **A** have no children **B** don't have no children **C** don't have any children **D** have any children	75, 76
16.7	"How much money do you have?" ".................... ." **A** No **B** No one **C** Any **D** None	75
16.8	There is .... in the room. It's empty. **A** anybody **B** nobody **C** anyone **D** no one	76, 77
16.9	"What did you say?" ".................... ." **A** Nothing **B** Nobody **C** Anything **D** Anybody	76, 77

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH ANSWER IS RIGHT	STUDY UNIT
16.10 I'm hungry. I want .... **A** something for eat **B** something to eat **C** something for eating	77
16.11 It rained .... last week. **A** all day **B** all days **C** every days **D** every day	78
16.12 .... friends. **A** Everybody need **B** Everybody needs **C** Everyone need **D** Everyone needs	78
16.13 .... children like to play. **A** Most **B** The most **C** Most of **D** The most of	79
16.14 I like .... those pictures. **A** both **B** both of **C** either **D** either of	80
16.15 I haven't read .... these books. **A** neither **B** neither of **C** either **D** either of	80
16.16 Do you have .... friends? **A** a lot of **B** much **C** many **D** much of **E** many of	81
16.17 We like movies, so we go to the movies .... **A** a lot of **B** much **C** many **D** a lot	81
16.18 There were .... people in the theater. It was almost empty. **A** a little **B** few **C** little **D** a few of	82
16.19 They have .... money, so they're not poor. **A** a little **B** a few **C** few **D** little **E** little of	82
Adjectives and adverbs	
17.1 I don't speak any .... **A** foreign languages **B** languages foreign **C** languages foreigns	83
17.2 He ate his dinner very .... **A** quick **B** quicker **C** quickly	84
17.3 You speak English very .... **A** good **B** fluent **C** well **D** slow	84
17.4 Helen wants .... **A** a more big car **B** a car more big **C** a car bigger **D** a bigger car	85
17.5 "Do you feel better today?" "No, I feel ...." **A** good **B** worse **C** more bad **D** more worse	85
17.6 Athens is older .... Rome. **A** as **B** than **C** that **D** of	86
17.7 I can run faster .... **A** than him **B** that he can **C** than he can **D** as he can **E** as he	86

مرجع آموزش زبان ایرانیان
www.IR.com
irLanguage.com

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH ANSWER IS RIGHT — STUDY UNIT

17.8 Tennis isn't .... soccer. 87

A popular as **B** popular than **C** as popular than **D** so popular that
E as popular as

17.9 The weather today is the same .... yesterday. 87

A as **B** that **C** than **D** like

17.10 The Best West Motel is .... in town. 88

A the more expensive motel **B** the most expensive motel
C the motel most expensive **D** the motel the more expensive
E the motel more expensive

17.11 The movie was very bad. I think it's the .... movie I've ever seen. 88

A worse **B** baddest **C** most bad **D** worst **E** more worse

17.12 Why don't you buy a car? You've got 89

A enough money **B** money enough **C** enough of money

17.13 Is your English .... a conversation? 89

A enough good to have **B** good enough for have **C** enough good for
D good enough to have

17.14 I'm .... out. 90

A too tired for go **B** too much tired for going **C** too tired to go
D too much tired to go

Word order

18.1 Sue .... They're very nice. 91

A bought yesterday some new shoes **B** bought some new shoes yesterday
C yesterday bought some new shoes

18.2 .... coffee in the morning. 92

A I drink always **B** Always I drink **C** I always drink

18.3 .... during the day. 92

A They are at home never **B** They are never at home
C They never are at home **D** Never they are at home

18.4 "Where's Emma?" "She ...." 93

A isn't here yet **B** isn't here already **C** isn't here still

18.5 I locked the door, and I gave 94

A Sarah the keys **B** to Sarah the keys **C** the keys Sarah
D the keys to Sarah

Conjunctions and clauses

19.1 I can't talk to you now. I'll talk to you later when .... more time. 96

A I'll have **B** I had **C** I have **D** I'm going to have

19.2 .... late tonight, don't wait for me. 97

A If I'm **B** If I'll be **C** When I'm **D** When I'll be

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH ANSWER IS RIGHT		STUDY UNIT
19.3	I don't know the answer. If I .... the answer, I'd tell you. **A** know **B** would know **C** have known **D** knew	98
19.4	I like that jacket. .... it if it wasn't so expensive. **A** I buy **B** I'll buy **C** I bought **D** I'd bought **E** I'd buy	98
19.5	Emma lives in a house .... is 100 years old. **A** who **B** that **C** which **D** it **E** what	99
19.6	The people .... work in the office are very friendly. **A** who **B** that **C** they **D** which **E** what	99
19.7	Did you find the books .... ? **A** who you wanted **B** that you wanted **C** what you wanted **D** you wanted **E** you wanted it	100
19.8	I met .... can speak six languages. **A** a woman who **B** a woman which **C** a woman **D** a woman she	100
Prepositions		
20.1	Bye! See you .... **A** Friday **B** at Friday **C** in Friday **D** on Friday	101
20.2	Hurry! The train leaves .... five minutes. **A** at **B** on **C** from **D** after **E** in	101
20.3	"How long will you be away?" ".................... Monday." **A** On **B** To **C** Until **D** Till **E** Since	102
20.4	We played basketball yesterday. We played .... two hours. **A** in **B** for **C** since **D** during	103
20.5	I always have breakfast before .... to work. **A** I go **B** go **C** to go **D** going	103
20.6	Write your name .... the top of the page. **A** at **B** on **C** in **D** to	104
20.7	There are a lot of apples .... those trees. **A** at **B** on **C** in **D** to	104
20.8	What's the largest city .... the world? **A** at **B** on **C** in **D** of	105
20.9	The office is .... the second floor. **A** at **B** on **C** in **D** to	105
20.10	I met a lot of people .... the party. **A** on **B** to **C** in **D** at	106

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH ANSWER IS RIGHT		STUDY UNIT
20.11	I want to go .... Mexico next year. **A** at **B** on **C** in **D** to	106
20.12	What time did you arrive .... the hotel? **A** at **B** on **C** in **D** to	106
20.13	"Where is Dan in this picture?" "He's .... Ben." **A** at front of **B** in the front of **C** in front of **D** in front from	107
20.14	I jumped .... the wall into the yard. **A** on **B** through **C** across **D** over **E** above	108
20.15	Megan isn't at work this week. She's .... vacation. **A** on **B** in **C** for **D** to **E** at	109
20.16	Do you like traveling .... ? **A** with train **B** with the train **C** in train **D** on train **E** by train	109
20.17	I'm not very good .... telling stories. **A** on **B** with **C** at **D** in **E** for	110
20.18	Tom left without .... goodbye. **A** say **B** saying **C** to say **D** that he said	110
20.19	I have to call .... tonight. **A** with my parents **B** to my parents **C** at my parents **D** my parents	111
20.20	"Do you like eating in restaurants?" "Sometimes. It depends .... the restaurant." **A** in **B** at **C** of **D** on **E** over	111
Phrasal verbs		
21.1	A car stopped and a woman got .... **A** off **B** down **C** out **D** out of	112
21.2	It was cold, so I .... **A** put on my coat **B** put my coat on **C** put the coat on me **D** put me the coat on	113
21.3	I have Rachel's keys. I have to .... to her. **A** give back **B** give them back **C** give back them **D** give it back	113

Answer Key to Exercises

UNIT 1

1.1

2 they're
3 it isn't / it's not
4 that's
5 I'm not
6 you aren't / you're not

1.2

2 'm/am	6 are
3 is	7 is . . . are
4 are	8 'm/am . . . is
5 's/is	

1.3

2 I'm / I am
3 He's / He is
4 they're / they are
5 It's / It is
6 You're / You are
7 She's / She is
8 Here's / Here is

1.4

Example answers:

1 My name is Robert.
2 I'm 25.
3 I'm from Brazil.
4 I'm a cook.
5 My favorite colors are black and white.
6 I'm interested in plants.

1.5

2 They're/are cold.
3 He's/is hot.
4 He's / He is scared.
5 They're / They are hungry.
6 She's / She is angry.

1.6

2 It's/is windy today. *or* isn't / 's not windy today.
3 My hands are cold. *or* My hands aren't / are not cold.
4 Brazil is a very big country.
5 Diamonds aren't / are not cheap.
6 Toronto isn't / is not in the United States.
8 I'm / I am hungry. *or* I'm not / I am not hungry.
9 I'm / I am in bed. *or* I'm not / I am not in bed.
10 I'm / I am interested in politics. *or* I'm not / I am not interested in politics.

UNIT 2

2.1

2 F	6 E
3 H	7 B
4 C	8 I
5 A	9 D

2.2

3 Is your job interesting?
4 Are the stores open today?
5 Where are you from?
6 Are you interested in sports?
7 Is the train station near here?
8 Are your children at school?
9 Why are you late?

2.3

2 Where's / Where is
3 How old are
4 How much are
5 What's / What is
6 Who's / Who is
7 What color are

2.4

2 Are you Australian?
3 How old are you?
4 Are you a teacher?
5 Are you married?
6 Is your wife a lawyer?
7 Where's / Where is she from?
8 What's / What is her name?
9 How old is she?

2.5

2 Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.
3 Yes, it is. *or* No, it isn't. / No, it's not.
4 Yes, they are. *or* No, they aren't. / No, they're not.
5 Yes, it is. *or* No, it isn't. / No, it's not.
6 Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.

UNIT 3

3.1

2 's/is waiting
3 're/are playing
4 He's / He is lying
5 They're / They are having
6 She's / She is sitting

3.2

2 's/is cooking
3 're/are standing
4 's/is swimming
5 're/are staying
6 's/is taking
7 're/are building
8 'm/am leaving

3.3

3 She's / She is sitting on the floor.
4 She isn't / She's not reading a book.
5 She isn't / She's not playing the piano.
6 She's / She is laughing.
7 She's / She is wearing a hat.
8 She isn't / She's not drinking coffee.

3.4

3 I'm sitting on a chair. *or* I'm not sitting on a chair.
4 I'm eating. *or* I'm not eating.
5 It's raining. *or* It isn't raining. / It's not raining.
6 I'm studying English.
7 I'm listening to music. *or* I'm not listening to music.
8 The sun is shining. *or* The sun isn't shining.
9 I'm wearing shoes. *or* I'm not wearing shoes.
10 I'm not reading a newspaper.

UNIT 4

4.1

2 Are you leaving now?
3 Is it raining?
4 Are you enjoying the movie?
5 Is that clock working?
6 Are you waiting for a bus?

4.2

2 Where is she going?
3 What are you eating?
4 Why are you crying?
5 What are they looking at?
6 Why is he laughing?

4.3

3 Are you listening to me?
4 Where are your friends going?
5 Are your parents watching TV?
6 What is Jessica cooking?
7 Why are you looking at me?
8 Is the bus coming?

4.4

2 Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.
3 Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.
4 Yes, it is. *or* No, it isn't. / No, it's not.
5 Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.
6 Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.

UNIT 5

5.1

2 thinks
3 flies
4 dances
5 has
6 finishes

5.2

2 live
3 She eats
4 He plays
5 They go
6 He sleeps

5.3

2 open
3 closes
4 teaches
5 meet
6 washes
7 costs
8 cost
9 boils
10 like . . . likes

5.4

2 I never go to the movies.
3 Hannah always works hard.
4 Children usually like chocolate.
5 Julia always enjoys parties.
6 I often forget people's names.
7 Nick never watches TV.
8 We usually have dinner at 6:30.
9 Jenn always wears nice clothes.

5.5

Example answers:
2 I sometimes read in bed.
3 I often get up before 7:00.
4 I never go to work by bus.
5 I always drink coffee in the morning.

UNIT 6

6.1

2 Anna doesn't play the piano very well.
3 I don't know my phone number.
4 We don't work very hard.
5 Mike doesn't have a car.
6 You don't do the same thing every day.

6.2

1 Carol doesn't like classical music. I like (*or* I don't like) classical music.
2 Bill and Rose don't like boxing. Carol likes boxing. I like (*or* I don't like) boxing.
3 Bill and Rose like horror movies. Carol doesn't like horror movies. I like (*or* I don't like) horror movies.

6.3

Example answers:
2 I never go to the theater.
3 I don't ride a bike very often.
4 I never eat in restaurants.
5 I travel by train a lot.

6.4

2 doesn't use
3 don't go
4 doesn'twear
5 don't know
6 doesn't cost
7 don't see

6.5

3 don't know
4 doesn't talk
5 drinks
6 don't believe
7 like
8 doesn't eat

UNIT 7

7.1

2 Do you play tennis?
3 Does Emily live near here?
4 Do Tom's friends play tennis? / Do they play tennis?
5 Does your brother speak English? / Does he speak English?
6 Do you do yoga every morning?
7 Does Eric often travel on business? / Does he often travel on business?
8 Do you want to be famous?
9 Does Anna work hard? / Does she work hard?

7.2

3 How often do you watch TV?
4 What do you want for dinner?
5 Do you like football?
6 Does your brother like football?
7 What do you do in your free time?
8 Where does your sister work?
9 Do you always have breakfast?
10 What does this word mean?
11 Does it snow here in the winter?
12 What time do you usually go to bed?
13 How much does it cost to call Mexico?
14 What do you usually have for breakfast?

7.3

2 Do you enjoy / Do you like
3 do you start
4 Do you work
5 do you get
6 does he do
7 does he teach
8 Does he enjoy / Does he like

7.4

2 Yes, I do. *or* No, I don't.
3 Yes, I do. *or* No, I don't.
4 Yes, it does. *or* No, it doesn't.
5 Yes, I do. *or* No, I don't.

UNIT 8

8.1

2 No, she isn't. Yes, she does. She's playing the piano.
3 Yes, he does. Yes, he is. He's washing a window.
4 No, they aren't. Yes, they do. They teach.

8.2

2 don't
3 are
4 does
5 's/is . . . don't
6 do
7 does
8 doesn't

8.3

4 's/is singing
5 She wants
6 do you use
7 you're / you are sitting
8 I don't / I do not understand
9 I'm / I am going . . . Are you coming
10 does your father finish
11 I'm not / I am not listening
12 He's / He is cooking
13 doesn't usually drive . . . usually walks
14 doesn't like . . . She prefers

UNIT 9

9.1

3 He has a new job.
4 Do you have an umbrella?
5 We have a lot of work to do.
6 I don't have your phone number.
7 Does your father have a car?
8 How much money do we have?

9.2

2 I haven't got many clothes.
3 Has Tom got a brother?
4 How many children have they got?
5 Have you got any questions?
6 Sam hasn't got a job.

9.3

2 He has a bike.
3 He doesn't have a dog.
4 He has a cell phone.
5 He doesn't have a watch.
6 He has two brothers and a sister.

Example answers:

7 I don't have a dog.
8 I have a bike.
9 I have one sister and one brother.

9.4

3 has
4 don't have
5 have
6 don't have
7 doesn't have

9.5

2 has a lot of friends.
3 doesn't have a key.
4 don't have much time.
5 has six legs.
6 don't have a job.

UNIT 10

10.1

2 Jack and Kate were at the movies.
3 Sue was at the station.
4 Mr. and Mrs. Hall were in/at a restaurant.
5 Ben was at the beach.
6 *(Example answer)* I was at work.

10.2

2 is . . . was
3 'm/am
4 was
5 were
6 're/are
7 Was
8 was
9 are . . . were

10.3

2 wasn't . . . was
3 was . . . were
4 "**Were** Kate and Bill at the party?" "Kate **was** there, but Bill **wasn't**. *or* "Kate **wasn't** there, but Bill **was**."
5 were
6 weren't . . . were

10.4

2 Was your exam difficult?
3 Where were Sue and Chris last week?
4 How much was your new camera?
5 Why were you angry yesterday?
6 Was the weather nice last week?

UNIT 11

11.1

2 opened
3 started . . . ended
4 wanted
5 happened
6 rained
7 enjoyed . . . stayed
8 died

11.2

2 got
3 had
4 left
5 drove
6 got
7 parked
8 walked
9 checked
10 had
11 waited
12 departed
13 arrived
14 took

11.3

2 lost her keys
3 met her friends
4 bought a newspaper
5 went to the movies
6 ate an orange
7 took a shower
8 came (to see us)

11.4

2 just got up.
3 just bought a (new) car.
4 just started.

UNIT 12

12.1

2 didn't work
3 didn't go
4 didn't have
5 didn't do

12.2

2 Did you enjoy the party?
3 Did you have a nice vacation?
4 Did you finish work early?
5 Did you sleep well last night?

12.3

2 I got up before 7:00. *or* didn't get up before 7:00.
3 I took a shower. *or* I didn't take a shower.
4 I bought a magazine. *or* I didn't buy a magazine.
5 I ate meat. *or* I didn't eat meat.
6 I went to bed before 10:30. *or* I didn't go to bed before 10:30.

12.4

2 did you get to work
3 Did you win
4 did you go
5 did it cost
6 Did you go to bed late
7 Did you have a nice time
8 did it happen / did that happen

12.5

2 bought
3 Did it rain
4 didn't stay
5 opened
6 didn't have
7 did you do
8 didn't know

UNIT 13

13.1

2 Jack and Kate were at the movies. They were watching a movie.
3 Tom was in his car. He was driving.
4 Amanda was at the station. She was waiting for a train.
5 Mr. and Mrs. Hall were in the park. They were walking.
6 *(Example answer)* I was at a café. I was having coffee with some friends.

13.2

2 she was playing tennis.
3 she was reading a/the newspaper.
4 she was cooking (lunch).
5 she was having/eating breakfast.
6 she was cleaning the kitchen.

13.3

2 What were you doing
3 Was it raining
4 Why was Sue driving
5 Was Tom wearing

13.4

2 He was carrying a bag.
3 He wasn't riding a bike.
4 He wasn't going home.
5 He was wearing a hat.
6 He wasn't carrying an umbrella.
7 He wasn't going to the dentist.
8 He was eating an ice cream cone.

UNIT 14

14.1

1 happened . . . was painting . . . fell
2 arrived . . . got . . . were waiting
3 was walking . . . met . . . was going . . . was carrying . . . stopped

14.2

2 was studying
3 Did Eric call . . . called . . . was having
4 didn't go
5 were you driving . . . stopped . . . wasn't driving
6 Did your team win . . . didn't play
7 did you break . . . were playing . . . hit . . . broke
8 Did you see . . . was wearing
9 were you doing . . . was sleeping . . .
10 lost . . . did you get . . . climbed

UNIT 15

15.1

2 He used to play soccer.
3 She used to be a taxi driver.
4 They used to live in the country.
5 He used to wear glasses.
6 This building used to be a hotel.

15.2

2 She used to play volleyball.
3–6
She used to go out three or four nights a week. / She used to go out a lot.
She used to play a musical instrument. / She used to play the guitar.
She used to read a lot. / She used to like to read.
She used to take two or three trips a year. / She used to travel a lot.

15.3

3 used to have
4 used to be
5 go/commute
6 used to eat
7 watches
8 used to live
9 get
10 did you use to work

UNIT 16

16.1

3 Have you ever been to South Korea?
4 Have you ever lost your passport?
5 Have you ever flown in a helicopter?
6 Have you ever won a race?
7 Have you ever been to Peru?
8 Have you ever driven a bus?
9 Have you ever broken your leg?

16.2

Lauren:
2 She's / She has been to South Korea once.
3 She's / She has never won a race.
4 She's / She has flown in a helicopter a few times.

You (example answers):
5 I've / I have never been to New York.
6 I've / I have played tennis many times.
7 I've / I have never driven a truck.
8 I've / I have been late for work a few times.

16.3

2–6
She's / She has done a lot of interesting things.
She's / She has traveled all over the world. *or*
She's / She has been all over the world.
She's / She has been married three times.
She's / She has written 10 books.
She's / She has met a lot of interesting people.

16.4

3 Have you ever written
4 she's / she has never met
5 they've / they have read
6 I've / I have never been . . . my brother has been
7 She's / She has seen . . . I've / I have never seen
8 I've / I have traveled

UNIT 17

17.1

3 've/have been
4 's/has been
5 've/have lived *or* 've/have been living

irLanguage.com

6 's/has worked *or* 's/has been working
7 's/has had
8 've/have been studying

17.2

2 How long have they been there *or* ... been in Brazil?
3 How long have you known her? *or* ... known Emma?
4 How long has she been studying Italian?
5 How long has he lived / been living in Seattle?
6 How long have you been a teacher?
7 How long has it been raining?

17.3

2 She has lived in South Korea all her life.
3 They have been on vacation since Sunday.
4 The sun has been shining all day.
5 She has been waiting for 10 minutes.
6 He has had a beard since he was 20.

17.4

2 I know
3 I've known
4 have you been waiting
5 works
6 She has been reading
7 have you lived
8 I've had
9 is ... He has been

UNIT 18

18.1

3 for
4 since
5 since
6 for
7 for
8 for ... since

18.2

Example answers:

2 A year ago.
3 A few weeks ago.
4 Two hours ago.
5 Six months ago.

18.3

3 for 20 years.
4 20 years ago.
5 an hour ago.
6 a few days ago.
7 for six months.
8 for a long time

18.4

2 Jack has been here since Tuesday.
3 It's been raining for an hour.
4 I've known Sue since 2008.
5 Emily and Matthew have been married for six months.
6 Liz has been studying medicine for three years.
7 David has played / has been playing the piano since he was seven years old.

18.5

Example answers:

2 I've been to New York three times.
3 I've been studying English for six months.
4 I've known Chris for a long time.
5 I've had a headache since I got up this morning.

UNIT 19

19.1

2 've/have invited
3 Have you seen
4 has changed
5 have you decided
6 have gone up
7 Have you finished
8 've/have fixed
9 's/has stopped

19.2

3 *OK* (Did you see *is also correct*)
4 Vicky bought
5 *OK* (I decided *is also correct*)
6 I decided
7 The weather wasn't good.
8 Steve's grandmother died

19.3

2 The train hasn't left yet.
3 He hasn't opened it yet.
4 The movie hasn't started yet.

19.4

2 Have (you) met your new neighbors yet?
3 Have you booked your flight yet?
4 Has the meeting finished yet?

UNIT 20

20.1

3 Glass is made from sand.
4 The windows are washed every two weeks.
5 This word isn't / is not used very often.
6 Are we allowed to park here?
7 How is this word pronounced?
9 The house was painted last month.
10 My phone was stolen a few days ago.
11 Three people were injured in the accident.
12 When was this bridge built?
13 I wasn't / was not woken up by the noise.
14 How were these windows broken?
15 Were you invited to Jon's party last week?

20.2

2 Soccer is played in most ...
3 Why was the email sent to ... ?
4 ... where movies are made.
5 Where were you born?
6 How many languages are spoken ... ?
7 ... but nothing was stolen.
8 When was the bicycle invented?

20.3

3 is made
4 were damaged
5 was given
6 are shown
7 were invited
8 was made
9 was stolen ... was found

20.4

2 Isabela was born in São Paulo.
3 Her parents were born in Rio de Janeiro.
4 I was born in ...
5 My mother was born in ...

UNIT 21

21.1

2 A bridge is being built.
3 The windows are being washed/cleaned.
4 The grass is being cut.

21.2

3 The window has been broken.
4 The roof is being repaired.
5 The car has been damaged.
6 The houses are being torn down.
7 The trees have been cut down.
8 They have been invited to a party.

21.3

3 has been repaired / was repaired
4 was repaired
5 are made
6 were they built
7 Is the photocopier being used (*or* Is anybody using the photocopier)
8 are they called
9 were stolen
10 was damaged . . . hasn't / has not been repaired

UNIT 22

22.1

3 are	7 do
4 Does	8 Is
5 Do	9 does
6 Is	10 Are

22.2

2 don't
3 'm/am not
4 isn't
5 don't
6 doesn't
7 'm/am not
8 're not / aren't

22.3

2 Did	7 were
3 were	8 Has
4 was	9 did
5 Did	10 have
6 did	

22.4

2 was	6 've/have
3 Have	7 is
4 are	8 was
5 were	9 has

22.5

3 eaten	8 understand
4 enjoying	9 listening
5 damaged	10 pronounced
6 use	11 open
7 gone	

UNIT 23

23.1

3 said	10 happened
4 brought	11 heard
5 paid	12 put
6 enjoyed	13 caught
7 bought	14 watched
8 sat	15 understood
9 left	

23.2

2 began	begun
3 ate	eaten
4 drank	drunk
5 drove	driven
6 spoke	spoken
7 wrote	written
8 came	come
9 knew	known
10 took	taken
11 went	gone
12 gave	given
13 threw	thrown
14 got	gotten

23.3

3 slept	10 built
4 saw	11 learned
5 rained	12 ridden
6 lost . . . seen	13 known
7 stolen	14 fell . . . hurt
8 went	15 ran . . . run
9 finished	

23.4

2 told	8 spoken
3 won	9 cost
4 met	10 driven
5 woken up	11 sold
6 swam	12 flew
7 thought	

UNIT 24

24.1

2 Dan is going to the movies.
3 Rachel is meeting Dave.
4 Karen is having lunch with Will.
5 Sue and Tom are going to a party.

24.2

2 Are you working next week?
3 What are you doing tomorrow night?
4 What time are your friends coming?
5 When is Liz going on vacation?

24.3

Example answers:

3 I'm going away this weekend.
4 I'm playing basketball tomorrow.
5 I'm meeting a friend tonight.
6 I'm going to the movies on Thursday night.

24.4

3 Karen is getting
4 are going . . . are they going
5 ends
6 I'm not going
7 I'm going . . . We're meeting
8 are you getting . . . leaves
9 does the movie begin
10 are you doing . . . I'm working

UNIT 25

25.1

2 I'm going to take a bath.
3 I'm going to buy a car.
4 We're going to play soccer.

25.2

3 'm/am going to walk
4 's/is going to stay
5 'm/am going to eat
6 're/are going to give
7 's/is going to lie down
8 Are you going to watch
9 is . . . going to do

25.3

2 The shelf is going to fall (down).
3 The car is going to turn left.
4 He's/is going to kick the ball.

25.4

Example answers:

1 I'm going to call Maria tonight.
2 I'm going to get up early tomorrow.
3 I'm going to buy some shoes tomorrow.

UNIT 26

26.1

2 she'll be	5 she's
3 she was	6 she was
4 she'll be	7 she'll be

26.2
2 'll/will
3 won't
4 'll/will
5 won't
6 'll/will

26.3
2 I'll do
3 I'll have
4 I'll sit
5 I'll eat
6 I'll stay
7 I'll show

26.4
2 I think I'll have
3 I don't think I'll play
4 I think I'll buy
5 I don't think I'll buy it

26.5
2 I'll do
3 I watch
4 will lend
5 Are you going out
6 I'll be
7 is going to buy
8 will pass
9 I'm meeting

UNIT 27

27.1
2 I might see you tomorrow.
3 Sarah might forget to call.
4 It might snow today.
5 I might be late tonight.
6 Tony might not be here next week.
7 I might not have time to go out.

27.2
2 I might take a trip. / I might go on a trip.
3 I might see her on Monday.
4 I might have fish.
5 I might take a taxi.
6 I might buy/get a new car.

27.3
3 He might get up early.
4 He isn't / He's not working tomorrow.
5 He might be at home tomorrow morning.
6 He might watch TV.
7 He's going out in the afternoon.
8 He might go shopping.

27.4
Example answers:
1 I might read a newspaper.
2 I might go out with some friends at night.
3 I might have an egg for breakfast.

UNIT 28

28.1
2 Can you ski?
3 Can you play chess?
4 Can you run 10 kilometers?
5 Can you drive (a car)?
6 Can you ride (a horse)?
Example answers:
7 I can/can't swim.
8 I can/can't ski.
9 I can/can't play chess.
10 I can/can't run 10 kilometers.
11 I can/can't drive (a car).
12 I can/can't ride (a horse).

28.2
2 can see
3 can't hear
4 can't find
5 can speak

28.3
2 couldn't eat
3 can't decide
4 couldn't find
5 can't go
6 couldn't go

28.4
2 Can/Could you pass the salt (please)?
3 Can/Could I have these postcards (please)?
4 Can/Could you turn off the radio (please)?
5 Can/Could I borrow your newspaper (please)?
6 Can/Could I use your pen (please)?

UNIT 29

29.1
2 must be tired
3 must be good
4 must be very happy
5 must be for you
6 must be in the kitchen

29.2
2 must like
3 must have
4 must drink
5 must work

29.3
3 must not
4 must
5 must not
6 must not
7 must

29.4
3 must
4 must not
5 must not
6 must
7 must

29.5
2 had to know
3 must wear
4 must not miss
5 had to take
6 must be
7 must not feed
8 had to go

UNIT 30

30.1
2 You should go
3 You should eat
4 you should visit
5 you should wear
6 You should read

30.2
2 He shouldn't eat so much.
3 She shouldn't work so hard.
4 He shouldn't drive so fast.

30.3
2 Do you think I should learn (to drive)?
3 Do you think I should get another job?

www.irLanguage.com

4 Do you think I should invite Ryan (to the party)?

30.4
3 I think you should sell it.
4 I think she should take a trip.
5 I don't think they should get married.
6 I don't think you should go to work.

30.5
2 F
3 B
4 E
5 C
6 A

UNIT 31

31.1
2 have to take
3 has to read
4 have to speak
5 has to travel
6 have to hit

31.2
2 have to go
3 had to buy
4 have to change
5 had to answer
6 have to wake
7 have to take

31.3
2 did he have to wait
3 does she have to go
4 did you have to pay
5 do you have to do
6 did they have to leave early
7 does he have to go (to Moscow)

31.4
2 doesn't have to wait
3 didn't have to get up early
4 doesn't have to work (so) hard
5 don't have to leave now
6 didn't have to tell me something I already know

31.5
Example answers:
2 I have to go to work every day.
3 I had to go to the dentist yesterday.
4 I have to go shopping tomorrow.
5 I had to take the bus to work last week.
6 I had to go to bed at 9:00 when I was younger.

UNIT 32

32.1
2 Would you like an apple?
3 Would you like some coffee? / ... a cup of coffee?
4 Would you like some cheese? / ... a piece of cheese?
5 Would you like a sandwich?
6 Would you like some cake? / ... a piece of cake?

32.2
2 Would you like to play tennis tomorrow?
3 Would you like to come to a concert next week?
4 Would you like to borrow my umbrella?

32.3
2 Do you like
3 Would you like
4 would you like
5 Would you like
6 I like
7 would you like
8 Would you like
9 Do you like
10 I'd like
11 I'd like
12 do you like

UNIT 33

33.1
2 I'd rather read
3 I'd rather have
4 I'd rather wait

33.2
2 would you rather have/eat dinner
3 would you rather have/drink
4 would you rather watch
5 would you rather call him

33.3
2 take
3 to go
4 get/have/find
5 carry/do
6 see / call / talk to / speak to ... to send / to write

33.4
2 I'd rather be a journalist than a schoolteacher. *or* ... be a schoolteacher than a journalist.
3 I'd rather live in a big city than (in) a small town. *or* ... live in a small town than (in) a big city.
4 I'd rather have a small house than a big house. *or* ... have a big house than a small house.
5 I'd rather study electronics than philosophy. *or* ... study philosophy than electronics.
6 I'd rather watch a soccer game than a movie. *or* ... watch a movie than a soccer game.

UNIT 34

34.1
3 Don't buy
4 Smile
5 Don't sit
6 Have
7 Don't forget
8 Sleep
9 Be ... Don't drop

34.2
2 let's take the bus
3 let's watch TV
4 let's go to a restaurant
5 let's wait a little

34.3
3 No, let's not go out.
4 No, don't close the window.
5 No, don't call me (tonight).
6 No, let's not wait for Andy.
7 No, don't turn on the light.
8 No, let's not take a taxi.

UNIT 35

35.1
3 There's / There is a hospital.
4 There isn't a swimming pool.
5 There are two movie theaters.
6 There isn't a university.
7 There aren't any big hotels.

35.2
Example answers:
3 There is a university in ...
4 There are a lot of big stores.
5 There isn't an airport.
6 There aren't many factories.

irLanguage.com

35.3

2 There's / There is
3 is there
4 There are
5 are there
6 There isn't
7 Is there
8 Are there
9 There's / There is ... There aren't

35.4

2–6
There are eight planets in the solar system.
There are five players on a basketball team.
There are twenty-six letters in the English alphabet.
There are thirty days in September.
There are fifty states in the United States.

35.5

2 It's
3 There's
4 There's ... Is it
5 Is there ... there's
6 It's
7 Is there

UNIT 36

36.1

2 There was a carpet
3 There were three pictures
4 There was a small table
5 There were some flowers
6 There were some books
7 There was an armchair
8 There was a sofa

36.2

3 There was
4 Was there
5 there weren't
6 There wasn't
7 Were there
8 There wasn't
9 There was
10 there weren't

36.3

2 There are
3 There was
4 There's / There is
5 There's been / There has been *or* There was
6 there was
7 there will be
8 there were ... there are
9 There have been
10 there will be *or* there are

UNIT 37

37.1

2 It's cold.
3 It's windy.
4 It's sunny/clear. *or* It's a nice day.
5 It's snowing.
6 It's cloudy.

37.2

2 It's / It is
3 Is it
4 is it ... it's / it is
5 It's / It is
6 Is it
7 is it
8 It's / It is
9 It's / It is

37.3

2 How far is it from the hotel to the beach?
3 How far is it from New York to Washington?
4 How far is it from your house to the airport?

37.4

3 It
4 It ... It
5 There
6 it
7 It ... there
8 It

37.5

2 It's nice to see you again.
3 It's impossible to work here.
4 It's easy to make friends.
5 It's interesting to visit different places.
6 It's dangerous to go out alone.

UNIT 38

38.1

2 is
3 can
4 has
5 will
6 was

38.2

2 'm not
3 weren't
4 haven't
5 isn't
6 hasn't

38.3

3 doesn't
4 do
5 did
6 does
7 don't
8 didn't

38.4

Example answers:
2 I like sports, but my sister doesn't.
3 I don't eat meat, but Jenny does.
4 I'm American, but my husband isn't.
5 I haven't been to Japan, but Jenny has.

38.5

2 wasn't
3 is
4 does
5 can't
6 did
7 has
8 do
9 wasn't
10 will
11 might

38.6

2 Yes, I do. *or* No, I don't.
3 Yes, I do. *or* No, I don't.
4 Yes, it is. *or* No, it isn't.
5 Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.
6 Yes, I do. *or* No, I don't.
7 Yes, I will. *or* No, I won't.
8 Yes, I have. *or* No, I haven't.
9 Yes, I did. *or* No, I didn't.
10 Yes, I was. *or* No, I wasn't.

UNIT 39

39.1

2 You do?
3 You didn't?
4 She doesn't?
5 I do?
6 She did?

39.2

3 You did?
4 She can't?
5 You were?
6 You didn't?
7 There is?
8 You aren't?
9 You did?
10 She does?
11 You won't?
12 It isn't?

39.3

2 aren't they
3 wasn't she
4 haven't you
5 don't you
6 doesn't he
7 won't you

39.4

2 are you
3 isn't she
4 can't you
5 do you
6 didn't she
7 was it
8 doesn't she
9 will you

UNIT 40

40.1

2 either
3 too
4 too
5 either
6 either
7 too

40.2

2 So am I.
3 So have I.
4 So do I.
5 So will I.
6 So was I.
7 Neither can I.
8 Neither did I.
9 Neither have I.
10 Neither am I.
11 Neither do I.

40.3

1 So am I.
2 So can I. *or* I can't.
3 Neither am I. *or* I am.
4 So do I. *or* I don't.
5 Neither do I. *or* I do.
6 So did I. *or* I didn't.
7 Neither have I. *or* I have.
8 Neither do I. *or* I do.
9 So am I. *or* I'm not.
10 Neither have I. *or* I have.
11 Neither did I. *or* I did.
12 So do I. *or* I don't.

UNIT 41

41.1

2 They aren't / They're not married.
3 I didn't have dinner.
4 It isn't cold today.
5 We won't be late.
6 You shouldn't go.

41.2

2 I don't like cheese.
3 They didn't understand.
4 He doesn't live here.
5 Don't go away!
6 I didn't do the dishes.

41.3

2 They haven't arrived.
3 I didn't go to the bank.
4 He doesn't speak Japanese.
5 We weren't angry.
6 He won't be happy.
7 Don't call me tonight.
8 It didn't rain yesterday.
9 I couldn't hear them.
10 I don't believe you.

41.4

2 'm not / am not
3 can't
4 doesn't
5 isn't / 's not
6 don't . . . haven't
7 Don't
8 didn't
9 haven't
10 won't
11 didn't
12 weren't
13 hasn't
14 shouldn't

41.5

3 He wasn't born in Los Angeles.
4 He doesn't like Los Angeles.
5 He'd like to live someplace else.
6 He can drive.
7 He hasn't traveled abroad.
8 He doesn't read the newspaper.
9 He isn't interested in politics.
10 He usually watches TV at night.
11 He didn't watch TV last night.
12 He went out last night.

UNIT 42

42.1

3 Were you late this morning?
4 Has Kate seen that movie?
5 Will you be here tomorrow?
6 Is Sam going out tonight?
7 Do you like your job?
8 Does Nicole live near here?
9 Did you enjoy the movie?
10 Did you have a good vacation?

42.2

2 Do you use it a lot?
3 Did you use it yesterday?
4 Do you enjoy driving?
5 Are you a good driver?
6 Have you ever had an accident?

42.3

3 What are the children doing?
4 How is cheese made?
5 Is your sister coming to the party?
6 Why don't you tell the truth?
7 Have your guests arrived yet?
8 What time does your plane leave?
9 Why didn't Emma go to work?
10 Was your car damaged in the accident?

42.4

3 What are you reading?
4 What time did she go to bed?
5 When are they going (on vacation)?
6 Where did you see him?
7 Why can't you come (to the party)?
8 How many times have you been there? / . . . to Canada?
9 How much (money) do you need?
10 Why doesn't she like you?
11 How often does it rain?
12 When did you do it? / . . . the shopping?

UNIT 43

43.1

2 What fell off the shelf?
3 Who wants to see me?
4 Who took your umbrella? / Who took it?
5 What made you sick?
6 Who's / Who is coming?

43.2

3 Who did you call?
4 What happened last night?
5 Who knows the answer?
6 Who did the dishes?
7 What did Emma/she do?
8 What woke you up?

www.irLanguage.com

9 Who saw the accident?
10 Who did you see?
11 Who has your pen / it?
12 What does this word / it mean?

43.3

2 Who called you?
What did she want?
3 Who did you ask?
What did he say?
4 Who got married last week?
Who told you?
5 Who did you meet?
What did she tell you?
6 Who won?
What did you do (after the game)?
7 Who gave you a book?
What did Catherine give you?

UNIT 44

44.1

2 What are you looking for?
3 Who did you go to the movies with?
4 What/Who was the movie about?
5 Who did you give the money to?
6 Who was the book written by?

44.2

2 What are they looking at?
3 Which restaurant is he going to?
4 What are they talking about?
5 What is she listening to?
6 Which bus are they waiting for?

44.3

2 Which hotel did you stay at?
3 Which team does he belong to? / . . . play for?
4 Which school did you go to?

44.4

2 What is the food like?
3 What are the people like?
4 What is the weather like?

44.5

2 What was the movie like?
3 What were the classes like?
4 What was the hotel like?

UNIT 45

45.1

3 What color is it?
4 What time did you
5 What type of music do you like?
6 What kind of car do you want (to buy)?

45.2

2 Which coat
3 Which movie/film
4 Which bus

45.3

3 Which
4 What
5 What
6 Which
7 Which
8 Who
9 What
10 Which
11 What

45.4

2 How far
3 How old
4 How often
5 How deep
6 How long

45.5

2 How heavy is this box?
3 How old are you?
4 How much did you spend?
5 How often do you watch TV?
6 How far is it from New York to Los Angeles?

UNIT 46

46.1

2 How long does it take to get from Houston to Mexico City by car?
3 How long does it take to get from Tokyo to Kyoto by train?
4 How long does it take to get from JFK Airport to Manhattan by bus?

46.2

Example answers:

2 It takes . . . hours to fly from . . . to Australia.
3 It takes . . . years to become a doctor in . . . .
4 It takes . . . to walk from my home to the nearest supermarket.
5 It takes . . . to get from my house to the nearest airport.

46.3

2 How long did it take you to walk to the station?
3 How long did it take him/Tom to paint the bathroom?
4 How long did it take you to learn to ski?
5 How long did it take them to repair the car?

46.4

2 It took us 20 minutes to walk/get home.
3 It took me six months to learn to drive.
4 It took Mark/him three hours to drive/get to Houston.
5 It took Lisa/her a long time to find/get a job.
6 It took me . . . to . . .

UNIT 47

47.1

2 I don't know where she/Sue is.
3 I don't know how old it is.
4 I don't know when he'll / Matt will be here.
5 I don't know why he was angry.
6 I don't know how long she/Emily has lived here.

47.2

2 where she/Susan works
3 what he/Michael said
4 why he went home early
5 what time the meeting begins
6 how the accident happened

47.3

2 are you
3 they are
4 the museum is
5 do you want
6 elephants eat
7 it is

47.4

2 Do you know if/whether they are married?
3 Do you know if/whether Sue knows Bill?
4 Do you know if/whether Josh will be here tomorrow?
5 Do you know if/whether he passed his exam?

47.5

2 Do you know where Hannah is?
3 Do you know if/whether she is / she's working today?
4 Do you know what time she starts work?
5 Do you know if/whether the banks are open tomorrow?
6 Do you know where Sarah and Tom live?
7 Do you know if/whether they went to Megan's party?

47.6

Example answers:

2 Do you know what time the bus leaves?
3 Excuse me, can you tell me where the station is?
4 I don't know what I'm going to do tonight.
5 Do you know if there's a restaurant near here?
6 Do you know how much it costs to rent a car?

UNIT 48

48.1

2 She said (that) she was very busy.
3 She said (that) she couldn't go to the party.
4 He said (that) he had to go out.
5 He said (that) he was learning Russian.
6 She said (that) she didn't feel very well.
7 They said (that) they'd / they would be home late.
8 She said (that) she'd / she had never played soccer.
9 She said (that) she was going to buy a guitar.
10 They said (that) they didn't have a key.

48.2

2 She said (that) she wasn't hungry.
3 he said (that) he needed it.
4 she said (that) she didn't want to go.
5 She said (that) I could have it.
6 He said (that) he would send me a postcard. / . . . he'd send . . .
7 Jessica said (that) he had gone home. / . . . he'd gone home. *or* Jessica said he went home.
8 He said (that) he wanted to watch TV.
9 She said (that) she was going to the movies.

48.3

3 said	7 said
4 told	8 told
5 tell	9 tell
6 say	10 say

UNIT 49

49.1

3 call
4 call Dan
5 to call Dan
6 to call Dan
7 call Dan
8 to call Dan
9 call Dan
10 call Dan

49.2

3 get
4 going
5 watch
6 flying
7 listening
8 eat
9 waiting
10 wear
11 doing . . . staying

49.3

4 to go
5 rain
6 to leave
7 help
8 studying
9 to go
10 wearing
11 to stay
12 taking
13 to have
14 hear
15 go
16 listening
17 to walk
18 to know
19 borrow
20 take

irLanguage.com

UNIT 50

50.1

3 to see
4 to swim
5 cleaning
6 to ask
7 visiting
8 going
9 to be
10 waiting
11 to do
12 to speak
13 to go
14 crying / to cry
15 to work . . . talking

50.2

2 to help
3 to see
4 reading
5 to lose
6 to send
7 raining
8 to go
9 watching / to watch
10 to wait

50.3

2 going / to go to museums
3 to go
4 driving / to drive
5 to go (there)
6 traveling by train
7 walking

50.4

Example answers:

1 I enjoy cooking.
2 I don't like driving / to drive.
3 If it's a nice day tomorrow, I'd like to have a picnic by the lake.
4 When I'm on vacation, I like to do / doing very little.
5 I don't mind traveling alone, but I prefer to travel with somebody.
6 I wouldn't like to live in a big city.

UNIT 51

51.1

2 I want you to listen carefully.
3 I don't want you to be angry.
4 Do you want me to wait for you?

5 I don't want you to call me tonight.
6 I want you to meet Sarah.

51.2

2 A woman told me to turn left after the bridge.
3 I advised him to go to the doctor.
4 She asked me to help her.
5 I told him to come back in 10 minutes.
6 Andy let me use his phone.
7 I told her not to call before 8:00.
8 Anna's mother taught her to play the piano.

51.3

2 to repeat
3 wait
4 to arrive
5 to get
6 go
7 borrow
8 to tell
9 to make/get
10 think

UNIT 52

52.1

2–4
I went to a coffee shop to meet a friend.
I went to the drugstore to get some medicine.
I went to the supermarket to buy some food.

52.2

2 to read the newspaper
3 to open this door
4 to get some fresh air
5 to wake him up
6 to see who it was

52.3

Example answers:
2 I don't have time to talk to you now.
3 I called Ann to tell her about the party.
4 I'm going out to do some shopping.
5 I borrowed some money to buy a car.

52.4

2	to	7	to
3	to	8	to
4	for	9	for
5	to	10	for
6	for	11	to

52.5

2 for the movie to begin
3 for it to arrive
4 for you to tell me

UNIT 53

53.1

3 to
4 – *(no preposition)*
5 for
6 to
7 on . . . to
8 for
9 on
10 to
11 – *(no preposition)*
12 on
13 for
14 on

53.2

2 went fishing
3 goes swimming
4 going skiing
5 go shopping
6 went jogging/running

53.3

2 to college
3 shopping
4 to bed
5 home
6 skiing
7 riding
8 for a walk
9 on vacation . . . to Hawaii

UNIT 54

54.1

2 get your boots
3 get a doctor
4 get another one
5 gets the job
6 get some milk
7 get a ticket
8 gets a good salary
9 get a lot of rain
10 get a new computer

54.2

2 getting dark
3 getting married
4 getting ready
5 getting late

54.3

2 get wet
3 got married
4 gets angry
5 got lost
6 get old
7 got better

54.4

2 got to New York at 12:00.
3 I left the party at 11:15 and got home at midnight.
4 *(Example answer)* I left home at 8:30 and got to the airport at 10:00.

54.5

2 got off
3 got out of
4 got on

UNIT 55

55.1

2	do	7	do
3	make	8	make
4	made	9	making
5	did	10	do
6	do	11	doing

55.2

2 They're / They are doing (their) homework.
3 He's / He is doing the grocery shopping. *or* He's / He is grocery shopping. *or* He's / He is doing the shopping. *or* He's / He is shopping.
4 They're / They are doing (their) laundry.
5 She's / She is making a phone call.
6 He's / He is making the/his bed.
7 She's / She is doing/washing the dishes.
8 He's / He is making a (shopping) list.

9 They're / They are making a movie.
10 He's / He is taking a picture/ photo.

55.3

2	make	8	make
3	do	9	do
4	do	10	making
5	made	11	made
6	did	12	make . . . do
7	do		

UNIT 56

56.1

3 He doesn't have / hasn't got
4 Ben had
5 Do you have / Have you got
6 we didn't have
7 She doesn't have / hasn't got
8 Did you have

56.2

2 She's / She is having a cup of tea.
3 He's / He is having breakfast.
4 They're / They are having dinner.
5 They're / They are having fun.
6 They're / They are having an argument.

56.3

3 Have a good/great trip!
4 Did you have a nice/good weekend?
5 Did you have a nice/good vacation?
6 Have a great/good time! *or* Have fun!
7 Are you going to have a (birthday) party? *or* Are you having a (birthday) party?

56.4

2 have something to eat
3 had a glass of water
4 had a bad dream
5 had an accident
6 have a baby

UNIT 57

57.1

2	him	5	him
3	them	6	them
4	her	7	her

57.2

2 I . . . them
3 he . . . her
4 they . . . us
5 we . . . him
6 she . . . them
7 they . . . me
8 she . . . you

57.3

2 I like him.
3 I don't like it.
4 Do you like it?
5 I don't like her.
6 Do you like them?

57.4

2	him	8	them
3	them	9	me
4	they	10	her
5	us	11	them
6	it	12	he . . . it
7	She		

57.5

2 Can you give it to him?
3 Can you give them to her?
4 Can you give it to me?
5 Can you give it to them?
6 Can you give them to us?

UNIT 58

58.1

2 her hands
3 our hands
4 his hands
5 their hands
6 your hands

58.2

2 They live with their parents.
3 We live with our parents.
4 Sarah lives with her parents.
5 I live with my parents.
6 John lives with his parents.
7 Do you live with your parents?
8 Most children live with their parents.

58.3

2	their	6	their
3	his	7	her
4	his	8	their
5	her		

58.4

2	his	8	her
3	Their	9	their
4	our	10	my
5	her	11	Its
6	my	12	His . . . his
7	your		

58.5

2 my key
3 Her husband
4 your coat
5 their homework
6 his name
7 Our house

UNIT 59

59.1

2	mine	6	yours
3	ours	7	mine
4	hers	8	his
5	theirs		

59.2

2 yours
3 my . . . Mine
4 Yours . . . mine
5 her
6 My . . . hers
7 their
8 Ours

59.3

3 friend of hers
4 friends of ours
5 friend of mine
6 friend of his
7 friends of yours

59.4

2 Whose camera is this? It's hers.
3 Whose gloves are these? They're mine.
4 Whose hat is this? It's his.
5 Whose money is this? It's yours.
6 Whose bags are these? They're ours.

UNIT 60

60.1

2 Yes, I know **her**, but I can't remember **her name**.
3 Yes, I **know them**, but I **can't remember their** names.
4 Yes, I **know you**, but **I can't remember your name**.

60.2

2 He invited us to stay with **him** at his house.
3 They invited us to stay with **them at their** house.
4 I invited them to stay **with me at my** house.
5 She invited us to stay **with her at her** house.
6 Did you invite him **to stay with you at your** house?

60.3

2 I gave her my phone number, and she gave me **hers**.
3 He gave me his phone number, and I gave **him mine**.
4 We gave them **our** phone number, and they gave **us theirs**.
5 She gave him **her** phone number, and he gave **her his**.
6 You gave us **your** phone number, and we gave **you ours**.
7 They gave you **their** phone number, and you gave **them yours**.

60.4

2 them
3 him
4 our
5 yours
6 us
7 her
8 their
9 mine

UNIT 61

61.1

2 myself	6 himself
3 herself	7 yourself
4 themselves	8 yourselves
5 myself	

61.2

2 When I saw him, he **was by himself**.
3 Don't **go out by yourself**.
4 **I went to the movies by myself**.
5 My sister **lives by herself**.
6 Many people **live by themselves**.

61.3

2 They can't see each other.
3 They call each other a lot.
4 They don't know each other.
5 They're / They are sitting next to each other.
6 They gave each other presents / a present.

61.4

3 each other	7 each other
4 yourselves	8 each other
5 us	9 them
6 ourselves	10 themselves

UNIT 62

62.1

3 Blanca is **Pedro's** wife.
4 Alberto is Julia's **brother**.
5 Alberto is **Daniel's** uncle.
6 Julia is **Paul's** wife.
7 Blanca is Daniel's **grandmother**.
8 Julia is Alberto's **sister**.
9 Paul is **Julia's** husband.
10 Paul is Daniel's **father**.
11 Daniel is **Alberto's** nephew.

62.2

2 Andy's	5 Rachel's
3 Dave's	6 Alice's
4 Jane's	

62.3

3 *OK*
4 Simon's phone number
5 My brother's job
6 *OK*
7 *OK*
8 Paula's favorite color
9 your mother's birthday
10 My parents' house
11 *OK*
12 *OK*
13 Lauren's party
14 *OK*

UNIT 63

63.1

2 a	5 a	8 an
3 a	6 an	9 an
4 an	7 a	

63.2

2 a vegetable
3 a game
4 a tool
5 a mountain
6 a planet
7 a fruit
8 a river
9 a flower
10 a musical instrument

63.3

2 He's a sales clerk.
3 She's an architect.
4 He's a taxi driver.
5 He's an electrician.
6 She's a photographer.
7 She's a nurse.
8 I'm a/an . . .

63.4

2–8
Tom never wears a hat.
I can't ride a bike.
My brother is an artist.
Rebecca works in an office.
Jane wants to learn a foreign language.
Mike lives in an old house.
Tonight I'm going to a party.

UNIT 64

64.1

2 boats
3 women
4 cities
5 umbrellas
6 addresses
7 knives
8 sandwiches
9 families
10 feet
11 holidays
12 potatoes

64.2

2 teeth
3 people

4 children
5 fish
6 leaves

64.3

3 ... with a lot of beautiful **trees**.
4 ... with two **men**.
5 *OK*
6 ... three **children**.
7 Most of my **friends** are **students**.
8 He put on his **pajamas** ...
9 *OK*
10 Do you know many **people** ...
11 Where did you get **them**?
12 ... full of **tourists**.
13 *OK*
14 **These scissors aren't** ...

64.4

2 are
3 don't
4 watch
5 were
6 live
7 Do
8 are
9 them
10 some

UNIT 65

65.1

3 a pitcher
4 water
5 toothpaste
6 a toothbrush
7 an egg
8 money
9 a wallet
10 sand
11 a bucket
12 an envelope

65.2

3 ... **a** hat.
4 ... **a** job?
5 *OK*
6 ... **an** apple ...
7 ... **a** party ...
8 ... **a** wonderful thing.
9 ... **an** island.
10 ... **a** key.
11 *OK*
12 ... **a** good idea.
13 ... **a** car?
14 ... **a** cup of coffee?
15 *OK*
16 ... **an** umbrella

65.3

2 a piece of wood
3 a glass of water
4 a bar of soap
5 a cup of tea
6 a piece of paper
7 a bowl of soup
8 a loaf of bread
9 a jar of honey

UNIT 66

66.1

2 a newspaper/paper, some flowers / a bunch of flowers, and a pen.
3 some bananas, some eggs, and some bread / a loaf of bread.
4 some toothpaste / a tube of toothpaste, some soap / a bar of soap, and a comb.

66.2

2 Would you like some coffee? / ... a cup of coffee?
3 Would you like some cookies? / ... a cookie?
4 Would you like some bread? (*or* ... a piece of bread? / a slice of bread?)
5 Would you like a sandwich?
6 Would you like some cake? / (*or* ... a piece of cake? / slice of cake?)

66.3

2 some ... some
3 some
4 a ... some
5 an ... some
6 a ... a ... some
7 some
8 some
9 some ... a

66.4

2 eyes
3 hair
4 information
5 chairs
6 furniture
7 job
8 wonderful weather

UNIT 67

67.1

3 a
4 the
5 an
6 the ... the
7 a ... a
8 a ... a
9 ... **a** student ... **a** journalist ... **an** apartment near **the** college ... **The** apartment is ...
10 ... two children, **a** boy and **a** girl. **The** boy is seven years old, and **the** girl is three ... in **a** factory ... doesn't have **a** job ...

67.2

2 **the** airport
3 **a** cup
4 **a** nice picture
5 **the** dictionary
6 **the** floor

67.3

2 ... send me **a** postcard.
3 What is **the** name of ...
4 ... **a** very big country.
5 What is **the** largest ...
6 ... **the** color of **the** carpet.
7 ... **a** headache.
8 ... **an** old house near **the** station.
9 ... **the** name of **the** director of **the** movie ...

UNIT 68

68.1

3 ... **the** second floor.
4 ... **the** moon?
5 ... **the** best hotel in this town?
6 *OK*
7 ... **the** football stadium?
8 ... **the** end of May.
9 *OK*
10 ... **the** first time I met her.
11 *OK*
12 ... from **the** Internet.
13 *OK*
14 ... on **the** top shelf on **the** right.
15 ... in **the** country about 10 miles from **the** nearest town.

68.2
2 the same time
3 the same age
4 the same color
5 the same problem

68.3
2 **the** guitar
3 breakfast
4 TV
5 **the** ocean
6 **the** bottom

68.4
2 **the** name
3 **The** sky
4 TV
5 **The** police
6 **the** capital
7 lunch
8 **the** middle

UNIT 69

69.1
2 **the** movies
3 jail/prison
4 **the** airport
5 home
6 **the** hospital

69.2
3 school
4 **the** station
5 home
6 bed
7 **the** post office

69.3
2 **the** movies
3 go to bed
4 go to jail/prison
5 go to **the** dentist
6 go to college
7 go to **the** hospital / are taken to **the** hospital

69.4
3 **the** doctor
4 *OK*
5 *OK*
6 *OK*
7 **the** bank
8 *OK*
9 *OK*
10 *OK*
11 **the** station
12 *OK*
13 **the** hospital
14 *OK*
15 **the** theater

UNIT 70

70.1
Example answers:
2 I don't like dogs.
3 I hate museums.
4 I love big cities.
5 I don't like tennis.
6 I love chocolate.
7 I don't like computer games.
8 I hate parties.

70.2
Example answers:
2 I'm not interested in politics.
3 I know a lot about sports.
4 I don't know much about art.
5 I don't know anything about astronomy.
6 I know a little about economics.

70.3
3 friends
4 parties
5 **The** stores
6 **the** milk
7 milk
8 basketball
9 buildings
10 **The** water
11 cold water
12 **the** salt
13 **the** people
14 Vegetables
15 **The** houses
16 **the** words
17 pictures
18 **the** pictures
19 English . . . international business
20 Money . . . happiness

UNIT 71

71.1
3 Sweden
4 **The** Amazon
5 Asia
6 **The** Pacific
7 **The** Rhine
8 Kenya
9 **The** United States
10 **The** Andes
11 Bangkok
12 **The** Alps
13 **The** Red Sea
14 Jamaica
15 **The** Bahamas

71.2
3 *OK*
4 **the** Philippines
5 **the** south of France
6 **the** Washington Monument
7 *OK*
8 **the** Museum of Art
9 *OK*
10 Belgium is smaller than **the** Netherlands.
11 **the** Mississippi . . . **the** Nile
12 **the** National Gallery
13 **the** Park Hotel near Central Park
14 *OK*
15 **The** Rocky Mountains are in North America.
16 *OK*
17 **the** United Kingdom
18 **the** west of Ireland
19 **the** University of Michigan
20 **The** Panama Canal joins **the** Atlantic Ocean and **the** Pacific Ocean.

UNIT 72

72.1
2 that house
3 these postcards
4 those birds
5 this seat
6 These dishes

72.2
2 Is that your umbrella?
3 Is this your book?
4 Are those your books?
5 Is that your bicycle/bike?
6 Are these your keys?
7 Are those your keys?
8 Is this your watch?
9 Are those your glasses?
10 Are these your gloves?

72.3
2 that's
3 This is
4 That's
5 that
6 this is
7 That's
8 that's

UNIT 73

73.1
2 I don't need one
3 I'm going to get one
4 I don't have one
5 I just had one
6 there's one on First Avenue

73.2
2 a new one
3 a better one
4 an old one
5 a big one
6 a different one

73.3
2 Which ones?
The green ones.
3 Which one?
The one with a/the red door.
4 Which ones?
The ones on the top shelf.
5 Which one?
The black one.
6 Which one?
The one on the wall.
7 Which one?
The tall one with long hair.
8 Which ones?
The yellow ones.
9 Which one?
The one with a/the mustache and glasses.
10 Which ones?
The ones I took at the party last week.

UNIT 74

74.1
2 some
3 any
4 any
5 any
6 some
7 any
8 some
9 some
10 any . . . any
11 some . . . any
12 some

74.2
2 some questions
3 any pictures
4 any foreign languages
5 some friends
6 some milk
7 any batteries
8 some fresh air
9 some fruit
10 any help

74.3
3 I have some
4 I don't have any
5 I didn't buy any
6 I bought some
7 I didn't drink any

74.4
2 something
3 anything
4 anything
5 Somebody/Someone
6 anything
7 anybody/anyone
8 something
9 anything
10 anybody/anyone

UNIT 75

75.1
2 There are no stores near here.
3 Sofia has no free time.
4 There is no light in this room.
6 There isn't any milk in the fridge.
7 There aren't any buses today.
8 Tom doesn't have any brothers or sisters. / Tom hasn't got any brothers or sisters.

75.2
2 any	8 no
3 any	9 any
4 no	10 no
5 any	11 None
6 no	12 any
7 any	

75.3
2 no money
3 any questions
4 no friends
5 no difference
6 any furniture
7 no idea
8 any heating
9 no line

75.4
Example answers:
2 Three.
3 Two cups.
4 None.
5 None.

UNIT 76

76.1
2 There's nobody in the office.
3 I have nothing to do.
4 There's nothing on TV.
5 There was no one at home.
6 We found nothing.

76.2
2 There wasn't anybody on the bus.
3 I don't have anything to read.
4 I don't have anyone to help me.
5 She didn't hear anything.
6 We don't have anything for dinner.

76.3
3a Nothing.
4a Nobody. / No one.
5a Nobody. / No one.
6a Nothing.
7a Nothing.
8a Nobody. / No one.
3b I don't want anything.
4b I didn't meet anybody/anyone. *or* met nobody / no one.
5b Nobody / No one knows the answer.
6b I didn't buy anything. *or* I bought nothing.
7b Nothing happened.
8b Nobody / No one was late.

76.4

3 anything
4 Nobody / No one
5 Nothing
6 anything
7 anybody / anyone
8 nothing
9 anything
10 anything
11 nobody / no one
12 anything
13 Nothing
14 Nobody / No one . . . anybody/ anyone

UNIT 77

77.1

2 something
3 somewhere
4 somebody/someone

77.2

2a Nowhere.
3a Nothing.
4a Nobody. / No one.
2b I'm not going anywhere.
3b I don't want anything.
4b I'm not looking for anybody/ anyone.

77.3

3 anything
4 anything
5 somebody/someone
6 something
7 anybody/anyone . . . nobody / no one
8 anything
9 Nobody / No one
10 anybody/anyone
11 Nothing
12 anywhere
13 somewhere
14 anything
15 anybody/anyone

77.4

2 anything to eat
3 nothing to do
4 anywhere to sit
5 something to drink *or* anything to drink (*See Unit 74B for* **some** *and* **any** *in questions.*)
6 nowhere to park
7 something to read
8 somewhere to stay

UNIT 78

78.1

2 Every day
3 every time
4 Every room
5 every word

78.2

2 every day
3 all day
4 every day
5 all day
6 all day
7 every day

78.3

2 every	6 all
3 all	7 every
4 all	8 all
5 Every	9 every

78.4

2 everything
3 Everybody/Everyone
4 everything
5 everywhere
6 Everybody/Everyone
7 everywhere
8 Everything

78.5

2 is
3 has
4 likes
5 has *or* is
6 was
7 makes
8 Is . . . Does

UNIT 79

79.1

3 Some
4 Most of
5 Most
6 any of
7 all *or* all of
8 None of
9 any of
10 Most
11 most of
12 Some
13 All *or* All of
14 some of
15 most of

79.2

2 All of them.
3 Some of them.
4 None of them.
5 Most of them.
6 None of it.

79.3

3 Some people . . .
4 Some of **the** questions . . . *or* Some questions . . .
5 *OK*
6 All insects . . .
7 *OK* (*or* . . . all **of** these books)
8 Most of **the** students . . . *or* Most students . . .
9 *OK*
10 . . . most of **the** night

UNIT 80

80.1

3 Both	9 Neither
4 Neither	10 either of
5 Neither	11 Both
6 both	12 neither of
7 Either	13 Both
8 neither of	14 either of

80.2

2 Both windows are open.
3 Neither man is wearing a hat. *or* Neither of them is wearing . . .
4 Both men have (got) beards. *or* Both of them have . . .
5 Both buses go to the airport. *or* . . . are going to the airport.
6 Neither answer / Neither of the answers is right.

80.3

3 Both of them are students.
4 Neither of them has a car. / . . . has got a car.
5 Both of them live in Boston.
6 Both of them like to cook.
7 Neither of them can play the piano.
8 Both of them eat seafood
9 Neither of them is interested in sports.

UNIT 81

81.1

2 many
3 much
4 many
5 many
6 much
7 much
8 many
9 How many
10 How much
11 How much
12 How many

81.2

2 much time
3 many countries
4 many people
5 much luggage
6 many times

81.3

2 a lot of interesting things
3 a lot of accidents
4 a lot of fun
5 a lot of traffic

81.4

3 a lot of snow
4 *OK*
5 a lot of money
6 *OK*
7 *OK*
8 a lot

81.5

3 She plays tennis a lot.
4 doesn't use his car much. (*or* . . . a lot.)
5 He doesn't go out much. (*or* . . . a lot.)
6 She travels a lot.

UNIT 82

82.1

2 a few
3 a little
4 a few
5 a little
6 a few

82.2

2 a little milk
3 A few days
4 a little Russian
5 a few friends
6 a few times
7 a few chairs
8 a little fresh air

82.3

2 very little coffee
3 very little rain
4 very few hotels
5 very little time
6 Very few people
7 very little work

82.4

2 A few
3 a little
4 little
5 few
6 a little
7 few

82.5

2 . . . **a** little luck
3 . . . **a** few things
4 *OK*
5 . . . **a** few questions
6 . . . **few** people
7 *OK*

UNIT 83

83.1

2 I like that green jacket.
3 Do you like classical music?
4 I had a wonderful trip.
5 We went to a Japanese restaurant.

83.2

2 dark clouds
3 long vacation
4 hot water
5 fresh air
6 sharp knife
7 dangerous job

83.3

2 It looks new.
3 I feel sick. *or* I feel terrible.
4 You look surprised.
5 They smell nice.
6 It tastes terrible.

83.4

2 It doesn't look new.
3 You don't sound American.
4 I don't feel cold.
5 They don't look heavy.
6 Maybe, but it doesn't taste good.

UNIT 84

84.1

2 badly
3 quietly
4 angrily
5 fast
6 dangerously

84.2

2 work hard
3 sleep well
4 win easily
5 Think carefully
6 know well . . .
7 explain clearly . . .
8 Come quickly

84.3

2 angry
3 slowly
4 slow
5 careful
6 hard
7 suddenly
8 quiet
9 badly
10 nice (*See Unit 83C.*)
11 quickly

84.4

2 well
3 good
4 well
5 well
6 good . . . good

UNIT 85

85.1

2 bigger
3 slower
4 more expensive
5 higher
6 more dangerous

85.2

2 stronger
3 happier
4 more modern
5 more important
6 better
7 larger
8 more serious
9 prettier
10 more crowded

85.3

2 hotter/warmer
3 more expensive
4 worse
5 farther
6 more difficult *or* harder

85.4

3 taller
4 harder
5 more comfortable
6 better
7 nicer
8 heavier
9 more interested
10 warmer
11 better
12 bigger
13 more beautiful
14 sharper
15 more polite
16 worse

UNIT 86

86.1

3 Liz is taller than Ben.
4 Liz starts work earlier than Ben.
5 Ben works harder than Liz.
6 Ben has more money than Liz. / Ben has got more money . . .
7 Kate is a better driver than Ben.
8 Ben is more patient than Liz.
9 Ben is a better dancer than Liz.
10 Liz is more intelligent than Ben.
11 Liz speaks Spanish better than Ben. / Liz speaks better Spanish than Ben. / Liz's Spanish is better than Ben's.
12 Ben goes to the movies more than Liz. / . . . more often than Liz.

86.2

2 You're older than her. / . . . than she is.
3 You work harder than me. / . . . than I do.
4 You watch TV more than him. / . . . than he does.
5 You're / You are a better cook than me. / . . . than I am. *or* . . . cook better than me. / . . . than I do.
6 You know more people than us. / . . . than we do.
7 You have more money than them. / . . . than they do.
8 You can run faster than me. / . . . than I can.
9 You've/have been here longer than her. / . . . than she has.
10 You got up earlier than them. / . . . than they did.
11 You were more surprised than him. / . . . than he was.

86.3

2 Jack's mother is much younger than his father.
3 My camera cost a little more than yours. / . . . than your camera. *or* My camera was a little more expensive than . . .
4 I feel much better today than yesterday. / . . . than I did yesterday. / . . . than I felt yesterday.
5 It's a little warmer today than yesterday. / . . . than it was yesterday.
6 Sarah is a much better volleyball player than me. / . . . than I am. *or* Sarah plays volleyball much better than me. / . . . than I do.

UNIT 87

87.1

2 A is longer than B, but not as long as C.
3 C is heavier than A, but not as heavy as B.
4 A is older than C, but not as old as B.
5 B has more money than C, but not as much as A. *or* . . . but less (money) than A.
6 C works harder than A, but not as hard as B.

87.2

2 Your room isn't as big as mine. / . . . as my room.
3 I didn't get up as early as you. / . . . as you did.
4 They didn't play as well as us. / . . . as we did.
5 You haven't been here as long as me. / . . . as I have.
6 He isn't as nervous as her. / . . . as she is.

87.3

2 as	6 than
3 than	7 as
4 than	8 than
5 as	

87.4

2 Julia lives on the same street as Laura.
3 Julia got up at the same time as Andy.
4 Andy's car is the same color as Laura's.

UNIT 88

88.1

2 C is longer than A.
D is the longest.
B is the shortest.
3 D is younger than C.
C is the oldest.
B is the youngest.
4 D is more expensive than A.
C is the most expensive.
A is the cheapest.
5 A is better than C.
A is the best.
D is the worst.

88.2

2 the happiest day
3 the best movie
4 the most popular singer
5 the worst mistake
6 the prettiest city
7 the coldest day
8 the most boring person

88.3

2 is the highest mountain in the world.

3–6
Brazil is the largest country in South America.
Alaska is the largest state in the United States.
The Nile is the longest river in Africa. / . . . in the world.
Jupiter is the largest planet in the solar system.

UNIT 89

89.1

2 enough chairs
3 enough paint
4 enough wind

89.2

2 The car isn't big enough.
3 His legs aren't long enough.
4 He isn't strong enough.

89.3
3 old enough
4 enough time
5 big enough
6 eat enough
7 enough space
8 tired enough
9 practice enough

89.4
2 sharp enough to cut
3 warm enough to go
4 enough bread to make
5 well enough to win
6 enough time to read

UNIT 90

90.1
2 too heavy
3 too low
4 too fast
5 too big
6 too crowded

90.2
3 enough
4 too many
5 too
6 enough
7 too much
8 enough
9 too
10 too many
11 too much

90.3
3 It's too far.
4 It's / It is too expensive.
5 It's not / isn't big enough.
6 It was too difficult.
7 It's not / isn't good enough.
8 I'm / I am too busy.
9 It was too long.

90.4
2 It's too early to go to bed.
3 They're too young to get married.
4 It's too dangerous to go out at night.
5 It's too late to call Sue (now).
6 I was too surprised to say anything.

UNIT 91

91.1
3 I like this picture very much.
4 Tom started his new job last week.
5 *OK*
6 Jenn bought a present for her friend. *or* Jenn bought her friend a present.
7 I drink three cups of coffee every day.
8 *OK*
9 I borrowed 50 dollars from my brother.

91.2
2 I bought a new computer last week.
3 Matt finished his work quickly.
4 Emily doesn't speak French very well.
5 I did a lot of shopping yesterday.
6 Do you know New York well?
7 We enjoyed the party very much.
8 I explained the problem carefully.
9 We met some friends at the airport.
10 Did you buy that jacket in Canada?
11 We do the same thing every day.
12 I don't like football very much.

91.3
2 I arrived at the hotel early.
3 Julia goes to Puerto Rico every year.
4 We have lived here since 2012.
5 Sue was born in Florida in 1990.
6 Mike didn't go to work yesterday.
7 Samantha went to a wedding last weekend.
8 I had my breakfast in bed this morning.
9 Jessica is going to college in September.
10 I saw a beautiful bird in the yard this morning.
11 My parents have been to Tokyo many times.
12 I left my umbrella in the restaurant last night.
13 Are you going to the movies tomorrow night?
14 I took the children to school this morning.

UNIT 92

92.1
2 He always gets up early.
3 He's / He is never late for work.
4 He sometimes gets angry.
5 He rarely goes swimming.
6 He's / He is usually at home in the evenings.

92.2
2 Jessica is always polite.
3 I usually finish work at 5:00.
4 Sarah just started a new job.
5 I rarely go to bed before midnight.
6 The bus isn't usually late.
7 I don't often eat fish.
8 I will never forget what you said.
9 Have you ever lost your passport?
10 Do you still work in the same place?
11 They always stay at the same hotel.
12 Liz doesn't usually work on Saturdays.
13 Is Megan already here?
14 What do you usually have for breakfast?
15 I can never remember his name.

92.3
2 Yes, and I also speak French.
3 Yes, and I'm also hungry.
4 Yes, and I've also been to Guatemala.
5 Yes, and I also bought some books.

92.4
1 They both play soccer. They're / They are both students. They've both got / They both have cars.
2 They're / They are all married. They were all born in Colombia. They all live in Miami.

UNIT 93

93.1
2 Do you still have an old car?
3 Are you still a student?
4 Are you still studying Japanese?
5 Do you still go to the movies a lot?
6 Do you still want to be a teacher?

93.2

2 He was looking for a job.
He's / He is still looking (for a job). He hasn't found a job / He didn't find a job yet.

3 She was asleep.
She's / She is still asleep.
She hasn't woken up yet. / She didn't wake up yet. / She isn't awake yet. *or* She hasn't gotten up yet. / She didn't get up yet. / She isn't up yet.

4 They were having dinner. / ... were eating (dinner).
They're / They are still having dinner. / ... still eating (dinner).
They haven't finished (dinner) yet. / They haven't finished eating (dinner) yet. / They didn't finish (dinner) yet. / They didn't finish eating (dinner) yet.

93.3

2 Is Jessica here yet? *or* Has Jessica arrived/come yet? *or* Did Jessica arrive/come yet?

3 Have you gotten the results of your blood test yet? / Did you get ... / Have you received the ... / Did you receive ... / Do you have the ...

4 Have you decided where to go (for vacation) yet? *or* Did you decide ... *or* Do you know where you're going (for vacation) yet?

93.4

3 She's / She has already gone/left *or* already left.

4 I already have one. *or* I've / I have already got one.

5 I've / I have already paid it. *or* already paid it.

6 No, he already knows.

UNIT 94

94.1

2 He gave it to Gary.
3 He gave them to Sarah.
4 He gave it to his sister.
5 He gave them to Robert.
6 He gave it to a neighbor.

94.2

2 I gave Joanna a plant.
3 I gave Richard a tie.
4 I gave Emma some chocolates. / ... a box of chocolates.
5 I gave Rachel some flowers. / ... a bouquet of flowers.
6 I gave Kevin a wallet.

94.3

2 Can you lend me an umbrella?
3 Can you give me your address?
4 Can you lend me 20 dollars?
5 Can you send me some more information?
6 Can you show me the letter?

94.4

2 lend you some money
3 send the bill to me
4 buy you a present
5 pass me the sugar
6 give it to her
7 showed the police officer my driver's license

UNIT 95

95.1

3–7

I went to the window and (I) looked out.
I wanted to call you, but I didn't have your number.
I jumped into the river and (I) swam to the other side.
I usually drive to work, but I took the bus this morning.
Do you want me to come with you, or should I wait here?

95.2

Example answers:

2 because it was raining. / because the weather was bad.
3 but it was closed.
4 so he didn't eat anything. / so he didn't want anything to eat.
5 because there was a lot of traffic. / because the traffic was bad.
6 goodbye, got into her car, and drove off/away.

95.3

Example answers:

3 I went to the movies, but the movie wasn't very good.
4 I went to a coffee shop and met some friends of mine.
5 There was a movie on television, so I watched it.
6 I got up in the middle of the night because I couldn't sleep.

UNIT 96

96.1

2 When I'm tired, I like to watch TV.
3 When I knocked on the door, there was no answer.
4 When I go on vacation, I always go to the same place.
5 When the program ended, I turned off the TV.
6 When I got to the hotel, there were no rooms.

96.2

2 when they heard the news.
3 they went to live in France.
4 while they were away.
5 before they came here
6 somebody broke into the house.
7 they didn't believe me.

96.3

2 I finish
3 it's
4 I'll be ... she leaves
5 stops
6 We'll come ... we're
7 I come ... I'll bring
8 I'm
9 it gets
10 I'll tell ... I'm

96.4

Example answers:

2 you finish your work
3 I'm going to buy a motorcycle
4 you get ready
5 I won't have much free time
6 I come back

UNIT 97

97.1

2 If you pass the driving test, you'll get your license.
3 If you fail the driving test, you can take it again.
4 If you don't want this magazine, I'll throw it away.
5 If you want those pictures, you can have them.
6 If you're busy now, we can talk later.
7 If you're hungry, we can have lunch now.
8 If you need money, I can lend you some.

97.2

2 I give
3 is
4 I'll call
5 I'll be . . . get
6 Will you go . . . they invite

97.3

Example answers:

3 you're busy.
4 you'll feel better in the morning.
5 you're not watching it.
6 she doesn't practice.
7 I'll go and see Chris.
8 the weather is good.
9 it rains today.

97.4

2 When
3 If
4 If
5 if
6 When
7 if
8 when . . . if

UNIT 98

98.1

3 wanted
4 had
5 were/was
6 didn't enjoy
7 could
8 tried
9 didn't have

98.2

3 I'd go / I would go
4 she knew
5 we had
6 you won
7 I wouldn't / would not stay
8 we lived
9 It would be
10 the salary was/were
11 I wouldn't / would not know
12 would you change

98.3

2 I'd watch it / I would watch it
3 we had some pictures on the wall
4 the air would be cleaner
5 every day was/were the same
6 I'd be bored / I would be bored
7 we had a bigger house / we bought a bigger house
8 we would/could buy a bigger house

98.4

Example answers:

2 If I could go anywhere in the world, I'd go to Antarctica.
3 I wouldn't be very happy if I didn't have any friends.
4 I'd buy a house if I had enough money.
5 If I saw an accident in the street, I'd try and help.
6 The world would be a better place if there were no guns.

UNIT 99

99.1

2 A butcher is a person who sells meat.
3 A musician is a person who plays a musical instrument.
4 A patient is a person who is sick in the hospital.
5 A dentist is a person who takes care of your teeth.
6 A fool is a person who does stupid things.
7 A genius is a person who is very intelligent.
8 A liar is a person who doesn't tell the truth.

99.2

2 The woman who opened the door was wearing a yellow dress.
3 Most of the students who took the test passed (it).
4 The police officer who stopped our car wasn't very friendly.

99.3

2 who
3 which
4 which
5 who
6 which
7 who
8 who
9 which

that *is also correct in all these sentences.*

99.4

3 . . . a machine that/which makes coffee.
4 *OK* (which *is also correct*)
5 . . . people who/that never stop talking.
6 *OK* (who *is also correct*)
7 *OK* (that *is also correct*)
8 . . . the sentences that/which are wrong.
9 . . . a car that/which cost $60,000.

UNIT 100

100.1

2 I lost the pen you gave me.
3 I like the jacket Sue is wearing.
4 Where are the flowers I gave you?
5 I didn't believe the story he told us.
6 How much were the oranges you bought?

100.2

2 The meal you cooked was excellent.
3 The shoes I'm wearing aren't very comfortable.
4 The people we invited to dinner didn't come.

100.3

2 Who are the people you were talking to?

3 Did you find the keys you were looking for?
4 Where is the party you're going to?
5 What's the name of the movie you were talking about?
6 What's that music you're listening to?
7 Did you get the job you applied for?

100.4
2 What's the name of the restaurant where you had dinner?
3 How big is the town where you live?
4 Where exactly is the hospital where you work?

UNIT 101

101.1

2 at	7 at
3 in	8 in
4 at	9 at
5 in	10 in . . . at
6 in	

101.2

3 at	11 at
4 on	12 in
5 in	13 on
6 in	14 on
7 on	15 at
8 on	16 at
9 at	17 on
10 on	18 in

101.3

3 B	8 B
4 A	9 both
5 both	10 both
6 A	11 B
7 B	12 both

101.4
2 I'll call you in three days.
3 My exam is in two weeks. / . . . in 14 days.
4 Tom will be here in half an hour. / . . . in 30 minutes.

101.5
3 in
4 – *(already complete)*
5 – *(already complete)*
6 in
7 on
8 – *(already complete)*
9 – *(already complete)*
10 – *(already complete)*
11 in
12 at

UNIT 102

102.1
2 Alex lived in Canada **until** 2013.
3 Alex has lived in Japan **since** 2013.
4 Megan lived in South Korea **until** 2015.
5 Megan has lived in Australia **since** 2015.
6 Beth worked in a restaurant **from** 2014 **to** 2016.
7 Beth has worked in a hotel **since** 2016.
8 Adam was a teacher **from** 2006 to 2012.
9 Adam has been a journalist **since** 2012.
11 Alex has lived in Japan for . . . years.
12 Megan has lived in Australia for . . . years.
13 Beth worked in a restaurant for two years.
14 Beth has worked in a hotel for . . . years.
15 Adam was a teacher for six years.
16 Adam has been a journalist for . . . years.

102.2

2 until	9 since
3 for	10 until
4 since	11 for
5 Until	12 until
6 for	13 Since
7 for	14 for
8 until	

UNIT 103

103.1
2 after lunch
3 before the end
4 during the course
5 before they went to Mexico
6 during the night
7 while you're waiting
8 after the concert

103.2
3 while
4 for
5 while
6 during
7 while
8 for
9 during
10 while

103.3
2 eating
3 answering
4 taking
5 finishing/doing
6 going/traveling

103.4
2 John worked in a bookstore for two years after finishing high school.
3 Before going to sleep, I read for a few minutes.
4 After walking for three hours, we were very tired.
5 Let's have a cup of coffee before going out.

UNIT 104

104.1
2 In the box.
3 On the box.
4 On the wall.
5 At the bus stop.
6 In the field.
7 On the balcony.
8 In the pool.
9 At the window.
10 On the ceiling.
11 On the table.
12 At the table.

104.2
2 in
3 on
4 in
5 on
6 at
7 in
8 in
9 at
10 at

11 in
12 at
13 on
14 at
15 on the wall . . . in the living room

UNIT 105

105.1

2 At the airport.
3 In bed.
4 On a ship.
5 In the sky.
6 At a party.
7 At the doctor's.
8 On the second floor.
9 At work.
10 On a plane.
11 In a taxi.
12 At a wedding.

105.2

2	in	10	in
3	in	11	on
4	at	12	on
5	on	13	at
6	in	14	in
7	in	15	on
8	at	16	at
9	in		

UNIT 106

106.1

2	to	6	to
3	in	7	to
4	to	8	in
5	in		

106.2

3 to
4 to
5 (at) home . . . to work
6 at
7 – *(already complete)*
8 to
9 at
10 at a restaurant . . . to the hotel

106.3

2 to
3 to
4 in
5 to
6 to
7 at
8 to
9 to
10 at
11 at
12 to Maria's house . . . (at) home
13 – *(already complete)*
14 meet at the party . . . go to the party

106.4

1 to
2 – *(already complete)*
3 at
4 in
5 to
6 – *(already complete)*

106.5

Example answers:

2 Yesterday I went to work.
3 At 11:00 yesterday morning I was at work.
4 One day I'd like to go to Alaska.
5 I don't like going to parties.
6 At 9:00 last night I was at a friend's house.

UNIT 107

107.1

2 next to / by
3 in front of
4 between
5 next to / by
6 in front of
7 behind
8 on the
9 in the

107.2

2 behind
3 above
4 in front of
5 on
6 by / next to
7 below / under
8 above
9 under
10 by / next to
11 across from
12 on

107.3

2 The fountain is in front of the theater.
3 The bank/bookstore is across from the theater. *or* Tony's office is across from the theater. *or* The theater is across from . . .
4 The bank/supermarket is next to the bookstore. *or* The bookstore is next to the . . .
5 Tony's office is above the bookstore.
6 The bookstore is between the bank and the supermarket.

UNIT 108

108.1

2 Go under the bridge.
3 Go up the hill.
4 Go down the steps.
5 Go along this street.
6 Go into the hotel.
7 Go past the hotel.
8 Go out of the hotel.
9 Go over the bridge.
10 Go through the park.

108.2

2 off
3 over
4 out of
5 across
6 around
7 through
8 on
9 around
10 into . . . through

108.3

1 out of
2 around
3 in
4 from . . . to
5 around
6 on/over
7 over
8 from

UNIT 109

109.1

2 on time
3 on vacation
4 on the phone
5 on TV

109.2

2 by
3 with
4 about
5 on
6 by
7 at
8 on
9 with
10 **about** grammar ... **by** Vera P. Bull

109.3

1 with
2 without
3 by
4 about
5 at
6 by
7 on
8 with
9 at
10 by
11 about
12 by
13 on
14 with
15 by
16 by

UNIT 110

110.1

2 in
3 to
4 at
5 with
6 of

110.2

2 at
3 to
4 about
5 of
6 of
7 from/than
8 in
9 for
10 about
11 of
12 at

110.3

2 interested in going
3 good at getting
4 fed up with waiting
5 sorry for/about waking
6 Thank you for waiting.

110.4

2 Sue walked past me without looking at me.
3 Don't do anything without asking me first.
4 I went out without locking the door.

110.5

Example answers:

2 I'm scared of the dark.
3 I'm not very good at drawing.
4 I'm not interested in cars.
5 I'm fed up with living here.

UNIT 111

111.1

2 to
3 for
4 to
5 at
6 for

111.2

2 to
3 of
4 to
5 for
6 for
7 of/about
8 for
9 on
10 to
11 at
12 for
13 to
14 – *(already complete)*
15 to
16 on
17 – *(already complete)*
18 of/about
19 at
20 of
21 for
22 – *(already complete)*

111.3

Example answers:

3 It depends on the program.
4 It depends (on) what it is.
5 It depends on the weather.
6 It depends (on) how much you want.

UNIT 112

112.1

2 went in
3 looked up
4 rode off/away
5 turned around
6 got off
7 sat down
8 got out

112.2

2 away
3 around
4 out ... back
5 down
6 around
7 back
8 in
9 up
10 away ... back

112.3

2 Hold on
3 slowed down
4 takes off
5 get along
6 speak up
7 breaks down
8 fall over / fall down
9 work out
10 gave up
11 went off

UNIT 113

113.1

2 She took off her hat. *or* She took her hat off.
3 He put down his bag. *or* He put his bag down.
4 She picked up the magazine. *or* She picked the magazine up.
5 He put on his sunglasses. *or* He put his sunglasses on.
6 She turned off the faucet. *or* She turned the faucet off.

113.2

2 He put his jacket on. He put it on.
3 She took off her glasses. She took them off.
4 I picked the phone up. I picked it up.
5 They gave the key back. They gave it back.
6 We turned off the lights. We turned them off.

113.3

2 take it back
3 picked them up
4 turned it off
5 bring them back

113.4

3 knocked over
4 look it up
5 throw them away
6 tried on
7 showed me around
8 gave it up *or* gave up
9 fill it out
10 put your cigarette out

Answer Key to Additional Exercises
(see page 238)

1

3 Kate is a doctor.
4 The children are asleep.
5 Gary isn't hungry.
6 The books aren't on the table.
7 The hotel is near the station.
8 The bus isn't full.

2

3 she's / she is
4 Where are
5 Is he
6 It's / It is
7 I'm / I am *or* No, I'm not. I'm a student.
8 What color is
9 Is it
10 Are you
11 How much are they?

3

3 He's / He is taking a shower.
4 Are the children playing?
5 Is it raining?
6 They're / They are coming now.
7 Why are you standing here? I'm / I am waiting for somebody.

4

4 Sam doesn't want
5 Do you want
6 Does Helen live
7 Sarah knows
8 I don't travel
9 do you usually get up
10 They don't go out
11 Tom always leaves
12 does Julia do . . . She works

5

3 She's / She is a student.
4 She doesn't have a car. *or* She hasn't got a car.
5 She goes out a lot.
6 She has a lot of friends. *or* She's got / She has got a lot of friends.
7 She doesn't like Houston.
8 She likes to dance.
9 She isn't / She's not interested in sports.

6

1 Are you married?
Where do you live?
Do you have any children? *or*
Have you got any children?
How old is she?
2 How old are you?
What do you do? / Where do you work? / What's your job?
Do you like/enjoy it?
Do you have a car? *or* Have you got a car?
Do you (usually) go to work by car?
3 What's his name?
What does he do? / What's his job?
Does he live/work in New York?

7

4 Liz is 32 years old.
5 I have / I've got two sisters.
6 We often watch TV at night.
7 Jane never wears a hat.
8 My car has a flat tire. *or* My car has got a flat tire.
9 These flowers are beautiful.
10 Mary speaks German very well.

8

3 are you cooking
4 plays
5 I'm leaving
6 It's raining
7 I don't watch
8 we're looking
9 do you pronounce

9

2 we go
3 shining
4 are you going
5 do you take
6 She writes
7 I never read
8 They're watching
9 She's talking
10 do you usually have
11 He's visiting
12 I don't drink

10

2 went
3 found
4 was
5 had/took
6 told
7 gave
8 were
9 thought
10 invited/asked

11

3 He was good at sports.
4 He played soccer.
5 He didn't work hard at school.
6 He had a lot of friends.
7 He didn't have a bike.
8 He wasn't a quiet child

12

3 How long were you there? / How long did you stay there?
4 Did you like/enjoy the Bahamas?
5 Where did you stay?
6 Was the weather good?
7 When did you get/come back?

13

3 I forgot
4 did you get
5 I didn't speak
6 Did you have
7 he didn't go
8 she arrived
9 did Robert live
10 The meal didn't cost

14

2 were working
3 opened
4 rang . . . was cooking
5 heard . . . looked
6 was looking . . . happened
7 wasn't reading . . . was watching
8 didn't read
9 finished . . . paid . . . left
10 saw . . . was walking . . . was waiting

irLanguage.com

15

3 is playing
4 gave
5 doesn't like
6 did your parents go
7 saw ... was driving
8 Do you watch
9 were you doing
10 goes
11 'm/am trying
12 didn't sleep

16

2 I haven't read it. *or* I've never read it.
3 Have you seen her?
4 I've/I have had enough.
5 Have you (ever) been to Chile?
6 How long have you lived here? *or* ... have you been living here?
7 we've / we have known each other for years.
8 It's / It has been raining all day. *or* It has rained all day. *or* It has been horrible/bad all day.

17

3 's/has been
4 for
5 since
6 has he lived / has he been
7 for
8 've/have been

18

Example answers:
3 I've met Julia a few times.
4 I haven't had dinner yet.
5 I've never been to Australia.
6 I've lived here since I was born.
7 I've lived here for three years.

19

3 bought/got
4 went
5 've/have seen *or* saw
6 haven't started (it) *or* didn't start (it)
7 was
8 didn't see
9 finished *or* graduated from
10 's/has been
11 was
12 've/have never made

20

3 He's / He has lived there since last May. *or* He's / He has been living there since last May.
4 she left an hour ago.
5 How many times have you been there?
6 I've / I have been tired all day.
7 It was on the table last night.
8 I've eaten there a few times.
9 What time did they get here?

21

1 When was the last time? *or* When did you go there the last time? *or* When were you there the last time?
2 How long have you had it?
I bought/got it yesterday.
3 How long have you lived there / have you been living there / have you been there?
Before that we lived on Mill Road.
How long did you live on Mill Road? *or* How long were you on Mill Road?
4 How long have you worked there / have you been working there?
What did you do before that?
I was a taxi driver. *or* I worked as a taxi driver.

22

Example answers:
2 I didn't go out last night.
3 I was at work yesterday afternoon.
4 I went to a party a few days ago.
5 It was my birthday last week.
6 I went to South America last year.

23

2 B
3 D
4 A
5 A
6 D
7 C
8 B
9 C
10 D
11 A
12 C
13 B
14 C
15 A

24

1 was damaged ... be torn down
2 was built ... is used ... is being painted
3 is called ... be called ... was changed
4 have been made ... are produced

25

2 is visited
3 were damaged
4 be built
5 is being cleaned
6 be forgotten
7 be kept
8 Have you ever been bitten
9 was stolen

26

2 My car was stolen last week.
3 All the bananas have been eaten.
4 The machine will be repaired.
5 We're / We are being watched.
6 The housework has to be done.

27

3 has taken *or* took
4 pushed
5 was pushed
6 is being repaired
7 invented
8 was the camera invented
9 've/have been washed *or* were washed
10 've/have washed them. *or* washed them.
11 did they send
12 be sent

28

2 B
3 A
4 C
5 B
6 C
7 C
8 B
9 B
10 A
11 B

مرجع آموزش زبان ایرانیان
www.irLanguage.com

29

1 *B:* I stayed
A: did you do
B: I watched
A: Are you going
B: I'm going
A: are you going to see
B: I don't know. I haven't decided

2 *A:* have you been
B: We arrived
A: are you staying / are you going to stay
A: do you like
B: we're having

3 *A:* I'm going . . . Do you want
B: are you going
A: Have you ever eaten
B: I've been . . . I went

4 *A:* I've lost / I lost . . . Have you seen / Did you see
B: You were wearing . . . I came
A: I'm not wearing
B: Have you looked / Did you look
A: I'll go

30

1 we met
2 we sat / we were sitting
3 We didn't know
4 we became
5 we liked
6 we spent
7 We finished
8 we meet
9 has been
10 she's working
11 She's coming
12 she comes
13 we'll have / we're going to have
14 It will be

31

2 we're staying
3 we enjoyed
4 We watched
5 slept
6 I don't sleep
7 we're not doing / we're not going to do
8 we're going
9 to see
10 We haven't decided
11 wants
12 to go
13 I'll send
14 you're having
15 are studying / have been studying
16 he had
17 he needs
18 We've been
19 We got
20 seeing
21 I liked
22 we went
23 we left
24 had
25 he wasn't injured
26 was damaged
27 We've changed / We changed
28 we're leaving
29 We're staying / We're going to stay / We'll stay
30 flying
31 That will be / That's going to be
32 finished
33 I'll let
34 we get
35 are looking
36 We're going
37 we'll send

32

2 A
3 B
4 C
5 B
6 C
7 B
8 A
9 C
10 A
11 B
12 A
13 C
14 B
15 C
16 A
17 C
18 B

33

2 a car
3 the fridge / the refrigerator
4 a teacher
5 school
6 the movies
7 a taxi
8 the piano
9 computers
10 the same

34

4 a horse
5 The sky
6 a tourist
7 for lunch (–)
8 the . . . the
9 a
10 remember names (–)
11 the next train
12 sends emails (–)
13 the backyard
14 the Majestic Hotel
15 sick last week (–) . . . to work (–)
16 the . . . the
17 to the radio . . . having breakfast (–)
18 like sports (–) . . . is basketball (–)
19 a . . . an
20 the . . . the . . . the . . . the
21 After dinner (–) . . . watched TV (–)
22 northern Mexico (–) . . . the south

35

2 in
3 on
4 at
5 on
6 in
7 since
8 on
9 by
10 in
11 for
12 at
13 in
14 at
15 on
16 by
17 for . . . on
18 to . . . in
19 at . . . in

Answer Key to Study Guide
(see page 257)

Present

1.1	B
1.2	A
1.3	C
1.4	A
1.5	C, D
1.6	B
1.7	D
1.8	C
1.9	C
1.10	A
1.11	C
1.12	A
1.13	D
1.14	C
1.15	A
1.16	D
1.17	C, D
1.18	A, D

Past

2.1	B
2.2	E
2.3	D
2.4	B
2.5	A
2.6	D
2.7	A
2.8	C
2.9	C
2.10	E

Present perfect

3.1	B
3.2	D
3.3	E
3.4	B
3.5	A
3.6	C
3.7	D
3.8	B

Passive

4.1	D
4.2	C
4.3	E
4.4	A
4.5	A

Verb forms

5.1	D
5.2	B

Future

6.1	A
6.2	A
6.3	C
6.4	A, B
6.5	C
6.6	D
6.7	C

Modals, imperative, etc.

7.1	C, D
7.2	A, C
7.3	A
7.4	D
7.5	C
7.6	D
7.7	C
7.8	D
7.9	B
7.10	C
7.11	C
7.12	B, D
7.13	A
7.14	B

There and **it**

8.1	B
8.2	E
8.3	A
8.4	A
8.5	B

Auxiliary verbs

9.1	D
9.2	A
9.3	C
9.4	B
9.5	B
9.6	C
9.7	D

Questions

10.1	D
10.2	D
10.3	A
10.4	A
10.5	B
10.6	D
10.7	B
10.8	A
10.9	C, E
10.10	C
10.11	A
10.12	A, C

Reported speech

11.1	E
11.2	A, B, D

-ing and **to . . .**

12.1	B
12.2	D
12.3	B
12.4	C
12.5	B, C
12.6	C
12.7	A
12.8	D

Go, get, do, make, and **have**

13.1	A, D
13.2	C
13.3	C, D
13.4	A, D
13.5	B
13.6	D

Pronouns and possessives

14.1	A
14.2	C
14.3	D
14.4	B
14.5	B, C
14.6	A
14.7	E
14.8	A
14.9	D
14.10	C

A and **the**

15.1 C
15.2 B
15.3 A, C
15.4 B
15.5 B
15.6 A
15.7 D
15.8 C
15.9 B
15.10 B
15.11 E
15.12 D
15.13 B
15.14 A

Determiners and pronouns

16.1 C
16.2 C
16.3 B
16.4 B
16.5 C
16.6 A, C
16.7 D
16.8 B, D
16.9 A
16.10 B
16.11 D
16.12 B, D
16.13 A
16.14 A, B
16.15 D
16.16 A, C
16.17 D
16.18 B
16.19 A

Adjectives and adverbs

17.1 A
17.2 C
17.3 C
17.4 D
17.5 B
17.6 B
17.7 A, C
17.8 E
17.9 A
17.10 B
17.11 D
17.12 A
17.13 D
17.14 C

Word order

18.1 B
18.2 C
18.3 B
18.4 A
18.5 A, D

Conjunctions and clauses

19.1 C
19.2 A
19.3 D
19.4 E
19.5 B, C
19.6 A, B
19.7 B, D
19.8 A

Prepositions

20.1 A, D
20.2 E
20.3 C, D
20.4 B
20.5 A, D
20.6 A
20.7 B
20.8 C
20.9 B
20.10 D
20.11 D
20.12 A
20.13 C
20.14 D
20.15 A
20.16 E
20.17 C
20.18 B
20.19 D
20.20 D

Phrasal verbs

21.1 C
21.2 A, B
21.3 B

Index

The numbers are unit numbers (not page numbers).

a/an 63
a and *some* 65–66
a/an and *the* 67
about 109E
above 107E
across 108
across from 107B
active and **passive** Appendix 1
adjectives 83
get + adjective (*get tired*, etc.) 54B
possessive adjectives (*my/your/her*, etc.) 58, 60
something/anybody, etc. + adjective 77C
adjectives and adverbs (*quick/quickly*) 84
comparatives (*older / more expensive*) 85–87
superlatives (*the oldest / the most expensive*) 88
adjectives + preposition (*angry at*, etc.) 110A
adverbs 84
word order (*always/usually/often*, etc.) 92
advise (*advise somebody to . . .*) 51B
afraid (of) 110A
after 96, 103
ago 18B
all
all and *every*, etc. 78
all (of) 79
word order 92
along 108
get along Appendix 6
already 93C
word order 92
also (word order) 92
always
always + simple present 5C
word order 92
am/is/are 1–2
am/is/are -ing (present continuous) 3–4, 22A, 24, 49C
there is / there are 35
an see **a**
and 95
angry (at/about) 110A
another 63B
any
any and *some* 74
not + *any* 75
any and *no* 75
any (of) 79
anybody/anyone/anything 74D, 76–77
anywhere 77
apostrophe (*I'm, it's*, etc.) Appendix 4
apostrophe 's (*my brother's car*) 62
are see **am/is/are**
around 108
turn around / show around (phrasal verbs) 112–113, Appendix 7
arrive 106C
articles (*a/an/the*) 63–71
a/an 63, 65–66
a/an and *the* 67
the 68–71
as (*not as . . . as*) 87
ask
ask somebody to . . . 51B
ask somebody for . . . 111A
at
at 8:00 / at night, etc. 101
at the bus stop / at work, etc. 104–105
at and *to* 106
at the age of . . . 109B
auxiliary verbs 22, 38–40
away
run away / throw away, etc. (phrasal verbs) 112–113, Appendix 7

back
come back / give back, etc. (phrasal verbs) 112–113, Appendixes 6–7
base form (*do/see*, etc.) 49A
be (*am/is/are*, etc.)
am/is/are 1–2
am/is/are + *-ing* (present continuous) 3–4, 22A, 24, 49C
was/were 10
was/were + *-ing* (past continuous) 13, 22A, 49C
have/has been (present perfect) 16–17
passive 20–21, Appendix 1
will be 26
because 95
been
have/has been (present perfect) 16–17
there has/have been 36B
before 96, 103
begin (*begin to . . .* or *begin -ing*) 50C
behind 107A
belong (to) 111A
below 107E
best 88B
better 85D
between 107A
born 20C
both 80
word order 92
but 95
by 109C
passive + *by* (*I was bitten by a dog.*) 20D
by myself / by yourself, etc. 61C
by (= *next to*) 107C

call 111C
can/can't 28
care (*take care of*) 111A
comparative (*older / more expensive*, etc.) 85–87
conditional (*if . . .*)
if I do . . . 97
if I did . . . 98
conjunctions 95–98
and/but/or/so/because 95
when/before/while/after/until 96
if 97–98
continue (*continue to . . .* or *continue -ing*) 50C
contractions (short forms – *I'm, it's, you've*, etc.) Appendix 4
could/couldn't 28C–D
count and noncount nouns 65–66

depend (on) 111D
did
didn't in negatives 12, 22D, 38C, 41B, 49A
did in questions 12, 22D, 38C, 42B, 49A
different (from/than) 110A
direct speech and reported speech 48
do 55
do and *make* 55
don't/doesn't in negatives 6, 22D, 38C, 41B, 49A
do/does in questions 7, 22D, 38C, 42B, 48A
don't go / don't fall, etc. (imperative) 34B

down 108
sit down / put down, etc. (phrasal verbs) 112–113, Appendix 6–7
during 103

each other 61D
either
either and *too* 40A
either (of) 80
email 111C
embedded questions (*Do you know what . . . ?*, etc.) 47
end (*at the end of*) 101B, 104B
enjoy
enjoy -ing 50B
enjoy myself/yourself, etc. 61A
enough 89
enough and *too* 90D
ever
Have you ever . . . ? 16
superlative + *ever* 88E
word order 92
every 78
everybody/everyone/everything/everywhere 78C
expect 50A, 51B

far
How far is it? 37A, 45D
far → *farther* 85B
farther 85B
fast 84C
fed up (with) 110A
few / very few / a few 82
finish (*finish -ing*) 50B
for
for 10 minutes / for three years, etc. 16, 102D
for and *to . . .* 52B
go for a walk, etc. 53C
for and *during* 103C
from 102A, 108
front (*in front of*) 107A–B
full (of) 112A
future 24–26
I'm working tomorrow. (present continuous) 24
The concert starts at 7:30. (simple present) 24C
(I'm) going to (do something) 25
will 26
future after *when/before/while*, etc. 96B
future after *if* 97B

geographical names with and without *the* 71
gerund see **-ing**

get 54
get to (a place) 54C, 106C
get on / get up, etc. (phrasal verbs) 112, Appendix 6
give
give something to somebody / give somebody something 95
give up / give back, etc. (phrasal verbs) 113, Appendix 6–7
go 53
go -ing (go swimming, etc.) 53D
go to work / go home / go to the hospital 69
go in / go back, etc. (phrasal verbs) 112
going to (*I'm going to do something*) 25
good
good and *well* 84D
good at 110A
got
past of *get* 11C, 54
have/has got 9, 56A
don't have/haven't got 9B

had
past of *have* 11C
had to 31B
He said he had (done something) 48, Appendix 1.1
happen (to) 111A
hard 84C
has see **have**
hate 50C–D
have 9, 56
don't have / haven't got 9B
have and short answers 9D
have got / has got 9, 56A
have done / have been, etc. (present perfect) 16–19, 22C
have to 31
have a nice time / have fun, etc. 34A, 56B
there has/have been 36B
have breakfast / have a good time, etc. 56B
her 57–58, 60
hers 59–60
herself 61
him 57, 60
himself 61
his 58–60
home 53A, 69A, 106B
get home 54C, 106C
how 45
How long have you . . . ? (present perfect) 17
how big? / how old? / how far?, etc. 45D
How long does it take? 46
how much? / how many? 81A

I/you/he/she, etc. (personal pronouns) 57, 60
if 97–98
if we go / if you see, etc. 97
if and *when* 97C
if I had / if we went 98
Do you know if . . . ? 47C
imperative (*do this / don't do that*, etc.) 34
in
in five minutes / in three years, etc. 101E
in April / in the summer, etc. 101
in a room / in the hospital, etc. 104–105
in and *to* 106
in front of 107A–B
put something in 108
get in/go in (phrasal verbs) 112
infinitive (*to do / to see*, etc.) 49
adjective + infinitive (*it's easy to . . .*) 37B
infinitive and *-ing* (*to do / doing*, etc.) 49–50
I want to go, etc. 49B, 50
I went to the store to buy . . . 52
to . . . and *for . . .* 52B
something to eat / nowhere to go, etc. 77D
-ing (*doing/playing/going*, etc.)
am/is/are + *-ing* (present continuous) 3–4, 22A, 24, 49C
was/were + *-ing* (past continuous) 13, 22A, 49C
-ing and infinitive (*do/doing*, etc.) 49–50
verbs + *-ing* (*enjoy -ing*, etc.) 50B–C
go -ing (*go swimming*, etc.) 53D
prepositions + *-ing* 103D, 110B
interested (in) 110A
into 108
irregular verbs 11C, 23B, Appendix 2–3
is see **am/is/are**
it 37, 57B
it is and *there is* 35B, 37A
it's and *its* 58C
its 58

just
just + simple past 11B
word order 92

kind (*kind to somebody / kind of somebody*) 110A
know (*Do you know where . . . ?*) 47
learn (*learn to . . .*) 50A
left (*on the left*) 107A

lend (*lend something to somebody*) 94
less 86C
let 51D
let's (*let's go / let's dance*, etc.) 34C, 51D
like (*What is it like?*) 44B
like (verb)
would like 32, 50D, 51A
do you like? and *would you like?* 32C
like to . . . or *like -ing* 50C
listen (to) 111A
little / very little / a little 82
(*a little older/bigger*, etc.) 86D
look
look + adjective (*look tired*, etc.) 83C
look at/for 111B
lot (a lot of . . .) 81
love 50C–D

make 55
make somebody do something 51D
make and *do* 55
many
many and *much* 81
not as many (as) 87B
too many 90C
married
married to 110A
get married 54B
may 27D
me/you/him, etc. (personal pronouns) 57, 60
middle (*in the middle of*) 105A, 107A
might 27
mind (*I don't mind -ing*) 50B
mine/yours/hers, etc. (possessive pronouns) 59–60
modal verbs (*will/can/might*, etc.) 26–31, 49A
more 85C, 87
most
most (of) 79
the most expensive / the most difficult, etc. 88
much
much and *many* 81
much bigger / much more expensive 86D
not as much (as) 87B
too much 90C
must 29, 31D
my/your/his, etc. (possessive adjectives) 58, 60
myself/yourself, etc. (reflexive pronouns) 61

need
need to . . . 50A
negatives 41
negative questions 42C
no and *none* 75
not + *any* 75–76
neither
Neither am I / Neither do I, etc. 40B
neither (of) 80
never
never + simple present 5C
never + present perfect 16
word order 92
next to 107A
nice (*nice to somebody / nice of somebody*) 110A
no (*no money / no friends*, etc.) 75A–B, 79B
nobody/no one/nothing 76–77
no one and *none* 75C
noncount nouns (*salt/water/music*, etc.) 65–66
none 75B–C, 80B–C
nouns (count and noncount) 65–66
nowhere 77

of
the roof of the building, etc. 62C
the . . . *of* . . . 71E
off 108
get off / turn off, etc. (phrasal verbs) 112–113, Appendix 6
offer (*to do something*) 50A
often
often + simple present 5C
word order 92
on
on Monday / on April 25, etc. 101
on the table / on the wall 104–105
on the left/right 107A
on vacation / on television, etc. 109A
go on (vacation / a trip, etc.) 53B
get on / put on, etc. (phrasal verbs) 112–113, Appendix 6–7
one/ones 73
or 95B
our 58, 60
ours 59–60
ourselves 61
out
out of 108
go out / put out, etc. (phrasal verbs) 112–113, Appendix 6–7
over 108
fall over / knock over (phrasal verbs) Appendix 6–7

pair (*a pair of* . . .) 64B
passive 20–21, 22B, Appendix 1
simple present (*is done*) and simple past (*was done*) 20
present continuous (*is being done*) and present perfect (*has been done*) 21
will/can/must (etc.) *be done* Appendix 1.2
past (*Go past the movie theater*. . .) 108
past continuous (*was/were* + *-ing*) 13–14, 22A, 49C
past continuous (*I was doing*) and simple past (*I did*) 14
past continuous passive Appendix 1.1
past participle (*cleaned/done/seen*, etc.) 23A
present perfect (*I have played*) 16, 22C
passive (*the room was cleaned*) 20–21, 22B, Appendix 1
regular (*cleaned*) and irregular (*seen*) 23B, Appendix 2–3
past perfect
He said he had (done something) 48
active and passive Appendix 1.1
past simple see **simple past**
people 64C–D
personal pronouns (*I/me/you*, etc.) 57, 60
persuade (*persuade somebody to* . . .) 51B
phrasal verbs (*get up / put on*, etc.) 112–113, Appendix 6–7
plural (*cup* → *cups* / *man* → *men*, etc.) 64
police (plural) 64D
possessive adjectives (*my/your/his*, etc.) 58, 60
possessive pronouns (*mine/yours/his*, etc.) 59–60
prefer 33B, 50C–D
prepositions 101–111
at/on/in (time) 101
for/since 18, 102
until 102A-B
before/after/during/while 103
in/at/on (places) 104–105
to/in/at (places) 106
on 101, 104–105, 107A, 109A
at 101, 104–106, 109B
under/between/next to, etc. (position) 107
up/over/through, etc. (movement) 108
by 107C, 109C

with/without 109D, 110B
about 109E
prepositions + *-ing* (*in -ing / without -ing*, etc.) 103D, 110B
adjective + prepositions (*angry at*, etc.) 110A
verb + preposition (*listen to / wait for*, etc.) 111
prepositions at the end (*Who is she talking to?*) 44
prepositions in relative clauses (*the man she is talking to*) 100B
present continuous (*am/is/are + -ing*) 3–4, 22A, 49C
negative (*I'm not -ing*) 3
questions (*are you -ing?*) 4
present continuous (*I am doing*) and simple present (*I do*) 8
present continuous passive 21A, Appendix 1.1
present continuous for the future (*What are you doing tomorrow?*) 24
present perfect (*I have done*) 16–19, 22C
Have you ever . . . ? 16
How long have you . . . ? 17
present perfect + *for/since* 17–18
present perfect continuous (*I have been -ing*) 17B
present perfect (*I have done*) and simple past (*I did*) 19
present perfect + *yet* 19D, 93B
present perfect passive 21B, Appendix 1.1
regular and irregular verbs 16, 23, Appendix 2–3
present simple see **simple present**
promise (*promise to . . .*) 50A
pronouns
personal pronouns (*I/me/you*, etc.) 57, 60
possessive pronouns (*mine/yours*, etc.) 59–60
reflexive pronouns (*myself/yourself*, etc.) 61
one/ones 73
relative pronouns (*who/which/that*) 99–100
put
put something in . . . 108
put on / put out, etc. (phrasal verbs) 113, Appendix 7

questions 42–47
am/is/are . . . ? 2
do/does . . . ? (simple present) 7, 42B
did . . . ? (simple past) 12, 42B
Why don't . . . ? / Why isn't . . . ?, etc. 42C
Who saw you? / Who did you see? 43
preposition at the end (*Who is she talking to?*) 44
What / Which / How . . . ? 45
How long does it take? 46
Do you know where . . . ? (embedded questions) 47
reply questions (*You have? / You are?*, etc.) 39A
tag questions (*. . . do you? / . . . isn't it?*, etc.) 39B

rather
I'd rather / Would you rather? 33
I'd rather go out than . . ., etc. 33C
reflexive pronouns (*myself/yourself*, etc.) 61
regular and irregular verbs 11, 23, Appendix 2–3
relative clauses 99–100
relative pronouns (*who/which/that*) 99–100
reply questions (*You have? / You are?*) 39A
reported speech
He said that . . . / He told me that . . . 48
He told me to . . . 51C
right (*on the right*) 107A

's (apostrophe **'s**) 62, Appendix 4.5
same 68B, 87E
say/said
He said that . . . (reported speech) 48
say and *tell* 48B
scared (of) 110A
shall (*shall I / shall we*) 30E
short answers (*do/don't, have/haven't, does/doesn't*, etc.) 9D
short forms (*I'm / it's / you've*, etc.) Appendix 4
should 30
simple past (*did/cleaned/saw*, etc.) 11–12
negative (*didn't . . .*) 12, 41B
questions (*did . . . ?*) 12, 42B
was/were 10
regular (*cleaned*) and irregular verbs (*saw*) 11C, Appendix 2–3
simple past + *ago* 18B
simple past (*I did*) and present perfect (*I have done*) 19
simple past (*I did*) and past continuous (*I was doing*) 14
simple past + *just* 11B
simple past passive (*the room was cleaned*) 20, 22B, Appendix 1.1
if + simple past (*if I had / if we went*) 98
simple present (*I work / she works*, etc.) 5–7, 22D
negative (*don't/doesn't*) 6, 41B
questions (*do/does . . . ?*) 7, 42B
simple present + *always/usually/never*, etc. 5C
simple present (*I do*) and present continuous (*I am doing*) 8
simple present passive (*the room is cleaned*) 20, 22B, Appendix 1.1
simple present for the future (*The concert starts at 7:30.*) 24C
simple present after *when/while*, etc. 96B
simple present after *if* 97B
since 18A, 102C
singular and plural (*flower* → *flowers*) 64
so
so am I / so do I, etc. 40B
I was tired, so I went to bed. 95
some
some and *a/an* 65–66
some and *any* 74
some (of) 79
somebody/someone/something/somewhere 74, 77
sometimes
sometimes + simple present 5C
word order 92
sorry (*sorry about* and *sorry for*) 110A

speak (to) 111A
spelling Appendix 5
start (*start to . . .* and *start -ing*) 50C
still 93
word order 92
stop (*stop -ing*) 50B
suggest (*suggest -ing*) 50B
superlative (*the biggest / the most expensive*, etc.) 88

irLanguage.com

tag questions 39B
take
How long does it take? 46
take care of 111A
talk (to) 111A
television/TV 68D, 109A
tell/told
He told me that . . . 48
tell and *say* 48B
Can you tell me where . . . ? 47A
He told me to . . . 51B
tenses
active and passive Appendix 1.1
present continuous (*I am doing*) 3–4, 22A, 24, 49C
simple present (*I do*) 5–7, 22D, 24C
simple past (*I did*) 11–12, 14, 19, 22D
past continuous (*I was doing*) 13–14, 22A, 49C
present perfect (*I have done*) 16–19, 22C
be/have/do in present and past tenses 22
text 111C
than 86–87
thank (*thank somebody for*) 111A
that 72
He said that . . . (reported speech) 48C
that and *this* 72
a thing that . . . (relative clauses) 99
the 67–71
the and *a/an* 67
the same 68B
the sun / the sky, etc. 68C
the bank / the theater / the movies, etc. 69B
flowers / the flowers 70
the in names of places 71
the biggest / the most expensive, etc. 88
their 58, 60
theirs 59, 60
them 57, 60
themselves 61
there
there is/are 35
there was/were 36A
there has/have been 36B
there will be 36C
there is and *it is* 35B
these 72
think (*think about / think of*) 111A
this 72
those 72

through 108
till (= *until*) 102B

to
time 102A
places 106, 108
go to . . . 53A, 106A
get to . . . 54C, 106C
infinitive (*to go / to be*, etc.) 49
verb + *to* 50A, 50C
too 90
too and *either* 40A
turn (*turn around / turn on*, etc.) (phrasal verbs) 112–113, Appendix 7

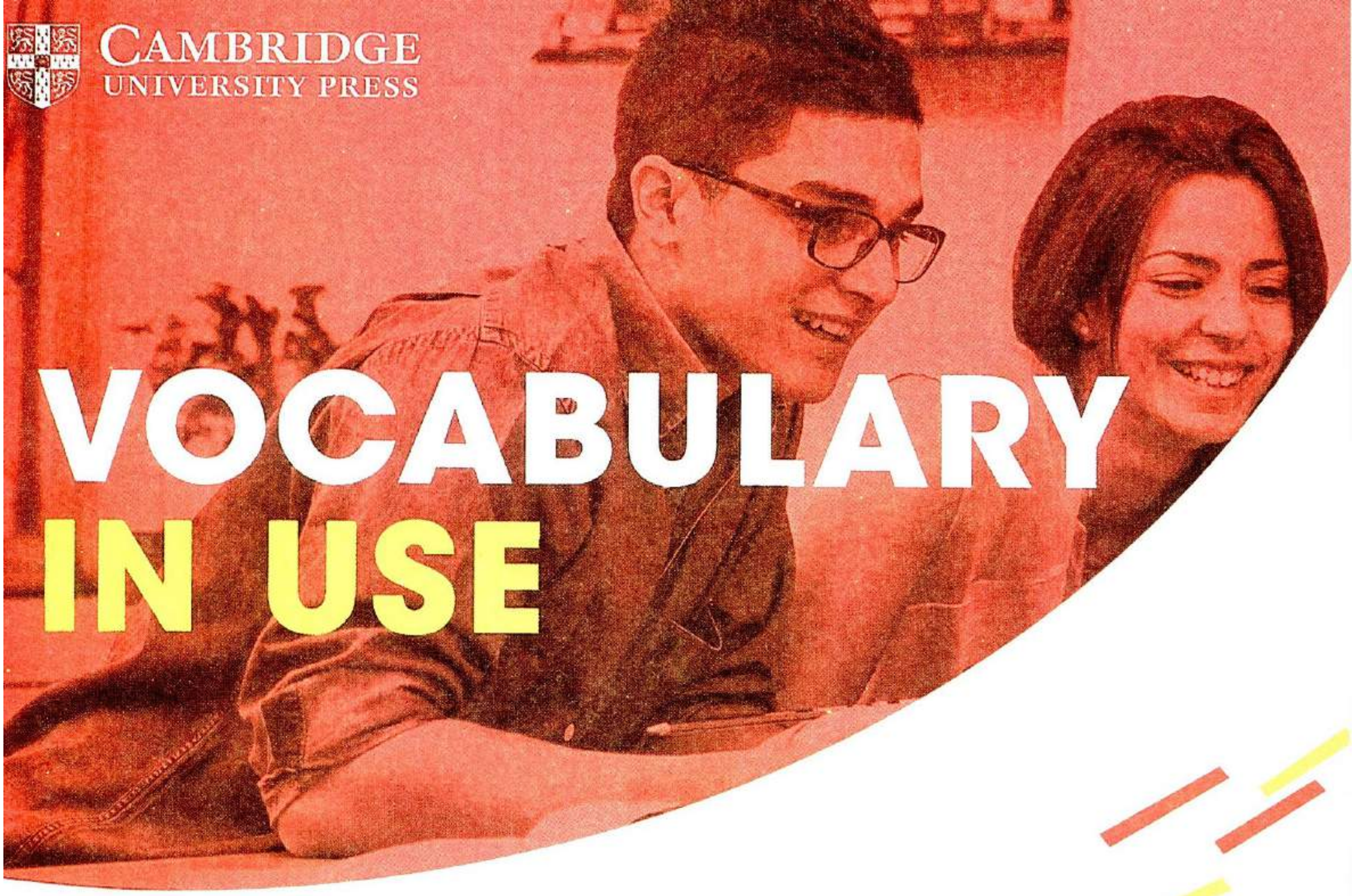
under 107D, 108
until 96B, 102A-B
up 108
get up / pick up, etc. (phrasal verbs) 112–113, Appendix 6–7
us 57, 60
used (*I used to . . .*) 15
usually
usually + simple present 5C
word order 92

vacation (*on vacation*) 53B, 109A
verbs
present tenses 1–9, 22, 24
past tenses 10–15, 19, 22
present perfect 16–19, 22
passive 20–21, Appendix 1
regular and irregular verbs 23, Appendix 2–3
future 24–26
modal verbs (*will/can/should*, etc.) 26–30, 49A
negatives 41
questions 42–47
reported speech 48
verbs + *-ing* 50
verbs + *to . . .* 49–51
verbs + preposition (*look at / speak to*, etc.) 111
phrasal verbs (*get up / put on*, etc.) 112–113, Appendix 6–7

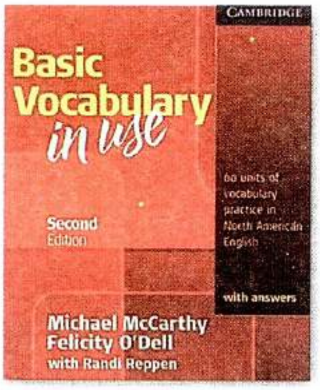
wait (for) 52C, 111A
want
want to . . . 50A
want somebody to . . . 51A
was/were 10
was/were + *-ing* (past continuous) 13, 22A, 49C
was/were done (passive) 20, 22B
there was/were 36A
if I was/were . . . 98B

well 84D
were see **was**
what
What . . . ? and *Who . . . ?* 43B
What . . . like? 44B
What . . . ? 45
What . . . ? and *Which . . . ?* 45C
when 96
when and *if* 97C
whether 47C
which
Which . . . ? 45
Which . . . ? and *What . . . ?* 45C
Which one/ones? 73B
a thing which . . . (relative clauses) 99
while 96, 103
who
Who . . . ? 43–44
a person who . . . (relative clauses) 99
whose (*Whose is this?*) 59D
will 26
won't 26A
there will be 36C
with/without 109D
with/without + *-ing* 110B
won't (= *will not*) 26A
word order
questions 42–45
present continuous questions 4B
simple present questions 7B
simple past questions 12D
passive 20–21
Do you know where . . . ? (embedded questions) 47
verb + object 91A
place and time 91B
always/usually/often, etc. 92
after *give/lend/send*, etc. 94
worse 85D
worst 88B
would
I'd like / would you like? 32
I'd rather/would you rather? 33
would like/love, etc. 50D
He would buy a car if he had the money. 98

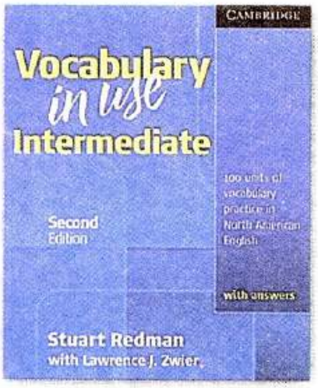
yet 19D, 93
you 57, 60
your 58, 60
yours 59–60
yourself/yourselves 61



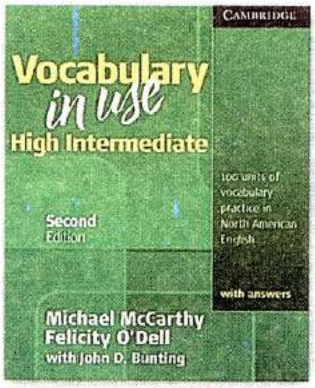
The words you need to communicate with confidence



Basic



Intermediate



High Intermediate

Buy online or at your local bookstore

cambridge.org/inuse

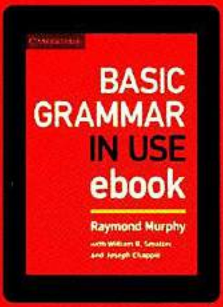
BASIC GRAMMAR IN USE

With answers and ebook • Fourth Edition

The grammar reference and practice book used by millions of learners around the world

Simple explanations, clear examples, and easy-to-understand exercises make this book perfect for use in the classroom, or by students who are studying on their own.

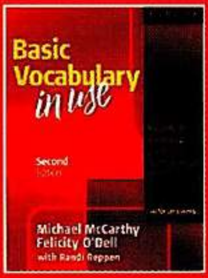
- Test yourself and find out your strengths and weaknesses with a simple Study Guide.
- Read about the grammar and then practice, with explanations on the left-hand page and exercises on the right.
- Improve your understanding with even more exercises in the back of the book.
- Use the answer key to check your answers.
- Listen to examples to help with your listening and pronunciation.
- Type your answers and check them with the easy-to-use answer key.
- Bookmark pages and add notes to help you remember the grammar you study.
- Click on words to find out the meanings, from the Cambridge Learner's Dictionary.



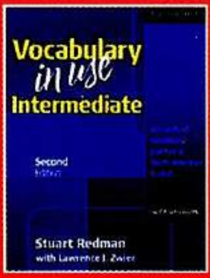
Basic Grammar in Use is available in the following formats:

ISBN	with answers	without answers	with ebook
978-1-316-64673-1	●		●
978-1-316-64674-8	●		
978-1-316-64675-5		●	

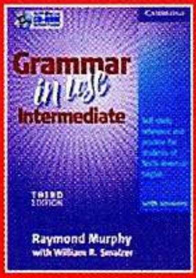
مرجع زبان ایرانیان



ISBN 978 0 521 12367 9



ISBN 978 0 521 12375 4



ISBN 978 0 521 73477 6

Also available

BASIC VOCABULARY IN USE

VOCABULARY IN USE INTERMEDIATE

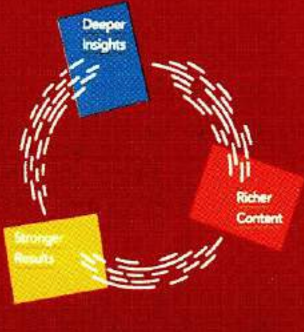
GRAMMAR IN USE INTERMEDIATE

www.irLanguage.com

Better Learning is our simple approach where deeper insights help shape richer content that drives stronger results.

Discover more:

cambridge.org/betterlearning



CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS
www.cambridge.org

مرجع آموزش زبان ایرانیان
irLanguage.com